

A Harmony of the Gospels

for the study of

The Life of the Messiah

The arrangement of this harmony is based upon
Dr. Arnold Fruchtenbaum's
outline of
The Life of Messiah from a Jewish Perspective

which in turn is based upon

A.T. Robertson's
A Harmony of the Gospels

Compiled by Eric Vear

2013

Scripture taken from the NEW AMERICAN STANDARD BIBLE®,
© Copyright 1960, 1962, 1963, 1968, 1971, 1972, 1973, 1975, 1977, 1995
by The Lockman Foundation

All rights reserved.

For Permission to quote the text of the NASB, please visit

www.Lockman.org

Published by Eric Vear

www.GospelHarmony.Vear.info

eric.vear@gmail.com

The copyright agreement allowing me to distribute this eBook
also allows you, the reader, to make copies of this document for personal use,
but prohibits you from redistributing it in any way.

If you would like to make this file available to others, please give them a link to its web page:

www.GospelHarmony.Vear.info

The 'NASB,' 'NAS,' "New American Standard Bible," and "New American Standard" trademarks are registered
in the United States Patent and Trademark Office by The Lockman Foundation.

The majority of the headings are taken from Dr. Arnold Fruchtenbaum's outline of
The Life of the Messiah from a Jewish Perspective

© Copyright 2006, Ariel Ministries

Used by permission.

www.ariel.org

Eric Vear's notes on *The Life of the Messiah from a Jewish Perspective* can be downloaded from

www.lifeofmessiah.vear.info

Cover Photo:

The southern end of the Sea of Galilee (Lake Tiberias) viewed from the western side looking a little south of east. The hills on the far (eastern) side of the lake were part of Bashan in Old Testament times, and part of the region of the Decapolis in Jesus' time. Today they are the southern part of the Golan Heights.

Last updated 2023-12-17

*Inasmuch as many have undertaken to compile an account
of the things accomplished among us,
just as they were handed down to us by those who from the
beginning were eyewitnesses and servants of the word,
it seemed fitting for me as well,
having investigated everything carefully from the beginning,
to write it out for you in consecutive order,
most excellent Theophilus;
so that you may know the exact truth about the things you
have been taught.*

Luke 1:1-4

Preface

The purpose of this book is to provide a convenient resource for studying the life of the Messiah in the Jewish context of first century Israel.

It consists of the text of the four gospels arranged under headings and sub-headings that assist a thematic study of Jesus' life in His Jewish context. The text follows the order of Luke's gospel and is arranged so that parallel accounts of the same event are side by side so that the reader can easily compare and contrast the Gospel accounts with one another. The order of Luke's account is chosen because he claims to have *investigated everything carefully* and he has written it out *in consecutive order*. As Pentecost writes:¹

“Such an arrangement makes it possible to study the life, ministry, and teaching of Jesus Christ in the Harmony with all the relevant material from the Gospels placed side by side on the page and in chronological sequence.”

“This study tool does not replace the study of the individual Gospels since it is still of primary importance to study and understand each Gospel's unique perspective on Jesus. However, the Harmony is indispensable for studying chronologically Jesus' life and ministry and for comparing all the accounts of the same saying, discourse, or event.”

This harmony is based on A.T. Robertson's *A Harmony of the Gospels*, originally published in 1923, but differs in that it: adheres more closely to Luke's order; has more subdivisions in places; uses thematic headings taken from Dr. Arnold Fruchtenbaum's *The Life of the Messiah from a Jewish Perspective*; Puts parallel accounts in the familiar order (Matthew, Mark, Luke, John); uses the text of the NASB; is set out on A4 sheets for easier reading.

The sections of this Harmony have been renumbered in consecutive sequence for ease of reference. Appendix 20 provides two tables comparing these numbers with those used by Robertson.

There is also a Scripture index which shows where to find each passage of the Scripture text in the harmony.

¹ Pentecost, J. Dwight, *A Harmony of the Words and Works of Jesus Christ*, Zondervan 1981.

*May God,
Who inspired the gospel writers,
give you understanding of what they wrote.*

Table of Contents

Prologue § 1-2	1
A. The Source of Knowledge (Luke’s Prologue), § 1, Luke 1:1-4.....	1
B. The Pre-existence of the Messiah (John’s Prologue), § 2, John 1:1-18	1
I The Introduction of the King, § 3-27	2
A. The Arrival of the King, § 3-19	2
1. The Genealogy of the King, § 3, Matthew 1:1-17; Luke 3:23-38.....	2
2. The Advent of the King, § 4-11	3
a. The Announcement of the Birth of John to Zacharias, § 4, Luke 1:5-25.....	3
b. The Announcement of the Birth of Jesus to Mary, § 5, Luke 1:26-38.....	4
c. The Visit of Mary to Elizabeth, § 6, Luke 1:39-45.....	4
d. The Song of Mary, § 7, Luke 1:46-56.....	4
e. The Birth of John, § 8, Luke 1:57-80.....	5
(1) The Birth of John	5
(2) Zacharias’ Prophecy	5
f. The Announcement of the Birth of Jesus to Joseph, § 9, Matthew 1:18-25.....	5
g. The Birth of the King, § 10, Luke 2:1-7	6
h. The Announcement to the Shepherds, § 11, Luke 2:8-20	6
3. His Infancy and Childhood, § 12 - 19.....	6
a. The Circumcision, § 12, Luke 2:21	6
b. The Presentation, § 13, Luke 2:22-38	7
c. His Infancy.....	7
(1) In Bethlehem, § 14, Matthew 2:1-12	7
(2) In Egypt, § 15, Matthew 2:13-18.....	8
(3) In Nazareth, § 16, Matthew 2:19-23; Luke 2:39.....	8
d. His Boyhood	9
(1) His Growth, § 17, Luke 2:40	9
(2) The Visit to Jerusalem, § 18, Luke 2:41-50.....	9
(3) His Development, § 19, Luke 2:51-52	9
B. The Herald of the King, § 20-23	10
1. The Message to John, § 20, Mark 1:1; Luke 3:1-2	10
2. The Message by John, § 21, Matthew 3:1-6; Mark 1:2-6; Luke 3:3-6.....	10

3.	The Explanation by John, § 22, Matthew 3:7-10; Luke 3:7-14.....	11
4.	The Promise by John, § 23, Mark 1:7-8; Matthew 3:11-12; Luke 3:15-18.....	11
C.	The Approval of the King, § 24-27	12
1.	At His Baptism, § 24, Matthew 3:13-17 Mark 1:9-11; Luke 3:21-23.....	12
2.	Through the Temptation, § 25, Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13	13
3.	By His Herald, § 26-27.....	14
a.	Testimony of John before Leaders, § 26, John 1:19-28	14
b.	Testimony of John to Jesus, § 27, John 1:29-34.....	14
II	The Authentication of the King, § 28-56	15
A.	Acceptance of His Person, § 28-36.....	15
1.	In the Belief by the First Disciples, § 28, John 1:35-51	15
2.	The Belief through the first Miracle, § 29, John 2:1-11	15
3.	The Sojourn in Capernaum, § 30, John 2:12	16
4.	The Possession of the Temple – the First Passover, § 31, John 2:13-22.....	16
5.	Acceptance in Judea, § 32, John 2:23-3:21.....	16
a.	Faith in His Signs	16
b.	The Explanation to Nicodemus	17
6.	The Witness of John, § 33, John 3:22-36	17
7.	The Imprisonment of John, § 34, Matthew 4:12; Mark 1:14; Luke 3:19-20; 4:14; John 4:1-4	18
8.	The Acceptance in Samaria, § 35, John 4:5-42	18
9.	The Acceptance in Galilee, § 36, John 4:43-45	19
B.	The Authority of the King, § 37 - 56.....	20
1.	Messiah’s Authority to Preach, § 37, Matthew 4:17; Mark 1:14-15; Luke 4:14-15.....	20
2.	Messiah’s Authority to Heal, § 38, John 4:46-54	20
3.	The Rejection in Nazareth, § 39, Luke 4:16-30	20
4.	The Headquarters in Capernaum, § 40, Matthew 4:13-16.....	21
5.	Messiah’s Authority over Demons, § 41, Mark 1:21-28; Luke 4:31-37.....	21
6.	Messiah’s Authority over Disease, § 42, Matthew 8:14-17; Mark 1:29-34; Luke 4:38-41.....	22

7. Messiah’s Authority to Preach, § 43, Matthew 4:23-25; Mark 1:35-39; Luke 4:42-44.....	23
8. Messiah’s Authority over Nature, § 44, Matthew 4:18-22; Mark 1:16-20; Luke 5:1-11.....	23
9. Messiah’s Authority over Defilement, § 45, Matthew 8: 2-4; Mark 1:40-45; Luke 5:12-16	25
10. Messiah’s Authority to Forgive Sin, § 46, Matthew 9:1-8; Mark 2:1-12; Luke 5:17-26	26
11. Messiah’s Authority over Men, § 47, Matthew 9:9-13; Mark 2:13-17; Luke 5:27-32.....	27
12. Messiah’s Authority over Tradition, § 48, Matthew 9:14-17; Mark 2:18-22, Luke 5:33-39	28
13. Messiah’s Authority over the Sabbath, § 49 - 51.....	29
a. Through the Healing of the Paralytic, § 49, John 5:1-47.....	29
b. Through the Controversy over Grain, § 50, Matthew 12:1-8; Mark 2:23-28; Luke 6:1-5	31
c. Through the Healing of the Man with a Withered Hand, § 51, Matthew 12:9-14; Mark 3:1-6; Luke 6:6-11	32
14. Messiah’s Authority to Heal, § 52, Matthew 12: 15-21; Mark 3:7-12	33
15. The Choosing of the Twelve, § 53, Mark 3:13-19; Luke 6:12-16.....	33
16. Messiah’s Authority to Interpret the Law, § 54, Matthew 5-7; Luke 6:17-49	34
a. The Occasion, Matthew 5:1-2; Luke 6:17-19	34
b. The Characteristics of True Righteousness	34
(1) The Characteristics of Those Who Attain True Righteousness.....	34
i. In Relationship to God, The Beatitudes Part 1: Matthew 5:3-6; Luke 6:20-21.....	34
ii. In Relationship to Man, Matthew 5:7-12; Luke 6:22-23.....	34
(2) The Characteristics of Those Who Fail, Luke 6:24-26.....	35
(3) The Characteristics of True Righteousness in Relationship to the World, Matthew 5:13-1635	
c. The Code of Righteousness, Matthew 5:17-48.....	35
(1) Introduction, Matthew 5:17-20.....	35
(2) Examples of the Code of True Righteousness: Matthew 5:21-48; Luke 6:27–36.....	35
d. The Conduct of True Righteousness, Matthew 6:1-18.....	37
e. The Practice of True Righteousness: Matthew 6:19-34, 7:1-12; Luke 6:37-42	38
f. The Warning Concerning True Righteousness (Four Pairs), Matthew 7:13-27; Luke 6:43-49	39
g. The Conclusion, Matthew 7:28-29; 8:1	40
17. Recognition of Authority in Capernaum, § 55, Matthew 8:5-13; Luke 7:1-10.....	41
18. Recognition of Authority throughout the Land, § 56, Luke 7:11-17	41

III The Controversy over the King, § 57 - 71 43

A. The Rejection of the Herald, § 57, Matthew 11:2-19; Luke 7:18-35 43

1.	A Deputation from John.....	43
2.	Jesus' Tribute to John	43
3.	Responses	44
4.	Reasons for Rejection	44
B.	Curses on the Cities of Galilee, § 58, Matthew 11:20-30.....	44
C.	The Reception of a Sinner, § 59, Luke 7:36-50	45
D.	The Witness to the King, Ministering Women § 60, Luke 8:1-3	45
E.	The Rejection of the King by the Leaders, § 61 – 62	46
1.	The Unpardonable Sin, § 61, Matthew 12:22-37; Mark 3:20-30	46
a.	The Rejection, Matthew 12: 22-24; Mark 3:22	46
b.	The Defence, Matthew 12:25-29; Mark 3:23-27	46
c.	The Judgement, Matthew 12:30-37; Mark 3: 28-30	47
2.	The New Policy Concerning Signs, § 62, Matthew 12:38-45	47
a.	The Sign for that Generation	47
b.	The Judgement of that Generation.....	47
F.	Revelation in view of Rejection, § 63 - 68.....	49
1.	The Repudiation of all Earthly Relations, § 63, Matthew 12:46-50; Mark 3:31-35; Luke 8:19-21.....	49
2.	The Course of the Kingdom Program in the Present Age, § 64, Matthew 13:1-53; Mark 4:1-34; Luke 8:4-18.....	49
	Jesus Teaches in Parables, Mark 4:1-2; Matthew 13:1-3a; Luke 8:4	49
	The Reason Jesus Teaches in Parables, Matthew 13:10-17, 34-35; Mark 4:10-12, 21-25, 33-34; Luke 8:9-10, 16-18	50
a.	The Parable of the Sower, Matthew 13:3b-9, 18-23; Mark 4:3-9, 13-20; Luke 8:5-7, 11-15	52
b.	The Parable of the Seed that is sown, Mark 4:26-29	54
c.	The Parable of the Tares, Matthew 13:24-30, 36-43	54
d.	The Parable of the Mustard Seed, Matthew 13:31-32; Mark 4:30-32	54
e.	The Parable of the Leaven, Matthew 13:33.....	55
f.	The Parable of the Hidden Treasure, Matthew 13:44	55
g.	The Parable of the Pearl of Great Price, Matthew 13: 45-46.....	55
h.	The Parable of the Net, Matthew 13:47-50	55
i.	The Parable of the Householder, Matthew 13:51-52	55
3.	Power over Nature, § 65, Matthew 8:18, 23-27; Mark 4:35-41; Luke 8:22-25	56
4.	Power over Demons, The Gerasene Demoniac § 66, Matthew 8:28-34; Mark 5:1-20; Luke 8:26-39	57

5.	Power over Disease and Death, § 67, Matthew 9:18-26; Mark 5:21-43; Luke 8:40-56.....	59
6.	Power over Blindness, § 68, Matthew 9:27-34.....	61
G.	The Final Rejection in Nazareth, § 69, Matthew 13:54-58; Mark 6:1-6a.....	61
H.	Witness in view of Rejection, § 70, Matthew 9:35-11:1; Mark 6:6b-13; Luke 9:1-662	
1.	Introduction, Mark 6:6b; Matthew 9:35-38.....	62
2.	The Ministry of the Twelve, Matthew 10:1; Mark 6:7; Luke 9:1-2.....	62
3.	Practical Instructions for the Mission, Matt. 10:5-15; Mark 6:8-11; Luke 9:3-5.....	62
4.	Instructions in View of the Coming Persecution, Matthew 10:16-23.....	63
5.	Instructions in View of Rejection, Matthew 10:24-33.....	64
6.	The Results of Rejection, Matthew 10:34-39.....	64
7.	Rewards for Individuals Who Accept, Matthew 10:40-42.....	64
8.	The Fulfilment, Matthew 11:1; Mark 6:12-13; Luke 9:6.....	64
I.	The Death of the Herald, § 71, Matthew 14:1-12; Mark 6:14-29; Luke 9:7-9.....	65
IV	The Training of the Twelve by the King, § 72 - 95.....	66
A.	The Feeding of the five thousand, § 72, Matthew 14:13-21; Mark 6:30-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:1-13.....	66
B.	Messiah's Rejection of the Galileans Offer to make Him King, § 73, Matthew 14:22-23; Mark 6:45-46; John 6:14-15.....	68
C.	The Training through the Storm, § 74, Matthew 14:24-33; Mark 6:47-52; John 6:16-21.....	68
D.	The Reception in Gennesaret, § 75, Matthew 14:34-36; Mark 6:53-56.....	69
E.	Instruction Concerning the Bread of Life, § 76, John 6:22-71.....	70
F.	Instruction Concerning Defilement, § 77, Matthew 15:1-20; Mark 7:1-23; John 7:1.....	72
G.	The Reception in Tyre and Sidon, § 78, Matthew 15:21-28; Mark 7:24-30.....	75
H.	The Reception in Decapolis, § 79, Matthew 15:29-38; Mark 7:31-8:9.....	76
I.	The Rejection in Magadan, § 80, Matthew 15:39-16:4; Mark 8:10-12.....	78
J.	The Warning against Rejection, § 81, Matthew 16:5-12; Mark 8:13-26.....	79

K.	The Confession of Peter, § 82, Matthew 16:13–20; Mark 8:27–30; Luke 9:18–21..	80
1.	Jesus' questions and Peter's confession of His Messiahship	80
2.	Jesus' Response to Peter	80
3.	Jesus' Policy	80
L.	Instruction Concerning the Death of the King, § 83, Matthew 16:21–26; Mark 8:31–37; Luke 9:22–25	81
M.	Instruction Concerning the Kingdom, § 84–85	82
1.	The Promise of Revelation, § 84, Matthew 16:27–28; Mark 8:38–9:1; Luke 9:26–27	82
2.	The Transfiguration: The Revelation of the Kingdom, § 85, Matthew 17:1–8; Mark 9:2–8; Luke 9:28–36a	82
N.	Instruction Concerning Elijah, § 86, Matthew 17:9–13; Mark 9:9–13; Luke 9:36b	84
O.	Instruction Concerning Faith, § 87, Matthew 17:14–20; Mark 9:14–29; Luke 9:37–43a	84
P.	Instruction Concerning the Death of the King, § 88, Matthew 17:22–23; Mark 9:30–32; Luke 9:43b–45.....	86
Q.	Instruction Concerning Sonship, § 89, Matthew 17:24–27.....	86
R.	Instruction Concerning Humility, § 90, Matthew 18:1–5; Mark 9:33–37; Luke 9:46–48	87
S.	Instruction Concerning Exclusiveness and Pride, § 91, Matthew 18:6–14; Mark 9:38–50; Luke 9:49–50	88
T.	Instruction Concerning Forgiveness, § 92, Matthew 18:15–35	89
U.	The Challenge by the Brothers, § 93, John 7:2–9	89
V.	The Journey to Jerusalem, § 94, Luke 9:51–56; John 7:10	90
W.	Instruction Concerning Discipleship, § 95, Matthew 8:19–22; Luke 9:57–62	90
V	THE OPPOSITION TO THE KING, § 96–112	91
A.	The Conflict at the Feast of Tabernacles, § 96, John 7:11–52	91
1.	Messiah's Authority Questioned, John 7:11–15	91
2.	Messiah's Explanation, John 7:16–24.....	91
3.	Messiah's Person Questioned, John 7:25–27	91

4.	Messiah's Explanation, John 7:28-30	92
5.	The People's Response, John 7:31-36	92
6.	Messiah's Invitation, John 7:37-44	92
7.	The Pharisaic Response, John 7:45-52	92
B.	The Conflict Over the Law, § 97, John 7:53–8:11	93
C.	The Conflict Over the Light, § 98, John 8:12–20	93
D.	The Conflict Over His Person, § 99, John 8:21–59	94
1.	Messiah the True Object of Faith, John 8:21-30	94
2.	Messiah the True Deliverer, John 8:31-59	94
a.	From Sin, John 8:31-40	94
b.	From Satan, John 8:41-48	95
c.	From Death, John 8:49-59	95
E.	The Conflict Over the Healing of the Man Born Blind, § 100, John 9:1–41	96
1.	Physical Healing, John 9:1-12	96
2.	The First Interrogation, John 9:13-17	96
3.	The Interrogation of Parents, John 9:18-22	96
4.	The Second Interrogation, John 9:23-34	97
5.	Spiritual Healing, John 9:35-41	97
F.	The Conflict Over the Shepherd, § 101, John 10:1–21	98
1.	Messiah the True Shepherd, John 10:1-6	98
2.	Messiah the Door, John 10:7-10	98
3.	Messiah the Good Shepherd, John 10:11-18	98
4.	The Division, John 10:19-21	98
G.	The Witness of the Seventy, § 102, Luke 10:1–24	99
1.	The Seventy Sent, Luke 10:1-16	99
2.	The Seventy Return, Luke 10:17-20	99
3.	Messiah's Prayer, Luke 10:21-24	100
H.	The Conflict Over the Question of Eternal Life, § 103, Luke 10:25-37	100

I.	The Example of Fellowship, § 104, Luke 10:38–42	100
J.	Instruction in Prayer, § 105, Luke 11:1–13	101
K.	Conflict Over Healing of the Dumb Man, § 106, Luke 11:14–36.....	101
	1. The Charge, Luke 11:14-16	101
	2. The Defence, Luke 11:17-23	101
	3. The Condition of the Nation, Luke 11:24-28.....	102
	4. The Sign to that Generation, Luke 11:29-32	102
	5. The Call to the Nation, Luke 11:33-36	102
L.	The Conflict Over Pharisaic Ritualism, § 107, Luke 11:37–54	103
M.	Instruction of the Disciples, § 108-111	104
	1. Hypocrisy, § 108, Luke 12:1-12.....	104
	2. Covetousness, Luke 12:13-34	105
	a. Occasion, Luke 12:13-15	105
	b. Instruction, Luke 12:16-21	105
	c. Application, Luke 12:22-34	105
	3. Watchfulness, Luke 12:35-40.....	106
	4. Faithfulness, Luke 12:41-48	106
	5. The Effects of His Coming, Luke 12:49-53.....	106
	6. The Signs of the Times, Luke 12:54-59.....	107
	7. Concerning Repentance, § 109, Luke 13:1–9	107
	8. Concerning Israel's Need, § 110, Luke 13:10-17.....	107
	9. Concerning the Kingdom Program, § 111, Luke 13:18-21.....	108
N.	The Conflict at the Feast of Dedication, § 112, John 10:22–39	108
VI	THE PREPARATION OF THE DISCIPLES BY THE KING, § 113-130	109
A.	The Withdrawal from Judea, § 113, John 10:40–42	109
B.	Instruction Concerning Entrance into the Kingdom, § 114, Luke 13:22–35	109
C.	Instruction in a Pharisee's House, § 115, Luke 14:1–24.....	110
	1. True Sabbath Rest, Luke 14:1-6	110

2.	Humility, Luke 14:7-11	110
3.	Respect of Persons, Luke 14:12-14	110
4.	The Rejection of the Invitation, Luke 14:15-24	111
D.	Instruction Concerning Discipleship, § 116, Luke 14:25-35	111
E.	Instruction Concerning God's Attitude toward Sinners, § 117, Luke 15:1-32.....	112
1.	The Occasion	112
2.	The Parable of the Lost Sheep, Luke 15:3-7	112
3.	The Parable of the Lost Coin, Luke 15:8-10	112
4.	The Parable of the Prodigal Son, Luke 15:11-32	113
F.	Instruction Concerning Wealth, § 118, Luke 16:1-31.....	114
1.	The Parable of the Unjust Steward, Luke 16:1-13	114
2.	The Conflict with the Pharisees, Luke 16:14-18	114
3.	The Story of the Rich Man and Lazarus, Luke 16:19-31	115
G.	Instruction Concerning Forgiveness, § 119, Luke 17:1-4	115
H.	Instruction Concerning Service, § 120, Luke 17:5-10	115
I.	The Resurrection of Lazarus: The First Sign of Jonah, § 121 -123	116
1.	The Sign of Resurrection, § 121, John 11:1-44.....	116
a.	The Death of Lazarus, John 11:1-16	116
b.	Jesus and Martha, John 11:17-27	116
c.	Jesus and Mary, John 11:28-32	117
d.	Jesus and Lazarus, John 11:33-44	117
2.	The Rejection of the First Sign of Jonah, § 122, John 11:45-54	118
3.	Instruction in Light of Rejection, § 123, Luke 17:11-37	118
a.	The Personal Witness to Caiaphas, Luke 17:11-19	118
b.	The New Form of the Kingdom Program, Luke 17:20-21	118
c.	Instruction Concerning the Second Coming, Luke 17:22-37	119
J.	Instruction in Prayer, § 124, Luke 18:1-14	120
1.	Perpetual Prayer, Luke 18:1-8.....	120
2.	Humble Prayer, Luke 18:9-14.....	120

K.	Instruction on Divorce, § 125, Matthew 19:1–12; Mark 10:1–12.....	121
L.	Instruction on Entrance into the Kingdom, § 126, Matthew 19:13–15; Mark 10:13–16; Luke 18:15–17.....	122
M.	Instruction on Eternal Life, § 127, Matthew 19:16–20:16; Mark 10:17–31; Luke 18:18–30.....	122
N.	Instruction Concerning His Death, § 128, Matthew 20:17–28; Mark 10:32–45; Luke 18:31–34.....	125
O.	The Healing of the Blind Men, § 129, Matthew 20:29–34; Mark 10:46–52; Luke 18:35–43.....	127
P.	Instruction Concerning the Kingdom Program, § 130, Luke 19:1–28.....	128
	1. Personal Faith, Luke 19:1–10.....	128
	2. Postponed Kingdom, Luke 19:11–28.....	128
VII	THE OFFICIAL PRESENTATION OF THE KING, § 131–143.....	129
A.	The Arrival in Bethany, § 131, John 11:55–12:1, 12:9–11.....	129
B.	The Triumphal Entry, § 132, Matthew 21:1–11, 14–17; Mark 11:1–11; Luke 19:29–44; John 12:12–19.....	130
C.	The Authority of the King, § 133–134, Matthew 21:18–19a, 12–13; Mark 11:12–18; Luke 19:45–48.....	133
	1. The Cursing of the Fig Tree, § 133, Matthew 21:18–19a; Mark 11:12–14.....	133
	2. Possession of the Temple, § 134, Matthew 21:12–13; Mark 11:15–18; Luke 19:45–48.....	133
D.	The Invitations by the King, § 135, John 12:20–50.....	134
	1. The Invitation, John 12:20–36.....	134
	2. John's Summary of Messiah's Ministry, John 12:37–50.....	134
	a. Summary of Israel, John 12:37–43.....	134
	b. Summary of Jesus, John 12:44–50.....	135
E.	The Proof of Authority, § 136, Matthew 21:19b–22; Mark 11:19–25.....	135
F.	The Authority of the King Challenged: The Testing of the Lamb, § 137, -140.....	136
	1. By Priests and Elders, § 137, Matthew 21:23–22:14; Mark 11:27–12:12; Luke 20:1–19.....	136
	a. The Attack, Matthew 21:23; Mark 11:27–28; Luke 20:1–2.....	136
	b. The Answer, Matthew 21:24–27; Mark 11:29–33; Luke 20:3–8.....	136
	(1) The Parable of the Two Sons, Matthew 21:28–32.....	137

(2)	The Parable of the Householder, Matthew 21:33–46; Mark 12:1–12; Luke 20:9–19	137
(3)	The Parable of the Wedding, Matthew 22:1-14.....	139
2.	By Pharisees and Herodians, § 138, Matthew 22:15–22; Mark 12:13–17; Luke 20:20–26	139
a.	The Attack, Matthew 22:15-17; Mark 12:13-15a; Luke 20:20-22	139
b.	The Answer, Matthew 22:18–22; Mark 12:15b–17; Luke 20:23–26.....	140
3.	By Sadducees, § 139, Matthew 22:23–33; Mark 12:18–27; Luke 20:27–40.....	140
a.	The Attack, Matthew 22:23–28; Mark 12:18–23; Luke 20:27–33.....	140
b.	The Answer, Matthew 22:29–33; Mark 12:24–27; Luke 20:34–40.....	141
4.	By Pharisees, § 140, Matthew 22:34–40; Mark 12:28–34.....	142
a.	The Attack, Matthew 22:34–36; Mark 12:28	142
b.	The Answer, Matthew 22:37–40; Mark 12:29–34	142
G.	The Challenge by the King, § 141, Matthew 22:41–46; Mark 12:35–37; Luke 20:41–44	143
H.	The Judgment by the King, § 142, Matthew 23:1–39; Mark 12:38–40; Luke 20:45–47	144
1.	To the Disciples and Multitudes, Matthew 23:1–12; Mark 12:38–40; Luke 20:45–47	144
2.	To the Pharisees, Matthew 23:13–36	145
3.	The Lament, Matthew 23:37–39.....	145
I.	Instruction at the Treasury, § 143, Mark 12:41–44; Luke 21:1–4.....	146
VIII	THE PREPARATION FOR THE DEATH OF THE KING, § 144-163.....	147
A.	The Prophecies of the King, § 144, Matthew 24–25; Mark 13:1–37; Luke 21:5–38	147
1.	The Historical Setting, Matthew 24:1-2; Mark 13:1-2; Luke 21:5-6.....	147
2.	The Three Questions, Matthew 24:3; Mark 13:3-4; Luke 21:7	147
3.	The General Characteristics of the Church Age, Matthew 24:4-6; Mark 13:5-7; Luke 21:8-9	148
4.	The Sign of the End of the Age, Matthew 24:7-8; Mark 13:8; Luke 21:10-11	148
5.	The Personal Experiences of the Apostles, Mark 13:9-13a; Luke 21:12-19	149
6.	The Sign of the Fall of Jerusalem, Luke 21:20-24	149
7.	The Great Tribulation, Matthew 24:9-28; Mark 13:13b-23	150
a.	The First Half, Matthew 24:9-14; Mark 13:13b, 10.....	150
b.	The Second Half, Matthew 24:15-28; Mark 13:14-23.....	151

8.	The Second Coming, Matthew 24:29-30; Mark 13:24-26; Luke 21:25-27	152
9.	The Regathering of Israel, Matthew 24:31; Mark 13:27	152
10.	The Exhortation, Luke 21:28	152
11.	The Parable of the Fig Tree, Matthew 24:32-35; Mark 13:28-31; Luke 21:29-33	153
12.	The Rapture, Matthew 24:36-42; Mark 13:32; Luke 21:34-36	153
13.	Parables Urging Watchfulness, Readiness and Labour, Matthew 24:43 - 25:30; Mark 13:33-37.....	154
a.	The Parable of the Porter, Mark 13:33-37	154
b.	The Parable of the Master of the House, Matthew 24:43-44	154
c.	The Parable of the Faithful Servant and the Evil Servant, Matthew 24:45-51.....	154
d.	The Parable of the Ten Virgins, Matthew 25:1-13	154
e.	The Parable of the Talents, Matthew 25:14-30	155
14.	The Judgment of the Gentiles, Matthew 25:31-46	155
15.	Luke Summary, Luke 21:37-38	156
B.	The Preparation for Messiah's Death, § 145-159	156
1.	The Prediction of His Death, § 145, Matthew 26:1-2	156
2.	The Conspiracy of the Rulers, § 146, Matthew 26:3-5; Mark 14:1-2; Luke 22:1-2	156
3.	The Pouring of Ointment, § 147, Matthew 26:6-13; Mark 14:3-9; John 12:2-8.....	157
4.	The Promise to Betray, § 148, Matthew 26:14-16; Mark 14:10-11; Luke 22:3-6.....	158
5.	The Last Passover and the First Lord's Supper, § 149-159	159
a.	The Preparation for the Seder, § 149, Matthew 26:17-19; Mark 14:12-16; Luke 22:7-13.....	159
b.	The start of the Passover Observance, § 150, Matthew 26:20; Mark 14:17; Luke 22:14-16.....	160
c.	The First Cup, § 151, Luke 22:17-18	160
d.	The Washing of the Feet and the First Prediction of Judas' Betrayal, § 152, John 13:1-20.....	160
e.	Carpas: The Second Prediction of Judas' Betrayal, § 153, Matthew 26:21-25; Mark 14:18-21; Luke 22:21-23.....	161
f.	The Breaking of the Middle Matzah, § 154, Matthew 26:26; Mark 14:22; Luke 22:19; 1 Corinthians 11:23-24.....	161
g.	The Sop: The Third Prediction of Judas' Betrayal, § 155, John 13:21-30.....	162
h.	The Third Cup, § 156, Matthew 26:27-29; Mark 14:23-25; Luke 22:20; 1 Corinthians 11:25-26	162
i.	A Lesson in Greatness, § 157, Luke 22:24-30	162
j.	The Prediction of Peter's Denial, § 158, Matthew 26:31-35; Mark 14:27-31; Luke 22:31-38; John 13:31-38	163
k.	The Hallel, § 159, Matthew 26:30; Mark 14:26.....	164

C. The Promises and Admonitions by the King, § 160-161	165
1. In the Upper Room, § 160, John 14:1-31.....	165
2. On the Way to Gethsemane, § 161, John 15:1-27, 16:1-33	166
D. The High Priestly Prayer, § 162, John 17:1-26	168
1. Concerning Himself, John 17:1-8	168
2. Concerning the Apostles, John 17:9-19	168
a. Preservation, John 17:9-14	168
b. Protection, John 17:15-16.....	168
c. Sanctification, John 17:17-19.....	168
3. Concerning All Believers, John 17:20-26.....	168
a. Unity, John 17:20-23	168
b. Glorification, John 17:24	169
4. Concerning His continued work, John 17:25-26	169
E. The Agony of Gethsemane, § 163, Matthew 26:36-46; Mark 14:32-42; Luke 22:39-46; John 18:1	170
 IX THE REJECTION OF THE KING: THE TRIAL AND THE DEATH OF THE MESSIAH, § 164-180.....	172
A. The Arrest, § 164, Matthew 26:47-56; Mark 14:43-52; Luke 22:47-53; John 18:2-12	172
B. The Religious Trial, § 165-170.....	175
1. The Trial Before Annas, § 165, John 18:12-14, 19-23.....	175
2. The Trial Before Caiaphas, § 166, Matthew 26:59-68; Mark 14:53, 55-65; Luke 22:54a; John 18:24-25	175
3. The Denial by Peter, § 167, Matthew 26:58, 69-75; Mark 14:54, 66-72; Luke 22:54b-62; John 18:15-18, 25-27	177
4. The Mockery and Beating, § 168, Luke 22:63-65	178
5. The Condemnation by the Sanhedrin, § 169, Matthew 27:1; Luke 22:66-71; Mark 15:1a	179
6. The Death of Judas, § 170, Matthew 27:3-10; Acts 1:18-19.....	179
C. The Civil Trial, § 171-174	180
1. The First Trial before Pilate, § 171, Matthew 27:2, 11-14; Mark 15:1b-5; Luke 23:1-5; John 18:28-38	180

2.	The Trial before Herod, § 172, Luke 23:6-12	182
3.	The Second Trial before Pilate, § 173, Matthew 27:15-26; Mark 15:6-15; Luke 23:13-25; John 18:39-40; 19:1-16.....	183
a.	First attempt to release Him.....	183
b.	Second attempt to release Him	183
c.	Third attempt to release Him.....	184
d.	Fourth attempt to release Him	185
e.	Fifth attempt to release Him.....	185
f.	Sixth attempt to release Him	185
g.	Sentence pronounced.....	186
4.	The Mockery, § 174, Matthew 27:27-30 ; Mark 15:16-19.....	187
D.	The Procession to Calvary, § 175, Matthew 27:31-34; Mark 15:20-23; Luke 23:26-33a; John 19:17	188
1)	He carries His own cross	188
2)	Simon of Cyrene carries His cross	188
3)	The Lament over Jerusalem	188
4)	The arrival at Golgotha	188
5)	The refusal to drink a mixture.....	189
E.	The Crucifixion, § 176-178.....	189
1.	The First Three Hours: The Wrath of Men, § 176, Matthew 27:35-44, 55-56; Mark 15:24-32, 40-41; Luke 23:33b-43; John 19:18-27.....	189
6)	The crucifixion.....	189
7)	The first statement from the cross	189
8)	The dividing of the garments	189
9)	The erection of the superscription	190
10)	The co-crucifixion of two other men.....	190
11)	The fifth mockery – by passers by.....	190
12)	The sixth mockery – by Jewish leaders	191
13)	The seventh mockery – by Roman soldiers.....	191
14)	The eighth mockery – by the co-crucified robbers	191
15)	Conversion of the man co-crucified with Him	191
16)	The second statement from the cross	191
17)	The third statement from the cross.....	192
2.	The Second Three Hours: The Wrath of God, § 177, Matthew 27:45-50; Mark 15:33-37; Luke 23:44-46; John 19:28-30	192
18)	Darkness covered the whole land.....	192

19)	The fourth statement from the cross - Eli, Eli, Lama Sabachthani	192
20)	The response of those standing by	192
21)	Fifth statement from the cross – I thirst	193
22)	He partakes of the vinegar	193
23)	The sixth statement from the cross – It is finished	193
24)	The seventh statement from the cross - Father, INTO YOUR HANDS I COMMIT MY SPIRIT	193
25)	His physical death	193
3.	The Accompanying Signs, § 178, Matthew 27:51-54; Mark 15:38-39; Luke 23:45b, 47-49	194
26)	The Accompanying Signs.....	194
F.	The Burial of the Messiah, § 179, Matthew 27:57-60; Mark 15:42-46; Luke 23:50-54; John 19:31-42	195
27)	The piercing of Jesus	195
28)	The request for the body of Jesus.....	195
29)	The removal of the body from the cross.....	196
30)	His actual burial.....	196
G.	The Sealing of the Tomb, § 180, Matthew 27:61-66; Mark 15:47; Luke 23:55-56	197
31)	The Preparation for embalming.....	197
32)	The sealing of the tomb	197
X	THE RESURRECTION AND THE ASCENSION OF THE KING, § 181-198.....	198
A.	The Dawning of Resurrection Day, § 181, Matthew 28:1; Mark 16:1.....	198
B.	The Opening of the Tomb, § 182, Matthew 28:2-4	198
C.	The Visit of Mary Magdalene, § 183, John 20:1.....	199
D.	Mary’s Report to the Apostles, § 184, Luke 24:12; John 20:2-10.....	199
E.	The First Appearance: Mary Magdalene, § 185, Mark 16:9-11; John 20:11-18	200
F.	The Visit of the Women, § 186, Matthew 28:5-8; Mark 16:2-8; Luke 24:1-9a;.....	201
G.	The Second Appearance: The Women, § 187, Matthew 28:9-10	202
H.	The Women’s Report to the Apostles, § 188, Luke 24:9b-11	202
I.	The Report of the Guard: The Rejection of the Second Sign of Jonah, § 189, Matthew 28:11-15	202
J.	The Third Appearance: To the Two on the Emmaus Road, § 190, Mark 16:12-13; Luke 24:13-32.....	203

K. The Fourth Appearance: Peter, § 191, Luke 24:33-35; 1 Corinthians 15:5	204
L. The Fifth Appearance: The Ten, § 192, Mark 16:14; Luke 24:36-43; John 20:19-25	205
M. The Sixth Appearance: The Eleven, § 193, John 20:26-31; 1 Corinthians 15:5.....	206
N. The Seventh Appearance: The Seven, § 194, John 21:1-25.....	207
O. The Eighth Appearance: The Five Hundred, § 195, Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:15-18; 1 Corinthians 15:6.....	208
P. The Ninth Appearance: James, § 196, 1 Corinthians 15:7.....	208
Q. The Tenth Appearance: The Eleven, § 197, Luke 24:44-49; Acts 1:3-8	209
R. The Ascension of the King, § 198, Mark 16:19-20; Luke 24:50-53; Acts 1:9-12	210
Sequel to the Life of Christ.....	211
A. The Elements of Signs, 1 Corinthians 1:21-24	211
B. The Relationship of the Life of Christ to the Book of Acts, Acts 6 – 8; 1 Peter 3:20-22	211
C. The Relationship of the Life of Christ to the Book of Hebrews, Luke 21:20-24; Hebrews 13:11-14.....	212
D. The Third Sign of Jonah, Zechariah 4:1-14; Revelation 11:3-13	213
APPENDIX 1 Interpretation Rules for Understanding Prophecy and Scripture...215	
APPENDIX 2 John’s Seven’s and the Three Messianic Miracles.....216	
APPENDIX 3 Personification of the WORD (Hebrew Davar, Aramaic Memra)217	
APPENDIX 4 When was Jesus Born?218	
APPENDIX 5 The Four Lists of the Apostles219	
APPENDIX 6 Yod and Tittle.....220	
APPENDIX 7 Old Testament Prophecies about the Outpouring of the Holy Spirit	221

APPENDIX 8 The Place of the Dead	223
APPENDIX 9 Map – Messiah’s Last Week – A.D. 30	225
APPENDIX 10 22 Laws of the Sanhedrin Regarding Trials	226
APPENDIX 11 Chronology of Jesus’ last week	227
APPENDIX 12 The Resurrection Appearances of the King	228
APPENDIX 13 Summary of the Parables of the Mystery Kingdom	230
APPENDIX 20 A. T. Robertson’s Section Numbers	231
Scripture Index.....	235
Index	239

Prologue § 1-2

A. The Source of Knowledge (Luke's Prologue), § 1, Luke 1:1-4

[Luke 1:1-4](#)

¹Inasmuch as many have undertaken to compile an account of the things accomplished among us, ²just as they were handed down to us by those who from the beginning were eyewitnesses and servants of the word, ³it seemed fitting for me as well, having investigated everything carefully from the beginning, to write *it* out for you in consecutive order, most excellent Theophilus; ⁴so that you may know the exact truth about the things you have been taught.

B. The Pre-existence of the Messiah (John's Prologue), § 2, John 1:1-18

[John 1:1-18](#)

The Deity of Jesus Christ

¹In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. ²He was in the beginning with God. ³All things came into being through Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being. ⁴In Him was life, and the life was the Light of men. ⁵The Light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not comprehend it.

The Witness of John

⁶There came a man sent from God, whose name was John. ⁷He came as a witness, to testify about the Light, so that all might believe through him. ⁸He was not the Light, but *he came* to testify about the Light. ⁹There was the true Light which, coming into the world, enlightens every man. ¹⁰He was in the world, and the world was made through Him, and the world did not know Him. ¹¹He came to His own, and those who were His own did not receive Him. ¹²But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, *even* to those who believe in His name, ¹³who were born, not of blood nor of the will of the flesh nor of the will of man, but of God.

The Word Made Flesh

¹⁴And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth. ¹⁵John *testified about Him and cried out, saying, "This was He of whom I said, 'He who comes after me has a higher rank than I, for He existed before me.' " ¹⁶For of His fullness we have all received, and grace upon grace. ¹⁷For the Law was given through Moses; grace and truth were realized through Jesus Christ. ¹⁸No one has seen God at any time; the only begotten God who is in the bosom of the Father, He has explained *Him*.

I The Introduction of the King, § 3-27

A. The Arrival of the King, § 3-19

1. The Genealogy of the King, § 3, Matthew 1:1-17; Luke 3:23-38

[Matthew 1:1-17](#)

¹The record of the genealogy of Jesus the Messiah, the son of David, the son of Abraham: ²Abraham was the father of Isaac, Isaac the father of Jacob, and Jacob the father of Judah and his brothers. ³Judah was the father of Perez and Zerah by Tamar, Perez was the father of Hezron, and Hezron the father of Ram. ⁴Ram was the father of Amminadab, Amminadab the father of Nahshon, and Nahshon the father of Salmon. ⁵Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab, Boaz was the father of Obed by Ruth, and Obed the father of Jesse. ⁶Jesse was the father of David the king.

David was the father of Solomon by Bathsheba who had been the wife of Uriah. ⁷Solomon was the father of Rehoboam, Rehoboam the father of Abijah, and Abijah the father of Asa. ⁸Asa was the father of Jehoshaphat, Jehoshaphat the father of Joram, and Joram the father of Uzziah. ⁹Uzziah was the father of Jotham, Jotham the father of Ahaz, and Ahaz the father of Hezekiah. ¹⁰Hezekiah was the father of Manasseh, Manasseh the father of Amon, and Amon the father of Josiah. ¹¹Josiah became the father of Jeconiah and his brothers, at the time of the deportation to Babylon.

¹²After the deportation to Babylon: Jeconiah became the father of Shealtiel, and Shealtiel the father of Zerubbabel. ¹³Zerubbabel was the father of Abihud, Abihud the father of Eliakim, and Eliakim the father of Azor. ¹⁴Azor was the father of Zadok, Zadok the father of Achim, and Achim the father of Eliud. ¹⁵Eliud was the father of Eleazar, Eleazar the father of Matthan, and Matthan the father of Jacob. ¹⁶Jacob was the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, by whom Jesus was born, who is called the Messiah.

¹⁷So all the generations from Abraham to David are fourteen generations; from David to the deportation to Babylon, fourteen generations; and from the deportation to Babylon to the Messiah, fourteen generations.

[Luke 3:23-38](#)

²³When He began His ministry, Jesus Himself was about thirty years of age, being, as was supposed, the son of Joseph, the son of Eli, ²⁴the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph, ²⁵the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos, the son of Nahum, the son of Hesli, the son of Naggai, ²⁶the son of Maath, the son of Mattathias, the son of Semein, the son of Josech, the son of Joda, ²⁷the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa, the son of Zerubbabel, the son of Shealtiel, the son of Neri, ²⁸the son of Melchi, the son of Addi, the son of Cosam, the son of Elmadam, the son of Er, ²⁹the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer, the son of Jorim, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, ³⁰the son of Simeon, the son of Judah, the son of Joseph, the son of Jonam, the son of Eliakim, ³¹the son of Melea, the son of Menna, the son of Mattatha, the son of Nathan, the son of David, ³²the son of Jesse, the son of Obed, the son of Boaz, the son of Salmon, the son of Nahshon, ³³the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin, the son of Ram, the son of Hezron, the son of Perez, the son of Judah, ³⁴the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham, the son of Terah, the son of Nahor, ³⁵the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of Peleg, the son of Heber, the son of Shelah, ³⁶the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, the son of Shem, the son of Noah, the son of Lamech, ³⁷the son of Methuselah, the son of Enoch, the son of Jared, the son of Mahalaleel, the son of Cainan, ³⁸the son of Enosh, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, the son of God.

2. The Advent of the King, § 4-11

a. *The Announcement of the Birth of John to Zacharias,* § 4, Luke 1:5-25

[Luke 1:5–25](#)

⁵In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a priest named Zacharias, of the division of Abijah; and he had a wife from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. ⁶They were both righteous in the sight of God, walking blamelessly in all the commandments and requirements of the Lord. ⁷But they had no child, because Elizabeth was barren, and they were both advanced in years.

⁸Now it happened *that* while he was performing his priestly service before God in the *appointed* order of his division, ⁹according to the custom of the priestly office, he was chosen by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. ¹⁰And the whole multitude of the people were in prayer outside at the hour of the incense offering.

¹¹And an angel of the Lord appeared to him, standing to the right of the altar of incense. ¹²Zacharias was troubled when he saw *the angel*, and fear gripped him. ¹³But the angel said to him, “Do not be afraid, Zacharias, for your petition has been heard, and your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son, and you will give him the name John. ¹⁴“You will have joy and gladness, and many will rejoice at his birth. ¹⁵“For he will be great in the sight of the Lord; and he will drink no wine or liquor, and he will be filled with the Holy Spirit while yet in his mother’s womb. ¹⁶“And he will turn many of the sons of Israel back to the Lord their God. ¹⁷“It is he who will go *as a forerunner* before Him in the spirit and power of Elijah, TO TURN THE HEARTS OF THE FATHERS BACK TO THE CHILDREN, and the disobedient to the attitude of the righteous, so as to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.”

¹⁸Zacharias said to the angel, “How will I know this *for certain*? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in years.” ¹⁹The angel answered and said to him, “I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God, and I have been sent to speak to you and to bring you this good news. ²⁰“And behold, you shall be silent and unable to speak until the day when these things take place, because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled in their proper time.”

²¹The people were waiting for Zacharias, and were wondering at his delay in the temple. ²²But when he came out, he was unable to speak to them; and they realized that he had seen a vision in the temple; and he kept making signs to them, and remained mute.

²³When the days of his priestly service were ended, he went back home. ²⁴After these days Elizabeth his wife became pregnant, and she kept herself in seclusion for five months, saying, ²⁵“This is the way the Lord has dealt with me in the days when He looked *with favor* upon *me*, to take away my disgrace among men.”

*b. The Announcement of the Birth of Jesus to Mary,
§ 5, Luke 1:26-38*

[Luke 1:26–38](#)

²⁶Now in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city in Galilee called Nazareth, ²⁷to a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph, of the descendants of David; and the virgin's name was Mary. ²⁸And coming in, he said to her, "Greetings, favored one! The Lord *is* with you." ²⁹But she was very perplexed at *this* statement, and kept pondering what kind of salutation this was. ³⁰The angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary; for you have found favor with God. ³¹"And behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name Him Jesus. ³²"He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High; and the Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David; ³³and He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and His kingdom will have no end." ³⁴Mary said to the angel, "How can this be, since I am a virgin?" ³⁵The angel answered and said to her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy Child shall be called the Son of God. ³⁶"And behold, even your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age; and she who was called barren is now in her sixth month. ³⁷"For nothing will be impossible with God." ³⁸And Mary said, "Behold, the bonds slave of the Lord; may it be done to me according to your word." And the angel departed from her.

*c. The Visit of Mary to Elizabeth,
§ 6, Luke 1:39-45*

[Luke 1:39–45](#)

³⁹Now at this time Mary arose and went in a hurry to the hill country, to a city of Judah, ⁴⁰and entered the house of Zacharias and greeted Elizabeth. ⁴¹When Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, the baby leaped in her womb; and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit. ⁴²And she cried out with a loud voice and said, "Blessed *are* you among women, and blessed *is* the fruit of your womb! ⁴³"And how has it *happened* to me, that the mother of my Lord would come to me? ⁴⁴"For behold, when the sound of your greeting reached my ears, the baby leaped in my womb for joy. ⁴⁵"And blessed *is* she who believed that there would be a fulfillment of what had been spoken to her by the Lord."

*d. The Song of Mary,
§ 7, Luke 1:46-56*

[Luke 1:46–56](#)

⁴⁶And Mary said: "My soul exalts the Lord, ⁴⁷And my spirit has rejoiced in God my Savior. ⁴⁸"For He has had regard for the humble state of His bonds slave; For behold, from this time on all generations will count me blessed. ⁴⁹"For the Mighty One has done great things for me; And holy is His name. ⁵⁰"AND HIS MERCY IS UPON GENERATION AFTER GENERATION TOWARD THOSE WHO FEAR HIM.

⁵¹"He has done mighty deeds with His arm; He has scattered *those who were* proud in the thoughts of their heart. ⁵²"He has brought down rulers from *their* thrones, And has exalted those who were humble. ⁵³"HE HAS FILLED THE HUNGRY WITH GOOD THINGS; And sent away the rich empty-handed. ⁵⁴"He has given help to Israel His servant, In remembrance of His mercy, ⁵⁵As He spoke to our fathers, To Abraham and his descendants forever."

⁵⁶And Mary stayed with her about three months, and *then* returned to her home.

*e. The Birth of John,
§ 8, Luke 1:57-80*

(1) The Birth of John

[Luke 1:57–66](#)

⁵⁷Now the time had come for Elizabeth to give birth, and she gave birth to a son. ⁵⁸Her neighbors and her relatives heard that the Lord had displayed His great mercy toward her; and they were rejoicing with her. ⁵⁹And it happened that on the eighth day they came to circumcise the child, and they were going to call him Zacharias, after his father. ⁶⁰But his mother answered and said, “No indeed; but he shall be called John.” ⁶¹And they said to her, “There is no one among your relatives who is called by that name.” ⁶²And they made signs to his father, as to what he wanted him called. ⁶³And he asked for a tablet and wrote as follows, “His name is John.” And they were all astonished. ⁶⁴And at once his mouth was opened and his tongue *loosed*, and he *began* to speak in praise of God. ⁶⁵Fear came on all those living around them; and all these matters were being talked about in all the hill country of Judea. ⁶⁶All who heard them kept them in mind, saying, “What then will this child *turn out to be*?” For the hand of the Lord was certainly with him.

(2) Zacharias’ Prophecy

[Luke 1:67–80](#)

⁶⁷And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Spirit, and prophesied, saying: ⁶⁸“Blessed *be* the Lord God of Israel, For He has visited us and accomplished redemption for His people, ⁶⁹And has raised up a horn of salvation for us In the house of David His servant— ⁷⁰As He spoke by the mouth of His holy prophets from of old— ⁷¹Salvation FROM OUR ENEMIES, And FROM THE HAND OF ALL WHO HATE US; ⁷²To show mercy toward our fathers, And to remember His holy covenant, ⁷³The oath which He swore to Abraham our father, ⁷⁴To grant us that we, being rescued from the hand of our enemies, Might serve Him without fear, ⁷⁵In holiness and righteousness before Him all our days.

⁷⁶“And you, child, will be called the prophet of the Most High; For you will go on BEFORE THE LORD TO PREPARE HIS WAYS; ⁷⁷To give to His people *the* knowledge of salvation by the forgiveness of their sins, ⁷⁸Because of the tender mercy of our God, With which the Sunrise from on high will visit us, ⁷⁹TO SHINE UPON THOSE WHO SIT IN DARKNESS AND THE SHADOW OF DEATH, To guide our feet into the way of peace.”

⁸⁰And the child continued to grow and to become strong in spirit, and he lived in the deserts until the day of his public appearance to Israel.

*f. The Announcement of the Birth of Jesus to Joseph,
§ 9, Matthew 1:18-25*

[Matthew 1:18–25](#)

¹⁸Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follows: when His mother Mary had been betrothed to Joseph, before they came together she was found to be with child by the Holy Spirit. ¹⁹And Joseph her husband, being a righteous man and not wanting to disgrace her, planned to send her away secretly. ²⁰But when he had considered this, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, “Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife; for the Child who has been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. ²¹“She will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Jesus, for He will save His people from their sins.” ²²Now all this took place to fulfill what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet: ²³“BEHOLD, THE VIRGIN SHALL BE WITH CHILD AND SHALL BEAR A SON, AND THEY SHALL CALL HIS NAME IMMANUEL,” which translated means, “GOD WITH US.” ²⁴And Joseph awoke from his sleep and did as the angel of the Lord commanded him, and took *Mary* as his wife, ²⁵but kept her a virgin until she gave birth to a Son; and he called His name Jesus.

*g. The Birth of the King,
§ 10, Luke 2:1-7*

[Luke 2:1-7](#)

¹Now in those days a decree went out from Caesar Augustus, that a census be taken of all the inhabited earth. ²This was the first census taken while Quirinius was governor of Syria. ³And everyone was on his way to register for the census, each to his own city. ⁴Joseph also went up from Galilee, from the city of Nazareth, to Judea, to the city of David which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the house and family of David, ⁵in order to register along with Mary, who was engaged to him, and was with child. ⁶While they were there, the days were completed for her to give birth. ⁷And she gave birth to her firstborn son; and she wrapped Him in cloths, and laid Him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.

*h. The Announcement to the Shepherds,
§ 11, Luke 2:8-20*

[Luke 2:8-20](#)

⁸In the same region there were *some* shepherds staying out in the fields and keeping watch over their flock by night. ⁹And an angel of the Lord suddenly stood before them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them; and they were terribly frightened. ¹⁰But the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid; for behold, I bring you good news of great joy which will be for all the people; ¹¹for today in the city of David there has been born for you a Savior, who is Christ the Lord. ¹²"This *will be* a sign for you: you will find a baby wrapped in cloths and lying in a manger." ¹³And suddenly there appeared with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God and saying, ¹⁴"Glory to God in the highest, And on earth peace among men with whom He is pleased." ¹⁵When the angels had gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds *began* saying to one another, "Let us go straight to Bethlehem then, and see this thing that has happened which the Lord has made known to us." ¹⁶So they came in a hurry and found their way to Mary and Joseph, and the baby as He lay in the manger. ¹⁷When they had seen this, they made known the statement which had been told them about this Child. ¹⁸And all who heard it wondered at the things which were told them by the shepherds. ¹⁹But Mary treasured all these things, pondering them in her heart. ²⁰The shepherds went back, glorifying and praising God for all that they had heard and seen, just as had been told them.

3. His Infancy and Childhood, § 12 - 19

*a. The Circumcision,
§ 12, Luke 2:21*

[Luke 2:21](#)

²¹And when eight days had passed, before His circumcision, His name was *then* called Jesus, the name given by the angel before He was conceived in the womb.

*b. The Presentation,
§ 13, Luke 2:22-38*

[Luke 2:22–38](#)

²²And when the days for their purification according to the law of Moses were completed, they brought Him up to Jerusalem to present Him to the Lord ²³(as it is written in the Law of the Lord, “EVERY *firstborn* MALE THAT OPENS THE WOMB SHALL BE CALLED HOLY TO THE LORD”), ²⁴and to offer a sacrifice according to what was said in the Law of the Lord, “A PAIR OF TURTLEDOVES OR TWO YOUNG PIGEONS.”

²⁵And there was a man in Jerusalem whose name was Simeon; and this man was righteous and devout, looking for the consolation of Israel; and the Holy Spirit was upon him. ²⁶And it had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord’s Christ. ²⁷And he came in the Spirit into the temple; and when the parents brought in the child Jesus, to carry out for Him the custom of the Law, ²⁸then he took Him into his arms, and blessed God, and said, ²⁹“Now Lord, You are releasing Your bond-servant to depart in peace, According to Your word; ³⁰For my eyes have seen Your salvation, ³¹Which You have prepared in the presence of all peoples, ³²A LIGHT OF REVELATION TO THE GENTILES, And the glory of Your people Israel.” ³³And His father and mother were amazed at the things which were being said about Him. ³⁴And Simeon blessed them and said to Mary His mother, “Behold, this *Child* is appointed for the fall and rise of many in Israel, and for a sign to be opposed— ³⁵and a sword will pierce even your own soul—to the end that thoughts from many hearts may be revealed.”

³⁶And there was a prophetess, Anna the daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Asher. She was advanced in years and had lived with *her* husband seven years after her marriage, ³⁷and then as a widow to the age of eighty-four. She never left the temple, serving night and day with fastings and prayers. ³⁸At that very moment she came up and *began* giving thanks to God, and continued to speak of Him to all those who were looking for the redemption of Jerusalem.

c. His Infancy

- (1) In Bethlehem,
§ 14, Matthew 2:1-12

[Matthew 2:1–12](#)

The Visit of the Magi

¹Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, magi from the east arrived in Jerusalem, saying, ²“Where is He who has been born King of the Jews? For we saw His star in the east and have come to worship Him.” ³When Herod the king heard *this*, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him. ⁴Gathering together all the chief priests and scribes of the people, he inquired of them where the Messiah was to be born. ⁵They said to him, “In Bethlehem of Judea; for this is what has been written by the prophet: ⁶‘AND YOU, BETHLEHEM, LAND OF JUDAH, ARE BY NO MEANS LEAST AMONG THE LEADERS OF JUDAH; FOR OUT OF YOU SHALL COME FORTH A RULER WHO WILL SHEPHERD MY PEOPLE ISRAEL.’ ” ⁷Then Herod secretly called the magi and determined from them the exact time the star appeared. ⁸And he sent them to Bethlehem and said, “Go and search carefully for the Child; and when you have found *Him*, report to me, so that I too may come and worship Him.” ⁹After hearing the king, they went their way; and the star, which they had seen in the east, went on before them until it came and stood over *the place* where the Child was. ¹⁰When they saw the star, they rejoiced exceedingly with great joy. ¹¹After coming into the house they saw the Child with Mary His mother; and they fell to the ground and worshiped Him. Then, opening their treasures, they presented to Him gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh. ¹²And having been warned *by God* in a dream not to return to Herod, the magi left for their own country by another way.

- (2) In Egypt,
§ 15, Matthew 2:13-18

[Matthew 2:13–18](#)

The Flight to Egypt

¹³Now when they had gone, behold, an angel of the Lord *appeared to Joseph in a dream and said, “Get up! Take the Child and His mother and flee to Egypt, and remain there until I tell you; for Herod is going to search for the Child to destroy Him.” ¹⁴So Joseph got up and took the Child and His mother while it was still night, and left for Egypt. ¹⁵He remained there until the death of Herod. *This was* to fulfill what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet: “OUT OF EGYPT I CALLED MY SON.”

Herod Slaughters Babies

¹⁶Then when Herod saw that he had been tricked by the magi, he became very enraged, and sent and slew all the male children who were in Bethlehem and all its vicinity, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had determined from the magi. ¹⁷Then what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled: ¹⁸“A VOICE WAS HEARD IN RAMAH, WEEPING AND GREAT MOURNING, RACHEL WEEPING FOR HER CHILDREN; AND SHE REFUSED TO BE COMFORTED, BECAUSE THEY WERE NO MORE.”

- (3) In Nazareth,
§ 16, Matthew 2:19-23; Luke 2:39

[Matthew 2:19–23](#)

[Luke 2:39](#)

¹⁹But when Herod died, behold, an angel of the Lord *appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, and said, ²⁰“Get up, take the Child and His mother, and go into the land of Israel; for those who sought the Child’s life are dead.” ²¹So Joseph got up, took the Child and His mother, and came into the land of Israel. ²²But when he heard that Archelaus was reigning over Judea in place of his father Herod, he was afraid to go there. Then after being warned *by God* in a dream, he left for the regions of Galilee, ²³and came and lived in a city called Nazareth. *This was* to fulfill what was spoken through the prophets: “He shall be called a Nazarene.”

³⁹When they had performed everything according to the Law of the Lord, they returned to Galilee, to their own city of Nazareth.

d. His Boyhood

- (1) His Growth,
§ 17, Luke 2:40

[Luke 2:40](#)

⁴⁰The Child continued to grow and become strong, increasing in wisdom; and the grace of God was upon Him.

- (2) The Visit to Jerusalem,
§ 18, Luke 2:41-50

[Luke 2:41–50](#)

⁴¹Now His parents went to Jerusalem every year at the Feast of the Passover. ⁴²And when He became twelve, they went up *there* according to the custom of the Feast; ⁴³and as they were returning, after spending the full number of days, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem. But His parents were unaware of it, ⁴⁴but supposed Him to be in the caravan, and went a day's journey; and they *began* looking for Him among their relatives and acquaintances. ⁴⁵When they did not find Him, they returned to Jerusalem looking for Him. ⁴⁶Then, after three days they found Him in the temple, sitting in the midst of the teachers, both listening to them and asking them questions. ⁴⁷And all who heard Him were amazed at His understanding and His answers. ⁴⁸When they saw Him, they were astonished; and His mother said to Him, "Son, why have You treated us this way? Behold, Your father and I have been anxiously looking for You." ⁴⁹And He said to them, "Why is it that you were looking for Me? Did you not know that I had to be in My Father's *house*?" ⁵⁰But they did not understand the statement which He had made to them.

- (3) His Development,
§ 19, Luke 2:51-52

[Luke 2:51–52](#)

⁵¹And He went down with them and came to Nazareth, and He continued in subjection to them; and His mother treasured all *these* things in her heart. ⁵²And Jesus kept increasing in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and men.

B. The Herald of the King, § 20-23

1. The Message to John, § 20, Mark 1:1; Luke 3:1-2

Mark 1:1

¹The beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Luke 3:1–2

¹Now in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar, when Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Iturea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, ²in the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas, the word of God came to John, the son of Zacharias, in the wilderness.

2. The Message by John, § 21, Matthew 3:1-6; Mark 1:2-6; Luke 3:3-6

Matthew 3:1–6

¹Now in those days John the Baptist ^{*}came, preaching in the wilderness of Judea, saying, ²“Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.” ³For this is the one referred to by Isaiah the prophet when he said, “THE VOICE OF ONE CRYING IN THE WILDERNESS, ‘MAKE READY THE WAY OF THE LORD, MAKE HIS PATHS STRAIGHT!’ ” ⁴Now John himself had a garment of camel’s hair and a leather belt around his waist; and his food was locusts and wild honey. ⁵Then Jerusalem was going out to him, and all Judea and all the district around the Jordan; ⁶and they were being baptized by him in the Jordan River, as they confessed their sins.

Mark 1:2–6

²As it is written in Isaiah the prophet: “BEHOLD, I SEND MY MESSENGER AHEAD OF YOU, WHO WILL PREPARE YOUR WAY; ³THE VOICE OF ONE CRYING IN THE WILDERNESS, ‘MAKE READY THE WAY OF THE LORD, MAKE HIS PATHS STRAIGHT.’ ” ⁴John the Baptist appeared in the wilderness preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. ⁵And all the country of Judea was going out to him, and all the people of Jerusalem; and they were being baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins. ⁶John was clothed with camel’s hair and wore a leather belt around his waist, and his diet was locusts and wild honey.

Luke 3:3–6

³And he came into all the district around the Jordan, preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins; ⁴as it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet, “THE VOICE OF ONE CRYING IN THE WILDERNESS, ‘MAKE READY THE WAY OF THE LORD, MAKE HIS PATHS STRAIGHT. ⁵EVERY RAVINE WILL BE FILLED, AND EVERY MOUNTAIN AND HILL WILL BE BROUGHT LOW; THE CROOKED WILL BECOME STRAIGHT, AND THE ROUGH ROADS SMOOTH; ⁶AND ALL FLESH WILL SEE THE SALVATION OF GOD.’ ”

3. The Explanation by John, § 22, Matthew 3:7-10; Luke 3:7-14

Matthew 3:7-10

⁷But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming for baptism, he said to them, "You brood of vipers, who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?" ⁸"Therefore bear fruit in keeping with repentance; ⁹and do not suppose that you can say to yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father'; for I say to you that from these stones God is able to raise up children to Abraham. ¹⁰"The axe is already laid at the root of the trees; therefore every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.

Luke 3:7-14

⁷So he *began* saying to the crowds who were going out to be baptized by him, "You brood of vipers, who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?" ⁸"Therefore bear fruits in keeping with repentance, and do not begin to say to yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father,' for I say to you that from these stones God is able to raise up children to Abraham. ⁹"Indeed the axe is already laid at the root of the trees; so every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire."

¹⁰And the crowds were questioning him, saying, "Then what shall we do?" ¹¹And he would answer and say to them, "The man who has two tunics is to share with him who has none; and he who has food is to do likewise." ¹²And *some* tax collectors also came to be baptized, and they said to him, "Teacher, what shall we do?" ¹³And he said to them, "Collect no more than what you have been ordered to." ¹⁴*Some* soldiers were questioning him, saying, "And *what about us*, what shall we do?" And he said to them, "Do not take money from anyone by force, or accuse *anyone* falsely, and be content with your wages."

4. The Promise by John, § 23, Mark 1:7-8; Matthew 3:11-12; Luke 3:15-18

Matthew 3:11-12

¹¹"As for me, I baptize you with water for repentance, but He who is coming after me is mightier than I, and I am not fit to remove His sandals; He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire. ¹²"His winnowing fork is in His hand, and He will thoroughly clear His threshing floor; and He will gather His wheat into the barn, but He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire."

Mark 1:7-8

⁷And he was preaching, and saying, "After me One is coming who is mightier than I, and I am not fit to stoop down and untie the thong of His sandals. ⁸"I baptized you with water; but He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

Luke 3:15-18

¹⁵Now while the people were in a state of expectation and all were wondering in their hearts about John, as to whether he was the Christ, ¹⁶John answered and said to them all, "As for me, I baptize you with water; but One is coming who is mightier than I, and I am not fit to untie the thong of His sandals; He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire. ¹⁷"His winnowing fork is in His hand to thoroughly clear His threshing floor, and to gather the wheat into His barn; but He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire." ¹⁸So with many other exhortations he preached the gospel to the people.

C. The Approval of the King, § 24-27

1. At His Baptism,

§ 24, Matthew 3:13-17 Mark 1:9-11; Luke 3:21-23

Matthew 3:13-17

¹³Then Jesus *arrived from Galilee at the Jordan *coming* to John, to be baptized by him.

¹⁴But John tried to prevent Him, saying, “I have need to be baptized by You, and do You come to me?” ¹⁵But Jesus answering said to him, “Permit *it* at this time; for in this way it is fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness.” Then he *permitted Him.

¹⁶After being baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove *and* lighting on Him,

¹⁷and behold, a voice out of the heavens said, “This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well-pleased.”

Mark 1:9-11

⁹In those days Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee and was baptized by John in the Jordan.

¹⁰Immediately coming up out of the water, He saw the heavens opening, and the Spirit like a dove descending upon Him;

¹¹and a voice came out of the heavens: “You are My beloved Son, in You I am well-pleased.”

Luke 3:21-23a

²¹Now when all the people were baptized, Jesus was also baptized,

and while He was praying, heaven was opened, ²²and the Holy Spirit descended upon Him in bodily form like a dove,

and a voice came out of heaven, “You are My beloved Son, in You I am well-pleased.”

²³When He began His ministry, Jesus Himself was about thirty years of age, ...

2. Through the Temptation, § 25, Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13

Matthew 4:1-11

¹Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil. ²And after He had fasted forty days and forty nights, He then became hungry.

³And the tempter came and said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread." ⁴But He answered and said, "It is written, 'MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF GOD.'" "

⁸Again, the devil *took Him to a very high mountain and *showed Him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory; ⁹and he said to Him, "All these things I will give You, if You fall down and worship me." ¹⁰Then Jesus *said to him, "Go, Satan! For it is written, 'YOU SHALL WORSHIP THE LORD YOUR GOD, AND SERVE HIM ONLY.'" "

⁵Then the devil *took Him into the holy city and had Him stand on the pinnacle of the temple, ⁶and *said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, throw Yourself down; for it is written, 'HE WILL COMMAND HIS ANGELS CONCERNING YOU'; and 'ON *their* HANDS THEY WILL BEAR YOU UP, SO THAT YOU WILL NOT STRIKE YOUR FOOT AGAINST A STONE.'" ⁷Jesus said to him, "On the other hand, it is written, 'YOU SHALL NOT PUT THE LORD YOUR GOD TO THE TEST.'" "

¹¹Then the devil *left Him; and behold, angels came and *began* to minister to Him.

Mark 1:12-13

¹²Immediately the Spirit *impelled Him *to go* out into the wilderness. ¹³And He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan; and He was with the wild beasts,

and the angels were ministering to Him.

Luke 4:1-13

¹Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led around by the Spirit in the wilderness ²for forty days, being tempted by the devil. And He ate nothing during those days, and when they had ended, He became hungry.

³And the devil said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, tell this stone to become bread." ⁴And Jesus answered him, "It is written, 'MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE.'" "

⁵And he led Him up and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. ⁶And the devil said to Him, "I will give You all this domain and its glory; for it has been handed over to me, and I give it to whomever I wish. ⁷"Therefore if You worship before me, it shall all be Yours." ⁸Jesus answered him, "It is written, 'YOU SHALL WORSHIP THE LORD YOUR GOD AND SERVE HIM ONLY.'" "

⁹And he led Him to Jerusalem and had Him stand on the pinnacle of the temple, and said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, throw Yourself down from here; ¹⁰for it is written, 'HE WILL COMMAND HIS ANGELS CONCERNING YOU TO GUARD YOU,' ¹¹and, 'ON *their* HANDS THEY WILL BEAR YOU UP, SO THAT YOU WILL NOT STRIKE YOUR FOOT AGAINST A STONE.'" ¹²And Jesus answered and said to him, "It is said, 'YOU SHALL NOT PUT THE LORD YOUR GOD TO THE TEST.'" "

¹³When the devil had finished every temptation, he left Him until an opportune time.

3. By His Herald, § 26-27

a. Testimony of John before Leaders, § 26, John 1:19-28

John 1:19–28

¹⁹This is the testimony of John, when the Jews sent to him priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, “Who are you?” ²⁰And he confessed and did not deny, but confessed, “I am not the Christ.” ²¹They asked him, “What then? Are you Elijah?” And he *said, “I am not.” “Are you the Prophet?” And he answered, “No.” ²²Then they said to him, “Who are you, so that we may give an answer to those who sent us? What do you say about yourself?” ²³He said, “I am A VOICE OF ONE CRYING IN THE WILDERNESS, ‘MAKE STRAIGHT THE WAY OF THE LORD,’ as Isaiah the prophet said.” ²⁴Now they had been sent from the Pharisees. ²⁵They asked him, and said to him, “Why then are you baptizing, if you are not the Christ, nor Elijah, nor the Prophet?” ²⁶John answered them saying, “I baptize in water, *but* among you stands One whom you do not know. ²⁷*It is* He who comes after me, the thong of whose sandal I am not worthy to untie.” ²⁸These things took place in Bethany beyond the Jordan, where John was baptizing.

b. Testimony of John to Jesus, § 27, John 1:29-34

John 1:29–34

²⁹The next day he *saw Jesus coming to him and *said, “Behold, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world! ³⁰“This is He on behalf of whom I said, ‘After me comes a Man who has a higher rank than I, for He existed before me.’ ³¹“I did not recognize Him, but so that He might be manifested to Israel, I came baptizing in water.” ³²John testified saying, “I have seen the Spirit descending as a dove out of heaven, and He remained upon Him. ³³“I did not recognize Him, but He who sent me to baptize in water said to me, ‘He upon whom you see the Spirit descending and remaining upon Him, this is the One who baptizes in the Holy Spirit.’ ³⁴“I myself have seen, and have testified that this is the Son of God.”

II The Authentication of the King, § 28-56

A. Acceptance of His Person, § 28-36

1. In the Belief by the First Disciples, § 28, John 1:35-51

[John 1:35–51](#)

³⁵Again the next day John was standing with two of his disciples, ³⁶and he looked at Jesus as He walked, and *said, “Behold, the Lamb of God!” ³⁷The two disciples heard him speak, and they followed Jesus. ³⁸And Jesus turned and saw them following, and *said to them, “What do you seek?” They said to Him, “Rabbi (which translated means Teacher), where are You staying?” ³⁹He *said to them, “Come, and you will see.” So they came and saw where He was staying; and they stayed with Him that day, for it was about the tenth hour. ⁴⁰One of the two who heard John *speak* and followed Him, was Andrew, Simon Peter’s brother. ⁴¹He *found first his own brother Simon and *said to him, “We have found the Messiah” (which translated means Christ). ⁴²He brought him to Jesus. Jesus looked at him and said, “You are Simon the son of John; you shall be called Cephas” (which is translated Peter). ⁴³The next day He purposed to go into Galilee, and He *found Philip. And Jesus *said to him, “Follow Me.” ⁴⁴Now Philip was from Bethsaida, of the city of Andrew and Peter. ⁴⁵Philip *found Nathanael and *said to him, “We have found Him of whom Moses in the Law and *also* the Prophets wrote—Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph.” ⁴⁶Nathanael said to him, “Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?” Philip *said to him, “Come and see.” ⁴⁷Jesus saw Nathanael coming to Him, and *said of him, “Behold, an Israelite indeed, in whom there is no deceit!” ⁴⁸Nathanael *said to Him, “How do You know me?” Jesus answered and said to him, “Before Philip called you, when you were under the fig tree, I saw you.” ⁴⁹Nathanael answered Him, “Rabbi, You are the Son of God; You are the King of Israel.” ⁵⁰Jesus answered and said to him, “Because I said to you that I saw you under the fig tree, do you believe? You will see greater things than these.” ⁵¹And He *said to him, “Truly, truly, I say to you, you will see the heavens opened and the angels of God ascending and descending on the Son of Man.”

2. The Belief through the first Miracle, § 29, John 2:1-11

[John 2:1–11](#)

¹On the third day there was a wedding in Cana of Galilee, and the mother of Jesus was there; ²and both Jesus and His disciples were invited to the wedding. ³When the wine ran out, the mother of Jesus *said to Him, “They have no wine.” ⁴And Jesus *said to her, “Woman, what does that have to do with us? My hour has not yet come.” ⁵His mother *said to the servants, “Whatever He says to you, do it.” ⁶Now there were six stone waterpots set there for the Jewish custom of purification, containing twenty or thirty gallons each. ⁷Jesus *said to them, “Fill the waterpots with water.” So they filled them up to the brim. ⁸And He *said to them, “Draw *some* out now and take it to the headwaiter.” So they took it *to him*. ⁹When the headwaiter tasted the water which had become wine, and did not know where it came from (but the servants who had drawn the water knew), the headwaiter *called the bridegroom, ¹⁰and *said to him, “Every man serves the good wine first, and when *the people* have drunk freely, *then he serves* the poorer wine; *but* you have kept the good wine until now.” ¹¹This beginning of *His* signs Jesus did in Cana of Galilee, and manifested His glory, and His disciples believed in Him.

3. The Sojourn in Capernaum, § 30, John 2:12

John 2:12

¹²After this He went down to Capernaum, He and His mother and *His* brothers and His disciples; and they stayed there a few days.

4. The Possession of the Temple – the First Passover, § 31, John 2:13-22

John 2:13–22

¹³The Passover of the Jews was near, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem. ¹⁴And He found in the temple those who were selling oxen and sheep and doves, and the money changers seated *at their tables*. ¹⁵And He made a scourge of cords, and drove *them* all out of the temple, with the sheep and the oxen; and He poured out the coins of the money changers and overturned their tables; ¹⁶and to those who were selling the doves He said, “Take these things away; stop making My Father’s house a place of business.” ¹⁷His disciples remembered that it was written, “ZEAL FOR YOUR HOUSE WILL CONSUME ME.” ¹⁸The Jews then said to Him, “What sign do You show us as your authority for doing these things?” ¹⁹Jesus answered them, “Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.” ²⁰The Jews then said, “It took forty-six years to build this temple, and will You raise it up in three days?” ²¹But He was speaking of the temple of His body. ²²So when He was raised from the dead, His disciples remembered that He said this; and they believed the Scripture and the word which Jesus had spoken.

5. Acceptance in Judea, § 32, John 2:23-3:21

a. Faith in His Signs

John 2:23–25

²³Now when He was in Jerusalem at the Passover, during the feast, many believed in His name, observing His signs which He was doing. ²⁴But Jesus, on His part, was not entrusting Himself to them, for He knew all men, ²⁵and because He did not need anyone to testify concerning man, for He Himself knew what was in man.

b. The Explanation to Nicodemus

[John 3:1–3:21](#)

^{3:1}Now there was a man of the Pharisees, named Nicodemus, a ruler of the Jews; ²this man came to Jesus by night and said to Him, “Rabbi, we know that You have come from God *as* a teacher; for no one can do these signs that You do unless God is with him.” ³Jesus answered and said to him, “Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God.” ⁴Nicodemus ^{*}said to Him, “How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother’s womb and be born, can he?” ⁵Jesus answered, “Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. ⁶“That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. ⁷“Do not be amazed that I said to you, ‘You must be born again.’ ⁸“The wind blows where it wishes and you hear the sound of it, but do not know where it comes from and where it is going; so is everyone who is born of the Spirit.” ⁹Nicodemus said to Him, “How can these things be?” ¹⁰Jesus answered and said to him, “Are you the teacher of Israel and do not understand these things? ¹¹“Truly, truly, I say to you, we speak of what we know and testify of what we have seen, and you do not accept our testimony. ¹²“If I told you earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you heavenly things? ¹³“No one has ascended into heaven, but He who descended from heaven: the Son of Man. ¹⁴“As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up; ¹⁵so that whoever believes will in Him have eternal life. ¹⁶“For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. ¹⁷“For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. ¹⁸“He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. ¹⁹“This is the judgment, that the Light has come into the world, and men loved the darkness rather than the Light, for their deeds were evil. ²⁰“For everyone who does evil hates the Light, and does not come to the Light for fear that his deeds will be exposed. ²¹“But he who practices the truth comes to the Light, so that his deeds may be manifested as having been wrought in God.”

6. The Witness of John, § 33, John 3:22-36

[John 3:22–36](#)

²²After these things Jesus and His disciples came into the land of Judea, and there He was spending time with them and baptizing. ²³John also was baptizing in Aenon near Salim, because there was much water there; and *people* were coming and were being baptized— ²⁴for John had not yet been thrown into prison. ²⁵Therefore there arose a discussion on the part of John’s disciples with a Jew about purification. ²⁶And they came to John and said to him, “Rabbi, He who was with you beyond the Jordan, to whom you have testified, behold, He is baptizing and all are coming to Him.” ²⁷John answered and said, “A man can receive nothing unless it has been given him from heaven. ²⁸“You yourselves are my witnesses that I said, ‘I am not the Christ,’ but, ‘I have been sent ahead of Him.’ ²⁹“He who has the bride is the bridegroom; but the friend of the bridegroom, who stands and hears him, rejoices greatly because of the bridegroom’s voice. So this joy of mine has been made full. ³⁰“He must increase, but I must decrease. ³¹“He who comes from above is above all, he who is of the earth is from the earth and speaks of the earth. He who comes from heaven is above all. ³²“What He has seen and heard, of that He testifies; and no one receives His testimony. ³³“He who has received His testimony has set his seal to *this*, that God is true. ³⁴“For He whom God has sent speaks the words of God; for He gives the Spirit without measure. ³⁵“The Father loves the Son and has given all things into His hand. ³⁶“He who believes in the Son has eternal life; but he who does not obey the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God abides on him.”

7. The Imprisonment of John,

§ 34, Matthew 4:12; Mark 1:14; Luke 3:19-20; 4:14; John 4:1-4

[Matthew 4:12](#)

¹²Now when Jesus heard that John had been taken into custody, He withdrew into Galilee;

[Mark 1:14](#)

¹⁴Now after John had been taken into custody, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of God,

[Luke 3:19–20; 4:14](#)

¹⁹But when Herod the tetrarch was reprimanded by him because of Herodias, his brother's wife, and because of all the wicked things which Herod had done, ²⁰Herod also added this to them all: he locked John up in prison.

^{4:14}And Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about Him spread through all the surrounding district.

[John 4:1–4](#)

¹Therefore when the Lord knew that the Pharisees had heard that Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John ²(although Jesus Himself was not baptizing, but His disciples were), ³He left Judea and went away again into Galilee. ⁴And He had to pass through Samaria.

8. The Acceptance in Samaria,

§ 35, John 4:5-42

[John 4:5–42](#)

The woman of Samaria

⁵So He *came to a city of Samaria called Sychar, near the parcel of ground that Jacob gave to his son Joseph; ⁶and Jacob's well was there. So Jesus, being wearied from His journey, was sitting thus by the well. It was about the sixth hour. ⁷There *came a woman of Samaria to draw water. Jesus *said to her, "Give Me a drink." ⁸For His disciples had gone away into the city to buy food. ⁹Therefore the Samaritan woman *said to Him, "How is it that You, being a Jew, ask me for a drink since I am a Samaritan woman?" (For Jews have no dealings with Samaritans.)

A new kind of life

¹⁰Jesus answered and said to her, "If you knew the gift of God, and who it is who says to you, 'Give Me a drink,' you would have asked Him, and He would have given you living water." ¹¹She *said to Him, "Sir, You have nothing to draw with and the well is deep; where then do You get that living water? ¹²"You are not greater than our father Jacob, are You, who gave us the well, and drank of it himself and his sons and his cattle?" ¹³Jesus answered and said to her, "Everyone who drinks of this water will thirst again; ¹⁴but whoever drinks of the water that I will give him shall never thirst; but the water that I will give him will become in him a well of water springing up to eternal life."

The woman's life

¹⁵The woman *said to Him, "Sir, give me this water, so I will not be thirsty nor come all the way here to draw." ¹⁶He *said to her, "Go, call your husband and come here." ¹⁷The woman answered and said, "I have no

husband.” Jesus *said to her, “You have correctly said, ‘I have no husband’; ¹⁸for you have had five husbands, and the one whom you now have is not your husband; this you have said truly.” ¹⁹The woman *said to Him, “Sir, I perceive that You are a prophet.

True worship

²⁰“Our fathers worshiped in this mountain, and you *people* say that in Jerusalem is the place where men ought to worship.” ²¹Jesus *said to her, “Woman, believe Me, an hour is coming when neither in this mountain nor in Jerusalem will you worship the Father. ²²“You worship what you do not know; we worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews. ²³“But an hour is coming, and now is, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth; for such people the Father seeks to be His worshipers.

Who the Father is

²⁴“God is spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.”

Who the Messiah is

²⁵The woman *said to Him, “I know that Messiah is coming (He who is called Christ); when that One comes, He will declare all things to us.” ²⁶Jesus *said to her, “I who speak to you am *He*.”

The disciples return

²⁷At this point His disciples came, and they were amazed that He had been speaking with a woman, yet no one said, “What do You seek?” or, “Why do You speak with her?” ²⁸So the woman left her waterpot, and went into the city and *said to the men, ²⁹“Come, see a man who told me all the things that I *have* done; this is not the Christ, is it?” ³⁰They went out of the city, and were coming to Him.

³¹Meanwhile the disciples were urging Him, saying, “Rabbi, eat.” ³²But He said to them, “I have food to eat that you do not know about.” ³³So the disciples were saying to one another, “No one brought Him *anything* to eat, did he?” ³⁴Jesus *said to them, “My food is to do the will of Him who sent Me and to accomplish His work.

³⁵“Do you not say, ‘There are yet four months, and *then* comes the harvest’? Behold, I say to you, lift up your eyes and look on the fields, that they are white for harvest. ³⁶“Already he who reaps is receiving wages and is gathering fruit for life eternal; so that he who sows and he who reaps may rejoice together. ³⁷“For in this *case* the saying is true, ‘One sows and another reaps.’ ³⁸“I sent you to reap that for which you have not labored; others have labored and you have entered into their labor.”

Belief in Samaria

³⁹From that city many of the Samaritans believed in Him because of the word of the woman who testified, “He told me all the things that I *have* done.” ⁴⁰So when the Samaritans came to Jesus, they were asking Him to stay with them; and He stayed there two days. ⁴¹Many more believed because of His word; ⁴²and they were saying to the woman, “It is no longer because of what you said that we believe, for we have heard for ourselves and know that this One is indeed the Savior of the world.”

9. The Acceptance in Galilee, § 36, John 4:43-45

[John 4:43-45](#)

⁴³After the two days He went forth from there into Galilee. ⁴⁴For Jesus Himself testified that a prophet has no honor in his own country. ⁴⁵So when He came to Galilee, the Galileans received Him, having seen all the things that He did in Jerusalem at the feast; for they themselves also went to the feast.

B. The Authority of the King, § 37 - 56

1. Messiah's Authority to Preach, § 37, Matthew 4:17; Mark 1:14-15; Luke 4:14-15

[Matthew 4:17](#)

¹⁷From that time Jesus began to preach and say, "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand."

[Mark 1:14–15](#)

¹⁴Now after John had been taken into custody, Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of God, ¹⁵and saying, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel."

[Luke 4:14–15](#)

¹⁴And Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about Him spread through all the surrounding district. ¹⁵And He *began* teaching in their synagogues and was praised by all.

2. Messiah's Authority to Heal, § 38, John 4:46-54

[John 4:46–54](#)

⁴⁶Therefore He came again to Cana of Galilee where He had made the water wine. And there was a royal official whose son was sick at Capernaum. ⁴⁷When he heard that Jesus had come out of Judea into Galilee, he went to Him and was imploring *Him* to come down and heal his son; for he was at the point of death. ⁴⁸So Jesus said to him, "Unless you *people* see signs and wonders, you *simply* will not believe." ⁴⁹The royal official *said to Him, "Sir, come down before my child dies." ⁵⁰Jesus *said to him, "Go; your son lives." The man believed the word that Jesus spoke to him and started off. ⁵¹As he was now going down, *his* slaves met him, saying that his son was living. ⁵²So he inquired of them the hour when he began to get better. Then they said to him, "Yesterday at the seventh hour the fever left him." ⁵³So the father knew that *it was* at that hour in which Jesus said to him, "Your son lives"; and he himself believed and his whole household. ⁵⁴This is again a second sign that Jesus performed when He had come out of Judea into Galilee.

3. The Rejection in Nazareth, § 39, Luke 4:16-30

[Luke 4:16–31](#)

¹⁶And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read. ¹⁷And the book of the prophet Isaiah was handed to Him. And He opened the book and found the place where it was written, ¹⁸"THE SPIRIT OF THE LORD IS UPON ME, BECAUSE HE ANOINTED ME TO PREACH THE GOSPEL TO THE POOR. HE HAS SENT ME TO PROCLAIM RELEASE TO THE CAPTIVES, AND RECOVERY OF SIGHT TO THE BLIND, TO SET FREE THOSE WHO ARE OPPRESSED, ¹⁹TO PROCLAIM THE FAVORABLE YEAR OF THE LORD." ²⁰And He closed the book, gave it back to the attendant and sat down; and the eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed on Him. ²¹And He began to say to them, "Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing." ²²And all were speaking well of Him, and wondering at the gracious words which were falling from His lips; and they were saying, "Is this not Joseph's son?" ²³And He said to them, "No doubt you will quote this proverb to Me, 'Physician, heal yourself! Whatever we heard was done at Capernaum, do here in your hometown as well.' " ²⁴And He said, "Truly I say to you, no prophet is welcome in his hometown. ²⁵"But I say to you in truth, there

were many widows in Israel in the days of Elijah, when the sky was shut up for three years and six months, when a great famine came over all the land; ²⁶and yet Elijah was sent to none of them, but only to Zarephath, *in the land* of Sidon, to a woman who was a widow. ²⁷“And there were many lepers in Israel in the time of Elisha the prophet; and none of them was cleansed, but only Naaman the Syrian.” ²⁸And all *the people* in the synagogue were filled with rage as they heard these things; ²⁹and they got up and drove Him out of the city, and led Him to the brow of the hill on which their city had been built, in order to throw Him down the cliff. ³⁰But passing through their midst, He went His way.

4. The Headquarters in Capernaum, § 40, Matthew 4:13-16

[Matthew 4:13-16](#)

¹³and leaving Nazareth, He came and settled in Capernaum, which is by the sea, in the region of Zebulun and Naphtali. ¹⁴*This was* to fulfill what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet: ¹⁵“THE LAND OF ZEBULUN AND THE LAND OF NAPHTALI, BY THE WAY OF THE SEA, BEYOND THE JORDAN, GALILEE OF THE GENTILES— ¹⁶“THE PEOPLE WHO WERE SITTING IN DARKNESS SAW A GREAT LIGHT, AND THOSE WHO WERE SITTING IN THE LAND AND SHADOW OF DEATH, UPON THEM A LIGHT DAWNED.”

5. Messiah’s Authority over Demons, § 41, Mark 1:21-28; Luke 4:31-37

[Mark 1:21-28](#)

²¹They *went into Capernaum; and immediately on the Sabbath He entered the synagogue and *began* to teach. ²²They were amazed at His teaching; for He was teaching them as *one* having authority, and not as the scribes.

²³Just then there was a man in their synagogue with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, ²⁴saying, “What business do we have with each other, Jesus of Nazareth? Have You come to destroy us? I know who You are—the Holy One of God!” ²⁵And Jesus rebuked him, saying, “Be quiet, and come out of him!” ²⁶Throwing him into convulsions, the unclean spirit cried out with a loud voice and came out of him.

²⁷They were all amazed, so that they debated among themselves, saying, “What is this? A new teaching with authority! He commands even the unclean spirits, and they obey Him.”

²⁸Immediately the news about Him spread everywhere into all the surrounding district of Galilee.

[Luke 4:31-37](#)

³¹And He came down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee, and He was teaching them on the Sabbath; ³²and they were amazed at His teaching, for His message was with authority.

³³In the synagogue there was a man possessed by the spirit of an unclean demon, and he cried out with a loud voice, ³⁴“Let us alone! What business do we have with each other, Jesus of Nazareth? Have You come to destroy us? I know who You are—the Holy One of God!” ³⁵But Jesus rebuked him, saying, “Be quiet and come out of him!” And when the demon had thrown him down in the midst *of the people*, he came out of him without doing him any harm.

³⁶And amazement came upon them all, and they *began* talking with one another saying, “What is this message? For with authority and power He commands the unclean spirits and they come out.”

³⁷And the report about Him was spreading into every locality in the surrounding district.

**6. Messiah's Authority over Disease,
§ 42, Matthew 8:14-17; Mark 1:29-34; Luke 4:38-41**

[Matthew 8:14-17](#)

¹⁴When Jesus came into Peter's home,

He saw his mother-in-law lying sick in bed with a fever.

¹⁵He touched her hand, and the fever left her; and she got up and waited on Him.

¹⁶When evening came, they brought to Him many who were demon-possessed; and He cast out the spirits with a word, and healed all who were ill.

¹⁷*This was to fulfill what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet: "HE HIMSELF TOOK OUR INFIRMITIES AND CARRIED AWAY OUR DISEASES."*

[Mark 1:29-34](#)

²⁹And immediately after they came out of the synagogue, they came into the house of Simon and Andrew, with James and John.

³⁰Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever; and immediately they *spoke to Jesus about her.

³¹And He came to her and raised her up, taking her by the hand, and the fever left her, and she waited on them.

³²When evening came, after the sun had set, they *began* bringing to Him all who were ill and those who were demon-possessed. ³³And the whole city had gathered at the door. ³⁴And He healed many who were ill with various diseases, and cast out many demons; and He was not permitting the demons to speak, because they knew who He was.

[Luke 4:38-41](#)

³⁸Then He got up and *left* the synagogue, and entered Simon's home.

Now Simon's mother-in-law was suffering from a high fever, and they asked Him to help her.

³⁹And standing over her, He rebuked the fever, and it left her; and she immediately got up and waited on them.

⁴⁰While the sun was setting, all those who had any *who were* sick with various diseases brought them to Him; and laying His hands on each one of them, He was healing them. ⁴¹Demons also were coming out of many, shouting, "You are the Son of God!" But rebuking them, He would not allow them to speak, because they knew Him to be the Christ.

7. Messiah's Authority to Preach,

§ 43, Matthew 4:23-25; Mark 1:35-39; Luke 4:42-44

[Matthew 4:23–25](#)

²³Jesus was going throughout all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues and proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every kind of disease and every kind of sickness among the people. ²⁴The news about Him spread throughout all Syria; and they brought to Him all who were ill, those suffering with various diseases and pains, demoniacs, epileptics, paralytics; and He healed them. ²⁵Large crowds followed Him from Galilee and *the* Decapolis and Jerusalem and Judea and *from* beyond the Jordan.

[Mark 1:35–39](#)

³⁵In the early morning, while it was still dark, Jesus got up, left *the house*, and went away to a secluded place, and was praying there. ³⁶Simon and his companions searched for Him; ³⁷they found Him, and *said to Him, "Everyone is looking for You." ³⁸He *said to them, "Let us go somewhere else to the towns nearby, so that I may preach there also; for that is what I came for." ³⁹And He went into their synagogues throughout all Galilee, preaching and casting out the demons.

[Luke 4:42–44](#)

⁴²When day came, Jesus left and went to a secluded place; and the crowds were searching for Him, and came to Him and tried to keep Him from going away from them. ⁴³But He said to them, "I must preach the kingdom of God to the other cities also, for I was sent for this purpose." ⁴⁴So He kept on preaching in the synagogues of Judea.

8. Messiah's Authority over Nature,

§ 44, Matthew 4:18-22; Mark 1:16-20; Luke 5:1-11

[Matthew 4:18–22](#)

¹⁸Now as Jesus was walking by the Sea of Galilee, He saw two brothers, Simon who was called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea; for they were fishermen. ¹⁹And He *said to them, "Follow Me, and I will make you fishers of men." ²⁰Immediately they left their nets and followed Him. ²¹Going on from there He saw two other brothers, James the *son* of Zebedee, and John his brother, in the boat with Zebedee their father, mending their nets; and He called them. ²²Immediately they left the boat and their father, and followed Him.

[Mark 1:16–20](#)

¹⁶As He was going along by the Sea of Galilee, He saw Simon and Andrew, the brother of Simon, casting a net in the sea; for they were fishermen. ¹⁷And Jesus said to them, "Follow Me, and I will make you become fishers of men." ¹⁸Immediately they left their nets and followed Him. ¹⁹Going on a little farther, He saw James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, who were also in the boat mending the nets. ²⁰Immediately He called them; and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, and went away to follow Him.

[Luke 5:1–3](#)

¹Now it happened that while the crowd was pressing around Him and listening to the word of God, He was standing by the lake of Gennesaret; ²and He saw two boats lying at the edge of the lake; but the fishermen had gotten out of them and were washing their nets. ³And He got into one of the boats, which was Simon's, and asked him to put out a little way from the land. And He sat down and *began* teaching the people from the boat.

[Luke 5:4-11](#)

⁴When He had finished speaking, He said to Simon, “Put out into the deep water and let down your nets for a catch.” ⁵Simon answered and said, “Master, we worked hard all night and caught nothing, but I will do as You say *and* let down the nets.” ⁶When they had done this, they enclosed a great quantity of fish, and their nets *began* to break; ⁷so they signaled to their partners in the other boat for them to come and help them. And they came and filled both of the boats, so that they began to sink. ⁸But when Simon Peter saw *that*, he fell down at Jesus’ feet, saying, “Go away from me Lord, for I am a sinful man!” ⁹For amazement had seized him and all his companions because of the catch of fish which they had taken; ¹⁰and so also *were* James and John, sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon. And Jesus said to Simon, “Do not fear, from now on you will be catching men.” ¹¹When they had brought their boats to land, they left everything and followed Him.

**9. Messiah's Authority over Defilement,
§ 45, Matthew 8: 2-4; Mark 1:40-45; Luke 5:12-16**

[Matthew 8:2-4](#)

²And a leper came to Him and bowed down before Him, and said, "Lord, if You are willing, You can make me clean." ³Jesus stretched out His hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing; be cleansed." And immediately his leprosy was cleansed. ⁴And Jesus ^{*}said to him, "See that you tell no one; but go, show yourself to the priest and present the offering that Moses commanded, as a testimony to them."

[Mark 1:40-45](#)

⁴⁰And a leper ^{*}came to Jesus, beseeching Him and falling on his knees before Him, and saying, "If You are willing, You can make me clean." ⁴¹Moved with compassion, Jesus stretched out His hand and touched him, and ^{*}said to him, "I am willing; be cleansed." ⁴²Immediately the leprosy left him and he was cleansed. ⁴³And He sternly warned him and immediately sent him away, ⁴⁴and He ^{*}said to him, "See that you say nothing to anyone; but go, show yourself to the priest and offer for your cleansing what Moses commanded, as a testimony to them." ⁴⁵But he went out and began to proclaim it freely and to spread the news around, to such an extent that Jesus could no longer publicly enter a city, but stayed out in unpopulated areas; and they were coming to Him from everywhere.

[Luke 5:12-16](#)

¹²While He was in one of the cities, behold, *there was* a man covered with leprosy; and when he saw Jesus, he fell on his face and implored Him, saying, "Lord, if You are willing, You can make me clean." ¹³And He stretched out His hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing; be cleansed." And immediately the leprosy left him. ¹⁴And He ordered him to tell no one, "But go and show yourself to the priest and make an offering for your cleansing, just as Moses commanded, as a testimony to them." ¹⁵But the news about Him was spreading even farther, and large crowds were gathering to hear *Him* and to be healed of their sicknesses. ¹⁶But Jesus Himself would *often* slip away to the wilderness and pray.

10. Messiah's Authority to Forgive Sin, § 46, Matthew 9:1-8; Mark 2:1-12; Luke 5:17-26

Matthew 9:1-8

¹Getting into a boat, Jesus crossed over *the sea* and came to His own city. ²And they brought to Him a paralytic lying on a bed. Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralytic, "Take courage, son; your sins are forgiven." ³And some of the scribes said to themselves, "This *fellow* blasphemes." ⁴And Jesus knowing their thoughts said, "Why are you thinking evil in your hearts? ⁵"Which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up, and walk'? ⁶"But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins"—then He ^{*}said to the paralytic, "Get up, pick up your bed and go home." ⁷And he got up and went home. ⁸But when the crowds saw *this*, they were awestruck, and glorified God, who had given such authority to men.

Mark 2:1-12

¹When He had come back to Capernaum several days afterward, it was heard that He was at home. ²And many were gathered together, so that there was no longer room, not even near the door; and He was speaking the word to them. ³And they ^{*}came, bringing to Him a paralytic, carried by four men. ⁴Being unable to get to Him because of the crowd, they removed the roof above Him; and when they had dug an opening, they let down the pallet on which the paralytic was lying. ⁵And Jesus seeing their faith ^{*}said to the paralytic, "Son, your sins are forgiven." ⁶But some of the scribes were sitting there and reasoning in their hearts, ⁷"Why does this man speak that way? He is blaspheming; who can forgive sins but God alone?" ⁸Immediately Jesus, aware in His spirit that they were reasoning that way within themselves, ^{*}said to them, "Why are you reasoning about these things in your hearts? ⁹"Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, 'Your sins are forgiven'; or to say, 'Get up, and pick up your pallet and walk'? ¹⁰"But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins"—He ^{*}said to the paralytic, ¹¹"I say to you, get up, pick up your pallet and go home." ¹²And he got up and immediately picked up the pallet and went out in the sight of everyone, so that they were all amazed and were glorifying God, saying, "We have never seen anything like this."

Luke 5:17-26

¹⁷One day He was teaching; and there were *some* Pharisees and teachers of the law sitting *there*, who had come from every village of Galilee and Judea and *from* Jerusalem; and the power of the Lord was *present* for Him to perform healing. ¹⁸And *some* men were carrying on a bed a man who was paralyzed; and they were trying to bring him in and to set him down in front of Him. ¹⁹But not finding any *way* to bring him in because of the crowd, they went up on the roof and let him down through the tiles with his stretcher, into the middle *of the crowd*, in front of Jesus. ²⁰Seeing their faith, He said, "Friend, your sins are forgiven you." ²¹The scribes and the Pharisees began to reason, saying, "Who is this *man* who speaks blasphemies? Who can forgive sins, but God alone?" ²²But Jesus, aware of their reasonings, answered and said to them, "Why are you reasoning in your hearts? ²³"Which is easier, to say, 'Your sins have been forgiven you,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'? ²⁴"But, so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins,"—He said to the paralytic—"I say to you, get up, and pick up your stretcher and go home." ²⁵Immediately he got up before them, and picked up what he had been lying on, and went home glorifying God. ²⁶They were all struck with astonishment and *began* glorifying God; and they were filled with fear, saying, "We have seen remarkable things today."

**11. Messiah's Authority over Men,
§ 47, Matthew 9:9-13; Mark 2:13-17; Luke 5:27-32**

Matthew 9:9-13

⁹As Jesus went on from there, He saw a man called Matthew, sitting in the tax collector's booth; and He *said to him, "Follow Me!" And he got up and followed Him.

¹⁰Then it happened that as Jesus was reclining *at the table* in the house, behold, many tax collectors and sinners came and were dining with Jesus and His disciples.

¹¹When the Pharisees saw *this*, they said to His disciples, "Why is your Teacher eating with the tax collectors and sinners?"

¹²But when Jesus heard *this*, He said, "*It is not those who are healthy who need a physician, but those who are sick.* ¹³"But go and learn what this means: 'I DESIRE COMPASSION, AND NOT SACRIFICE,' for I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners."

Mark 2:13-17

¹³And He went out again by the seashore; and all the people were coming to Him, and He was teaching them.

¹⁴As He passed by, He saw Levi the *son* of Alphaeus sitting in the tax booth, and He *said to him, "Follow Me!" And he got up and followed Him.

¹⁵And it *happened that He was reclining *at the table* in his house, and many tax collectors and sinners were dining with Jesus and His disciples; for there were many of them, and they were following Him.

¹⁶When the scribes of the Pharisees saw that He was eating with the sinners and tax collectors, they said to His disciples, "Why is He eating and drinking with tax collectors and sinners?"

¹⁷And hearing *this*, Jesus *said to them, "*It is not those who are healthy who need a physician, but those who are sick; I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners.*"

Luke 5:27-32

²⁷After that He went out and noticed a tax collector named Levi sitting in the tax booth, and He said to him, "Follow Me." ²⁸And he left everything behind, and got up and *began* to follow Him.

²⁹And Levi gave a big reception for Him in his house; and there was a great crowd of tax collectors and other *people* who were reclining *at the table* with them.

³⁰The Pharisees and their scribes *began* grumbling at His disciples, saying, "Why do you eat and drink with the tax collectors and sinners?"

³¹And Jesus answered and said to them, "*It is not those who are well who need a physician, but those who are sick.* ³²"I have not come to call the righteous but sinners to repentance."

**12. Messiah's Authority over Tradition,
§ 48, Matthew 9:14-17; Mark 2:18-22, Luke 5:33-39**

[Matthew 9:14–17](#)

¹⁴Then the disciples of John *came to Him, asking, “Why do we and the Pharisees fast, but Your disciples do not fast?”

¹⁵And Jesus said to them, “The attendants of the bridegroom cannot mourn as long as the bridegroom is with them, can they? But the days will come when the bridegroom is taken away from them, and then they will fast.

¹⁶“But no one puts a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old garment; for the patch pulls away from the garment, and a worse tear results.

¹⁷“Nor do *people* put new wine into old wineskins; otherwise the wineskins burst, and the wine pours out and the wineskins are ruined; but they put new wine into fresh wineskins, and both are preserved.”

[Mark 2:18–22](#)

¹⁸John's disciples and the Pharisees were fasting; and they *came and *said to Him, “Why do John's disciples and the disciples of the Pharisees fast, but Your disciples do not fast?”

¹⁹And Jesus said to them, “While the bridegroom is with them, the attendants of the bridegroom cannot fast, can they? So long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast. ²⁰“But the days will come when the bridegroom is taken away from them, and then they will fast in that day.

²¹“No one sews a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old garment; otherwise the patch pulls away from it, the new from the old, and a worse tear results.

²²“No one puts new wine into old wineskins; otherwise the wine will burst the skins, and the wine is lost and the skins *as well*; but *one puts* new wine into fresh wineskins.”

[Luke 5:33–39](#)

³³And they said to Him, “The disciples of John often fast and offer prayers, the *disciples* of the Pharisees also do the same, but Yours eat and drink.”

³⁴And Jesus said to them, “You cannot make the attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is with them, can you? ³⁵“But *the* days will come; and when the bridegroom is taken away from them, then they will fast in those days.”

³⁶And He was also telling them a parable: “No one tears a piece of cloth from a new garment and puts it on an old garment; otherwise he will both tear the new, and the piece from the new will not match the old.

³⁷“And no one puts new wine into old wineskins; otherwise the new wine will burst the skins and it will be spilled out, and the skins will be ruined. ³⁸“But new wine must be put into fresh wineskins. ³⁹“And no one, after drinking old *wine* wishes for new; for he says, ‘The old is good *enough*.’ ”

13. Messiah's Authority over the Sabbath, § 49 - 51

a. *Through the Healing of the Paralytic,* § 49, John 5:1-47

John 5:1-47

The Healing at Bethesda

¹After these things there was a feast of the Jews, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem. ²Now there is in Jerusalem by the sheep *gate* a pool, which is called in Hebrew Bethesda, having five porticoes. ³In these lay a multitude of those who were sick, blind, lame, and withered, [waiting for the moving of the waters; ⁴for an angel of the Lord went down at certain seasons into the pool and stirred up the water; whoever then first, after the stirring up of the water, stepped in was made well from whatever disease with which he was afflicted.] ⁵A man was there who had been ill for thirty-eight years. ⁶When Jesus saw him lying *there*, and knew that he had already been a long time *in that condition*, He ^{*}said to him, "Do you wish to get well?" ⁷The sick man answered Him, "Sir, I have no man to put me into the pool when the water is stirred up, but while I am coming, another steps down before me." ⁸Jesus ^{*}said to him, "Get up, pick up your pallet and walk." ⁹Immediately the man became well, and picked up his pallet and *began* to walk. Now it was the Sabbath on that day. ¹⁰So the Jews were saying to the man who was cured, "It is the Sabbath, and it is not permissible for you to carry your pallet." ¹¹But he answered them, "He who made me well was the one who said to me, 'Pick up your pallet and walk.'" ¹²They asked him, "Who is the man who said to you, 'Pick up *your pallet* and walk'?" ¹³But the man who was healed did not know who it was, for Jesus had slipped away while there was a crowd in *that* place. ¹⁴Afterward Jesus ^{*}found him in the temple and said to him, "Behold, you have become well; do not sin anymore, so that nothing worse happens to you." ¹⁵The man went away, and told the Jews that it was Jesus who had made him well.

Jesus' Equality with God

¹⁶For this reason the Jews were persecuting Jesus, because He was doing these things on the Sabbath. ¹⁷But He answered them, "My Father is working until now, and I Myself am working." ¹⁸For this reason therefore the Jews were seeking all the more to kill Him, because He not only was breaking the Sabbath, but also was calling God His own Father, making Himself equal with God. ¹⁹Therefore Jesus answered and was saying to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, the Son can do nothing of Himself, unless *it is* something He sees the Father doing; for whatever the Father does, these things the Son also does in like manner. ²⁰"For the Father loves the Son, and shows Him all things that He Himself is doing; and *the Father* will show Him greater works than these, so that you will marvel. ²¹"For just as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, even so the Son also gives life to whom He wishes. ²²"For not even the Father judges anyone, but He has given all judgment to the Son, ²³so that all will honor the Son even as they honor the Father. He who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent Him. ²⁴"Truly, truly, I say to you, he who hears My word, and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life, and does not come into judgment, but has passed out of death into life.

Two Resurrections

²⁵"Truly, truly, I say to you, an hour is coming and now is, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live. ²⁶"For just as the Father has life in Himself, even so He gave to the Son also to have life in Himself; ²⁷and He gave Him authority to execute judgment, because He is *the Son of Man*. ²⁸"Do not marvel at this; for an hour is coming, in which all who are in the tombs will hear His voice, ²⁹and will come forth; those who did the good *deeds* to a resurrection of life, those who committed the evil *deeds* to a resurrection of judgment. ³⁰"I can do nothing on My own initiative. As I hear, I judge; and My judgment is just, because I do not seek My own will, but the will of Him who sent Me. ³¹"If I *alone* testify about Myself, My testimony is not true. ³²"There is another who testifies of Me, and I know that the testimony which He gives about Me is true.

Witness of John

³³“You have sent to John, and he has testified to the truth. ³⁴“But the testimony which I receive is not from man, but I say these things so that you may be saved. ³⁵“He was the lamp that was burning and was shining and you were willing to rejoice for a while in his light.

Witness of Works

³⁶“But the testimony which I have is greater than *the testimony of John*; for the works which the Father has given Me to accomplish—the very works that I do—testify about Me, that the Father has sent Me.

Witness of the Father

³⁷“And the Father who sent Me, He has testified of Me. You have neither heard His voice at any time nor seen His form. ³⁸“You do not have His word abiding in you, for you do not believe Him whom He sent.

Witness of the Scripture

³⁹“You search the Scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life; it is these that testify about Me; ⁴⁰and you are unwilling to come to Me so that you may have life. ⁴¹“I do not receive glory from men; ⁴²but I know you, that you do not have the love of God in yourselves. ⁴³“I have come in My Father’s name, and you do not receive Me; if another comes in his own name, you will receive him. ⁴⁴“How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another and you do not seek the glory that is from the *one and only* God? ⁴⁵“Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have set your hope. ⁴⁶“For if you believed Moses, you would believe Me, for he wrote about Me. ⁴⁷“But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?”

*b. Through the Controversy over Grain,
§ 50, Matthew 12:1-8; Mark 2:23-28; Luke 6:1-5*

[Matthew 12:1-8](#)

Sabbath Questions

¹At that time Jesus went through the grainfields on the Sabbath, and His disciples became hungry and began to pick the heads of *grain* and eat.

²But when the Pharisees saw *this*, they said to Him, “Look, Your disciples do what is not lawful to do on a Sabbath.”

³But He said to them, “Have you not read what David did when he became hungry, he and his companions, ⁴how he entered the house of God, and they ate the consecrated bread, which was not lawful for him to eat nor for those with him, but for the priests alone?”

⁵“Or have you not read in the Law, that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple break the Sabbath and are innocent? ⁶“But I say to you that something greater than the temple is here. ⁷“But if you had known what this means, ‘I DESIRE COMPASSION, AND NOT A SACRIFICE,’ you would not have condemned the innocent.

⁸“For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath.”

[Mark 2:23-28](#)

Question of the Sabbath

²³And it happened that He was passing through the grainfields on the Sabbath, and His disciples began to make their way along while picking the heads of *grain*.

²⁴The Pharisees were saying to Him, “Look, why are they doing what is not lawful on the Sabbath?”

²⁵And He *said to them, “Have you never read what David did when he was in need and he and his companions became hungry; ²⁶how he entered the house of God in the time of Abiathar *the* high priest, and ate the consecrated bread, which is not lawful for *anyone* to eat except the priests, and he also gave it to those who were with him?”

²⁷Jesus said to them, “The Sabbath was made for man, and not man for the Sabbath.

²⁸“So the Son of Man is Lord even of the Sabbath.”

[Luke 6:1-5](#)

Jesus Is Lord of the Sabbath

¹Now it happened that He was passing through *some* grainfields on a Sabbath; and His disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands, and eating *the grain*.

²But some of the Pharisees said, “Why do you do what is not lawful on the Sabbath?”

³And Jesus answering them said, “Have you not even read what David did when he was hungry, he and those who were with him, ⁴how he entered the house of God, and took and ate the consecrated bread which is not lawful for any to eat except the priests alone, and gave it to his companions?”

⁵And He was saying to them, “The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath.”

c. Through the Healing of the Man with a Withered Hand,

§ 51, Matthew 12:9-14; Mark 3:1-6; Luke 6:6-11

Matthew 12:9–14

⁹Departing from there, He went into their synagogue. ¹⁰And a man *was there* whose hand was withered.

And they questioned Jesus, asking, “Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?”—so that they might accuse Him.

¹¹And He said to them, “What man is there among you who has a sheep, and if it falls into a pit on the Sabbath, will he not take hold of it and lift it out? ¹²“How much more valuable than is a man than a sheep! So then, it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath.”

¹³Then He ^{*}said to the man, “Stretch out your hand!” He stretched it out, and it was restored to normal, like the other.

¹⁴But the Pharisees went out and conspired against Him, *as to* how they might destroy Him.

Mark 3:1–6

¹He entered again into a synagogue; and a man was there whose hand was withered.

²They were watching Him *to see* if He would heal him on the Sabbath, so that they might accuse Him.

³He ^{*}said to the man with the withered hand, “Get up and come forward!”

⁴And He ^{*}said to them, “Is it lawful to do good or to do harm on the Sabbath, to save a life or to kill?” But they kept silent.

⁵After looking around at them with anger, grieved at their hardness of heart, He ^{*}said to the man, “Stretch out your hand.” And he stretched it out, and his hand was restored.

⁶The Pharisees went out and immediately *began* conspiring with the Herodians against Him, *as to* how they might destroy Him.

Luke 6:6–11

⁶On another Sabbath He entered the synagogue and was teaching; and there was a man there whose right hand was withered.

⁷The scribes and the Pharisees were watching Him closely *to see* if He healed on the Sabbath, so that they might find *reason* to accuse Him.

⁸But He knew what they were thinking, and He said to the man with the withered hand, “Get up and come forward!” And he got up and came forward.

⁹And Jesus said to them, “I ask you, is it lawful to do good or to do harm on the Sabbath, to save a life or to destroy it?”

¹⁰After looking around at them all, He said to him, “Stretch out your hand!” And he did *so*; and his hand was restored.

¹¹But they themselves were filled with rage, and discussed together what they might do to Jesus.

14. Messiah's Authority to Heal,

§ 52, Matthew 12: 15-21; Mark 3:7-12

[Matthew 12:15–21](#)

¹⁵But Jesus, aware of *this*, withdrew from there. Many followed Him, and He healed them all, ¹⁶and warned them not to tell who He was. ¹⁷*This was* to fulfill what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet: ¹⁸“BEHOLD, MY SERVANT WHOM I HAVE CHOSEN; MY BELOVED IN WHOM MY SOUL IS WELL-PLEASSED; I WILL PUT MY SPIRIT UPON HIM, AND HE SHALL PROCLAIM JUSTICE TO THE GENTILES. ¹⁹“HE WILL NOT QUARREL, NOR CRY OUT; NOR WILL ANYONE HEAR HIS VOICE IN THE STREETS. ²⁰“A BATTERED REED HE WILL NOT BREAK OFF, AND A SMOLDERING WICK HE WILL NOT PUT OUT, UNTIL HE LEADS JUSTICE TO VICTORY. ²¹“AND IN HIS NAME THE GENTILES WILL HOPE.”

[Mark 3:7–12](#)

⁷Jesus withdrew to the sea with His disciples; and a great multitude from Galilee followed; and *also* from Judea, ⁸and from Jerusalem, and from Idumea, and beyond the Jordan, and the vicinity of Tyre and Sidon, a great number of people heard of all that He was doing and came to Him. ⁹And He told His disciples that a boat should stand ready for Him because of the crowd, so that they would not crowd Him; ¹⁰for He had healed many, with the result that all those who had afflictions pressed around Him in order to touch Him. ¹¹Whenever the unclean spirits saw Him, they would fall down before Him and shout, “You are the Son of God!” ¹²And He earnestly warned them not to tell who He was.

15. The Choosing of the Twelve,

§ 53, Mark 3:13-19; Luke 6:12-16

[Mark 3:13–19](#)

¹³And He ^{*}went up on the mountain and ^{*}summoned those whom He Himself wanted, and they came to Him. ¹⁴And He appointed twelve, so that they would be with Him and that He *could* send them out to preach, ¹⁵and to have authority to cast out the demons. ¹⁶And He appointed the twelve:

Simon (to whom He gave the name Peter), ¹⁷and James, the *son* of Zebedee, and John the brother of James (to them He gave the name Boanerges, which means, “Sons of Thunder”); ¹⁸and Andrew, and Philip, and Bartholomew, and Matthew, and Thomas, and James the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus, and Simon the Zealot; ¹⁹and Judas Iscariot, who betrayed Him.

[Luke 6:12–16](#)

¹²It was at this time that He went off to the mountain to pray, and He spent the whole night in prayer to God. ¹³And when day came, He called His disciples to Him and chose twelve of them, whom He also named as apostles:

¹⁴Simon, whom He also named Peter, and Andrew his brother; and James and John; and Philip and Bartholomew; ¹⁵and Matthew and Thomas; James *the son* of Alphaeus, and Simon who was called the Zealot; ¹⁶Judas *the son* of James, and Judas Iscariot, who became a traitor.

16. Messiah's Authority to Interpret the Law, § 54, Matthew 5-7; Luke 6:17-49

a. *The Occasion,* *Matthew 5:1-2; Luke 6:17-19*

[Matthew 5:1-2](#)

¹When Jesus saw the crowds, He went up on the mountain; and after He sat down, His disciples came to Him. ²He opened His mouth and *began* to teach them, saying,

[Luke 6:17-19](#)

¹⁷Jesus came down with them and stood on a level place; and *there was* a large crowd of His disciples, and a great throng of people from all Judea and Jerusalem and the coastal region of Tyre and Sidon, ¹⁸who had come to hear Him and to be healed of their diseases; and those who were troubled with unclean spirits were being cured. ¹⁹And all the people were trying to touch Him, for power was coming from Him and healing *them* all.

b. *The Characteristics of True Righteousness*

(1) The Characteristics of Those Who Attain True Righteousness

i. *In Relationship to God, The Beatitudes Part 1:* *Matthew 5:3-6; Luke 6:20-21*

[Matthew 5:3-6](#)

³"Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. ⁴"Blessed are those who mourn, for they shall be comforted. ⁵"Blessed are the gentle, for they shall inherit the earth. ⁶"Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they shall be satisfied.

[Luke 6:20-21](#)

²⁰And turning His gaze toward His disciples, He *began* to say, "Blessed *are* you *who are* poor, for yours is the kingdom of God. ²¹"Blessed *are* you who hunger now, for you shall be satisfied. Blessed *are* you who weep now, for you shall laugh.

ii. *In Relationship to Man,* *Matthew 5:7-12; Luke 6:22-23*

[Matthew 5:7-12](#)

⁷"Blessed are the merciful, for they shall receive mercy. ⁸"Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God. ⁹"Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called sons of God. ¹⁰"Blessed are those who have been persecuted for the sake of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. ¹¹"Blessed are you when *people* insult you and persecute you, and falsely say all kinds of evil against you because of Me. ¹²"Rejoice and be glad, for your reward in heaven is great; for in the same way they persecuted the prophets who were before you.

[Luke 6:22-23](#)

²²"Blessed are you when men hate you, and ostracize you, and insult you, and scorn your name as evil, for the sake of the Son of Man. ²³"Be glad in that day and leap *for joy*, for behold, your reward is great in heaven. For in the same way their fathers used to treat the prophets.

- (2) The Characteristics of Those Who Fail,
Luke 6:24-26

[Luke 6:24–26](#)

²⁴“But woe to you who are rich, for you are receiving your comfort in full. ²⁵“Woe to you who are well-fed now, for you shall be hungry. Woe to you who laugh now, for you shall mourn and weep. ²⁶“Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers used to treat the false prophets in the same way.

- (3) The Characteristics of True Righteousness in Relationship to the World,
Matthew 5:13-16

[Matthew 5:13–16](#)

¹³“You are the salt of the earth; but if the salt has become tasteless, how can it be made salty *again*? It is no longer good for anything, except to be thrown out and trampled under foot by men. ¹⁴“You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden; ¹⁵nor does *anyone* light a lamp and put it under a basket, but on the lampstand, and it gives light to all who are in the house. ¹⁶“Let your light shine before men in such a way that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

*c. The Code of Righteousness,
Matthew 5:17-48*

- (1) Introduction,
Matthew 5:17-20

[Matthew 5:17–20](#)

¹⁷“Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish but to fulfill. ¹⁸“For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass from the Law until all is accomplished. ¹⁹“Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and teaches others to do the same, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches *them*, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven. ²⁰“For I say to you that unless your righteousness surpasses *that* of the scribes and Pharisees, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven.

- (2) Examples of the Code of True Righteousness:
Matthew 5:21-48; Luke 6:27–36

[Matthew 5:21–48](#)

Murder

²¹“You have heard that the ancients were told, ‘YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT MURDER’ and ‘Whoever commits murder shall be liable to the court.’ ²²“But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother shall be guilty before the court; and whoever says to his brother, ‘You good-for-nothing,’ shall be guilty before the supreme court; and whoever says, ‘You fool,’ shall be guilty *enough to go* into the fiery hell. ²³“Therefore if you are presenting your offering at the altar, and there remember that your brother has something against you, ²⁴leave your offering there before the altar and go; first be reconciled to your brother, and then come and present your offering. ²⁵“Make friends quickly with your opponent at law while you are with him on the way, so that your opponent may not hand you over to the judge, and the judge to the officer, and you be thrown into prison. ²⁶“Truly I say to you, you will not come out of there until you have paid up the last cent.

Adultery

²⁷“You have heard that it was said, ‘YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTERY’; ²⁸but I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart. ²⁹“If your right eye makes you stumble, tear it out and throw it from you; for it is better for you to lose one of the parts of your body, than for your whole body to be thrown into hell. ³⁰“If your right hand makes you stumble, cut it off and throw it from you; for it is better for you to lose one of the parts of your body, than for your whole body to go into hell.

Divorce

³¹“It was said, ‘WHOEVER SENDS HIS WIFE AWAY, LET HIM GIVE HER A CERTIFICATE OF DIVORCE’; ³²but I say to you that everyone who divorces his wife, except for *the* reason of unchastity, makes her commit adultery; and whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery.

Vows

³³“Again, you have heard that the ancients were told, ‘YOU SHALL NOT MAKE FALSE VOWS, BUT SHALL FULFILL YOUR VOWS TO THE LORD.’ ³⁴“But I say to you, make no oath at all, either by heaven, for it is the throne of God, ³⁵or by the earth, for it is the footstool of His feet, or by Jerusalem, for it is THE CITY OF THE GREAT KING. ³⁶“Nor shall you make an oath by your head, for you cannot make one hair white or black. ³⁷“But let your statement be, ‘Yes, yes’ or ‘No, no’; anything beyond these is of evil.

[Matthew 5:38–42](#)*An Eye for an Eye*

³⁸“You have heard that it was said, ‘AN EYE FOR AN EYE, AND A TOOTH FOR A TOOTH.’ ³⁹“But I say to you, do not resist an evil person; but whoever slaps you on your right cheek, turn the other to him also. ⁴⁰“If anyone wants to sue you and take your shirt, let him have your coat also. ⁴¹“Whoever forces you to go one mile, go with him two. ⁴²“Give to him who asks of you, and do not turn away from him who wants to borrow from you.

[Matthew 5:43–48](#)*The Law of Love*

⁴³“You have heard that it was said, ‘YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR and hate your enemy.’ ⁴⁴“But I say to you, love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, ⁴⁵so that you may be sons of your Father who is in heaven; for He causes His sun to rise on *the* evil and *the* good, and sends rain on *the* righteous and *the* unrighteous. ⁴⁶“For if you love those who love you, what reward do you have? Do not even the tax collectors do the same? ⁴⁷“If you greet only your brothers, what more are you doing *than others*? Do not even the Gentiles do the same? ⁴⁸“Therefore you are to be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

[Luke 6:27–31](#)

²⁷“But I say to you who hear, love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, ²⁸bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you. ²⁹“Whoever hits you on the cheek, offer him the other also; and whoever takes away your coat, do not withhold your shirt from him either. ³⁰“Give to everyone who asks of you, and whoever takes away what is yours, do not demand it back. ³¹“Treat others the same way you want them to treat you.

[Luke 6: 32–36](#)

³²“If you love those who love you, what credit is *that* to you? For even sinners love those who love them. ³³“If you do good to those who do good to you, what credit is *that* to you? For even sinners do the same. ³⁴“If you lend to those from whom you expect to receive, what credit is *that* to you? Even sinners lend to sinners in order to receive back the same *amount*. ³⁵“But love your enemies, and do good, and lend, expecting nothing in return; and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High; for He Himself is kind to ungrateful and evil *men*. ³⁶“Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.

d. The Conduct of True Righteousness, Matthew 6:1-18

[Matthew 6:1–18](#)

Introduction

¹“Beware of practicing your righteousness before men to be noticed by them; otherwise you have no reward with your Father who is in heaven.

Giving to the Poor

²“So when you give to the poor, do not sound a trumpet before you, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may be honored by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. ³“But when you give to the poor, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing, ⁴so that your giving will be in secret; and your Father who sees *what is done* in secret will reward you.

Prayer

⁵“When you pray, you are not to be like the hypocrites; for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on the street corners so that they may be seen by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. ⁶“But you, when you pray, go into your inner room, close your door and pray to your Father who is in secret, and your Father who sees *what is done* in secret will reward you.

⁷“And when you are praying, do not use meaningless repetition as the Gentiles do, for they suppose that they will be heard for their many words. ⁸“So do not be like them; for your Father knows what you need before you ask Him.

⁹“Pray, then, in this way: ‘Our Father who is in heaven, Hallowed be Your name. ¹⁰‘Your kingdom come. Your will be done, On earth as it is in heaven. ¹¹‘Give us this day our daily bread. ¹²‘And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. ¹³‘And do not lead us into temptation, but deliver us from evil. [For Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen.]’ ¹⁴“For if you forgive others for their transgressions, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. ¹⁵“But if you do not forgive others, then your Father will not forgive your transgressions.

Fasting

¹⁶“Whenever you fast, do not put on a gloomy face as the hypocrites *do*, for they neglect their appearance so that they will be noticed by men when they are fasting. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. ¹⁷“But you, when you fast, anoint your head and wash your face ¹⁸so that your fasting will not be noticed by men, but by your Father who is in secret; and your Father who sees *what is done* in secret will reward you.

e. The Practice of True Righteousness: Matthew 6:19-34, 7:1-12; Luke 6:37-42

[Matthew 6:19–24](#)

Treasure and Wealth

¹⁹“Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal. ²⁰“But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break in or steal; ²¹for where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. ²²“The eye is the lamp of the body; so then if your eye is clear, your whole body will be full of light. ²³“But if your eye is bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If then the light that is in you is darkness, how great is the darkness! ²⁴“No one can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth.

[Matthew 6:25–34](#)

Anxiety

²⁵“For this reason I say to you, do not be worried about your life, *as to* what you will eat or what you will drink; nor for your body, *as to* what you will put on. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing? ²⁶“Look at the birds of the air, that they do not sow, nor reap nor gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not worth much more than they? ²⁷“And who of you by being worried can add a *single* hour to his life? ²⁸“And why are you worried about clothing? Observe how the lilies of the field grow; they do not toil nor do they spin, ²⁹yet I say to you that not even Solomon in all his glory clothed himself like one of these. ³⁰“But if God so clothes the grass of the field, which is *alive* today and tomorrow is thrown into the furnace, *will He* not much more *clothe* you? You of little faith! ³¹“Do not worry then, saying, ‘What will we eat?’ or ‘What will we drink?’ or ‘What will we wear for clothing?’ ³²“For the Gentiles eagerly seek all these things; for your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things. ³³“But seek first His kingdom and His righteousness, and all these things will be added to you. ³⁴“So do not worry about tomorrow; for tomorrow will care for itself. Each day has enough trouble of its own.

[Matthew 7:1–6](#)

Judging Others

¹“Do not judge so that you will not be judged. ²“For in the way you judge, you will be judged; and by your standard of measure, it will be measured to you. ³“Why do you look at the speck that is in your brother’s eye, but do not notice the log that is in your own eye? ⁴“Or how can you say to your brother, ‘Let me take the speck out of your eye,’ and behold, the log is in your own eye? ⁵“You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take the speck out of your brother’s eye. ⁶“Do not give what is holy to dogs, and do not throw your pearls before swine, or they will trample them under their feet, and turn and tear you to pieces.

[Luke 6:37–42](#)

Judging Others

³⁷“Do not judge, and you will not be judged; and do not condemn, and you will not be condemned; pardon, and you will be pardoned. ³⁸“Give, and it will be given to you. They will pour into your lap a good measure—pressed down, shaken together, *and* running over. For by your standard of measure it will be measured to you in return.” ³⁹“And He also spoke a parable to them: “A blind man cannot guide a blind man, can he? Will they not both fall into a pit? ⁴⁰“A pupil is not above his teacher; but everyone, after he has been fully trained, will be like his teacher. ⁴¹“Why do you look at the speck that is in your brother’s eye, but do not notice the log that is in your own eye? ⁴²“Or how can you say to your brother, ‘Brother, let me take out the speck that is in your eye,’ when you yourself do not see the log that is in your own eye? You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the speck that is in your brother’s eye.

[Matthew 7:7–11](#)*Prayer*

⁷“Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you. ⁸“For everyone who asks receives, and he who seeks finds, and to him who knocks it will be opened. ⁹“Or what man is there among you who, when his son asks for a loaf, will give him a stone? ¹⁰“Or if he asks for a fish, he will not give him a snake, will he? ¹¹“If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give what is good to those who ask Him!

The Golden Rule[Matthew 7:12](#)

¹²“In everything, therefore, treat people the same way you want them to treat you, for this is the Law and the Prophets.

f. The Warning Concerning True Righteousness (Four Pairs), Matthew 7:13-27; Luke 6:43-49

[Matthew 7:13–14](#)*The Narrow and Wide Gates*

¹³“Enter through the narrow gate; for the gate is wide and the way is broad that leads to destruction, and there are many who enter through it. ¹⁴“For the gate is small and the way is narrow that leads to life, and there are few who find it.

[Matthew 7:15–20](#)*A Tree and Its Fruit*

¹⁵“Beware of the false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves. ¹⁶“You will know them by their fruits. Grapes are not gathered from thorn *bushes* nor figs from thistles, are they? ¹⁷“So every good tree bears good fruit, but the bad tree bears bad fruit. ¹⁸“A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit. ¹⁹“Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. ²⁰“So then, you will know them by their fruits.

[Luke 6:43–45](#)*A Tree and Its Fruit*

⁴³“For there is no good tree which produces bad fruit, nor, on the other hand, a bad tree which produces good fruit. ⁴⁴“For each tree is known by its own fruit. For men do not gather figs from thorns, nor do they pick grapes from a briar bush. ⁴⁵“The good man out of the good treasure of his heart brings forth what is good; and the evil *man* out of the evil *treasure* brings forth what is evil; for his mouth speaks from that which fills his heart.

[Matthew 7:21–23](#)*Lord, Lord*

²¹“Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven *will enter*. ²²“Many will say to Me on that day, ‘Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name perform many miracles?’ ²³“And then I will declare to them, ‘I never knew you; DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.’”

[Matthew 7:24–27](#)*The Two Foundations*

²⁴“Therefore everyone who hears these words of Mine and acts on them, may be compared to a wise man who built his house on the rock. ²⁵“And the rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew and slammed against that house; and yet it did not fall, for it had been founded on the rock. ²⁶“Everyone who hears these words of Mine and does not act on them, will be like a foolish man who built his house on the sand. ²⁷“The rain fell, and the floods came, and the winds blew and slammed against that house; and it fell—and great was its fall.”

[Luke 6:46–49](#)*Builders and Foundations*

⁴⁶“Why do you call Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and do not do what I say? ⁴⁷“Everyone who comes to Me and hears My words and acts on them, I will show you whom he is like: ⁴⁸he is like a man building a house, who dug deep and laid a foundation on the rock; and when a flood occurred, the torrent burst against that house and could not shake it, because it had been well built. ⁴⁹“But the one who has heard and has not acted *accordingly*, is like a man who built a house on the ground without any foundation; and the torrent burst against it and immediately it collapsed, and the ruin of that house was great.”

g. The Conclusion, Matthew 7:28-29; 8:1[Matthew 7:28-29; 8:1](#)

²⁸When Jesus had finished these words, the crowds were amazed at His teaching; ²⁹for He was teaching them as *one* having authority, and not as their scribes. ^{8:1}When Jesus came down from the mountain, large crowds followed Him.

17. Recognition of Authority in Capernaum, § 55, Matthew 8:5-13; Luke 7:1-10

Matthew 8:5-13

⁵And when Jesus entered Capernaum, a centurion came to Him, imploring Him, ⁶and saying, “Lord, my servant is lying paralyzed at home, fearfully tormented.”

⁷Jesus ^{*}said to him, “I will come and heal him.” ⁸But the centurion said, “Lord, I am not worthy for You to come under my roof, but just say the word, and my servant will be healed. ⁹“For I also am a man under authority, with soldiers under me; and I say to this one, ‘Go!’ and he goes, and to another, ‘Come!’ and he comes, and to my slave, ‘Do this!’ and he does *it*.”

¹⁰Now when Jesus heard *this*, He marveled and said to those who were following, “Truly I say to you, I have not found such great faith with anyone in Israel. ¹¹“I say to you that many will come from east and west, and recline *at the table* with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven; ¹²but the sons of the kingdom will be cast out into the outer darkness; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.”

¹³And Jesus said to the centurion, “Go; it shall be done for you as you have believed.” And the servant was healed that *very* moment.

Luke 7:1-10

¹When He had completed all His discourse in the hearing of the people, He went to Capernaum. ²And a centurion’s slave, who was highly regarded by him, was sick and about to die. ³When he heard about Jesus, he sent some Jewish elders asking Him to come and save the life of his slave. ⁴When they came to Jesus, they earnestly implored Him, saying, “He is worthy for You to grant this to him; ⁵for he loves our nation and it was he who built us our synagogue.”

⁶Now Jesus *started* on His way with them; and when He was not far from the house, the centurion sent friends, saying to Him, “Lord, do not trouble Yourself further, for I am not worthy for You to come under my roof; ⁷for this reason I did not even consider myself worthy to come to You, but *just* say the word, and my servant will be healed. ⁸“For I also am a man placed under authority, with soldiers under me; and I say to this one, ‘Go!’ and he goes, and to another, ‘Come!’ and he comes, and to my slave, ‘Do this!’ and he does *it*.”

⁹Now when Jesus heard this, He marveled at him, and turned and said to the crowd that was following Him, “I say to you, not even in Israel have I found such great faith.”

¹⁰When those who had been sent returned to the house, they found the slave in good health.

18. Recognition of Authority throughout the Land,

§ 56, Luke 7:11-17

Luke 7:11-17

¹¹Soon afterwards He went to a city called Nain; and His disciples were going along with Him, accompanied by a large crowd. ¹²Now as He approached the gate of the city, a dead man was being carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow; and a sizeable crowd from the city was with her. ¹³When the Lord saw her, He felt compassion for her, and said to her, "Do not weep." ¹⁴And He came up and touched the coffin; and the bearers came to a halt. And He said, "Young man, I say to you, arise!" ¹⁵The dead man sat up and began to speak. And *Jesus* gave him back to his mother. ¹⁶Fear gripped them all, and they *began* glorifying God, saying, "A great prophet has arisen among us!" and, "God has visited His people!" ¹⁷This report concerning Him went out all over Judea and in all the surrounding district.

III The Controversy over the King, § 57 - 71

A. The Rejection of the Herald, § 57, Matthew 11:2-19; Luke 7:18-35

1. A Deputation from John

[Matthew 11:2-6](#)

²Now when John, while imprisoned, heard of the works of Christ, he sent *word* by his disciples ³and said to Him, “Are You the Expected One, or shall we look for someone else?” ⁴Jesus answered and said to them, “Go and report to John what you hear and see: ⁵*the BLIND RECEIVE SIGHT and the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the POOR HAVE THE GOSPEL PREACHED TO THEM.* ⁶“And blessed is he who does not take offense at Me.”

[Luke 7:18-23](#)

¹⁸The disciples of John reported to him about all these things. ¹⁹Summoning two of his disciples, John sent them to the Lord, saying, “Are You the Expected One, or do we look for someone else?” ²⁰When the men came to Him, they said, “John the Baptist has sent us to You, to ask, ‘Are You the Expected One, or do we look for someone else?’ ” ²¹At that very time He cured many *people* of diseases and afflictions and evil spirits; and He gave sight to many *who were* blind. ²²And He answered and said to them, “Go and report to John what you have seen and heard: *the BLIND RECEIVE SIGHT, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, the POOR HAVE THE GOSPEL PREACHED TO THEM.* ²³“Blessed is he who does not take offense at Me.”

2. Jesus' Tribute to John

[Matthew 11:7-15](#)

⁷As these men were going *away*, Jesus began to speak to the crowds about John, “What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind? ⁸“But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft *clothing*? Those who wear soft *clothing* are in kings’ palaces! ⁹“But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I tell you, and one who is more than a prophet. ¹⁰“This is the one about whom it is written, ‘BEHOLD, I SEND MY MESSENGER AHEAD OF YOU, WHO WILL PREPARE YOUR WAY BEFORE YOU.’ ¹¹“Truly I say to you, among those born of women there has not arisen *anyone* greater than John the Baptist! Yet the one who is least in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he. ¹²“From the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, and violent men take it by force. ¹³“For all the prophets and the Law prophesied until John. ¹⁴“And if you are willing to accept *it*, John himself is Elijah who

[Luke 7:24-28](#)

²⁴When the messengers of John had left, He began to speak to the crowds about John, “What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind? ²⁵“But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothing? Those who are splendidly clothed and live in luxury are *found* in royal palaces! ²⁶“But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and one who is more than a prophet. ²⁷“This is the one about whom it is written, ‘BEHOLD, I SEND MY MESSENGER AHEAD OF YOU, WHO WILL PREPARE YOUR WAY BEFORE YOU.’ ²⁸“I say to you, among those born of women there is no one greater than John; yet he who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he.”

was to come. ¹⁵“He who has ears to hear, let him hear.

3. Responses

[Luke 7:29-30](#)

²⁹When all the people and the tax collectors heard *this*, they acknowledged God’s justice, having been baptized with the baptism of John. ³⁰But the Pharisees and the lawyers rejected God’s purpose for themselves, not having been baptized by John.

4. Reasons for Rejection

[Matthew 11:16-19](#)

¹⁶“But to what shall I compare this generation? It is like children sitting in the market places, who call out to the other *children*, ¹⁷and say, ‘We played the flute for you, and you did not dance; we sang a dirge, and you did not mourn.’ ¹⁸“For John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, ‘He has a demon!’ ¹⁹“The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and they say, ‘Behold, a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!’ Yet wisdom is vindicated by her deeds.”

[Luke 7:31-35](#)

³¹“To what then shall I compare the men of this generation, and what are they like? ³²“They are like children who sit in the market place and call to one another, and they say, ‘We played the flute for you, and you did not dance; we sang a dirge, and you did not weep.’ ³³“For John the Baptist has come eating no bread and drinking no wine, and you say, ‘He has a demon!’ ³⁴“The Son of Man has come eating and drinking, and you say, ‘Behold, a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!’ ³⁵“Yet wisdom is vindicated by all her children.”

B. Curses on the Cities of Galilee, § 58, Matthew 11:20-30

[Matthew 11:20–30](#)

The Condemnation of Unbelief

²⁰Then He began to denounce the cities in which most of His miracles were done, because they did not repent. ²¹“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles had occurred in Tyre and Sidon which occurred in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. ²²“Nevertheless I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon in *the* day of judgment than for you. ²³“And you, Capernaum, will not be exalted to heaven, will you? You will descend to Hades; for if the miracles had occurred in Sodom which occurred in you, it would have remained to this day. ²⁴“Nevertheless I say to you that it will be more tolerable for the land of Sodom in *the* day of judgment, than for you.”

The Explanation of Unbelief

²⁵At that time Jesus said, “I praise You, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that You have hidden these things from *the* wise and intelligent and have revealed them to infants. ²⁶“Yes, Father, for this way was well-pleasing in Your sight. ²⁷“All things have been handed over to Me by My Father; and no one knows the Son except the Father; nor does anyone know the Father except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son wills to reveal *Him*.

The Invitation to Belief and Discipleship

²⁸“Come to Me, all who are weary and heavy-laden, and I will give you rest. ²⁹“Take My yoke upon you and learn from Me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and YOU WILL FIND REST FOR YOUR SOULS. ³⁰“For My yoke is easy and My burden is light.”

C. The Reception of a Sinner, § 59, Luke 7:36-50

[Luke 7:36–50](#)

³⁶Now one of the Pharisees was requesting Him to dine with him, and He entered the Pharisee’s house and reclined *at the table*. ³⁷And there was a woman in the city who was a sinner; and when she learned that He was reclining *at the table* in the Pharisee’s house, she brought an alabaster vial of perfume, ³⁸and standing behind *Him* at His feet, weeping, she began to wet His feet with her tears, and kept wiping them with the hair of her head, and kissing His feet and anointing them with the perfume. ³⁹Now when the Pharisee who had invited Him saw this, he said to himself, “If this man were a prophet He would know who and what sort of person this woman is who is touching Him, that she is a sinner.”

Parable of Two Debtors

⁴⁰And Jesus answered him, “Simon, I have something to say to you.” And he replied, “Say it, Teacher.” ⁴¹“A moneylender had two debtors: one owed five hundred denarii, and the other fifty. ⁴²“When they were unable to repay, he graciously forgave them both. So which of them will love him more?” ⁴³Simon answered and said, “I suppose the one whom he forgave more.” And He said to him, “You have judged correctly.” ⁴⁴Turning toward the woman, He said to Simon, “Do you see this woman? I entered your house; you gave Me no water for My feet, but she has wet My feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair. ⁴⁵“You gave Me no kiss; but she, since the time I came in, has not ceased to kiss My feet. ⁴⁶“You did not anoint My head with oil, but she anointed My feet with perfume. ⁴⁷“For this reason I say to you, her sins, which are many, have been forgiven, for she loved much; but he who is forgiven little, loves little.” ⁴⁸Then He said to her, “Your sins have been forgiven.” ⁴⁹Those who were reclining *at the table* with Him began to say to themselves, “Who is this *man* who even forgives sins?” ⁵⁰And He said to the woman, “Your faith has saved you; go in peace.”

D. The Witness to the King, Ministering Women § 60, Luke 8:1-3

[Luke 8:1–3](#)

¹Soon afterwards, He *began* going around from one city and village to another, proclaiming and preaching the kingdom of God. The twelve were with Him, ²and *also* some women who had been healed of evil spirits and sicknesses: Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had gone out, ³and Joanna the wife of Chuza, Herod’s steward, and Susanna, and many others who were contributing to their support out of their private means.

E. The Rejection of the King by the Leaders, § 61 – 62

1. The Unpardonable Sin, § 61, Matthew 12:22-37; Mark 3:20-30

Mark 3:20–21

²⁰And He *came home, and the crowd *gathered again, to such an extent that they could not even eat a meal.

²¹When His own people heard *of this*, they went out to take custody of Him; for they were saying, “He has lost His senses.”

a. The Rejection, Matthew 12: 22-24; Mark 3:22

Matthew 12:22–24

²²Then a demon-possessed man *who was* blind and mute was brought to Jesus, and He healed him, so that the mute man spoke and saw. ²³All the crowds were amazed, and were saying, “This man cannot be the Son of David, can he?” ²⁴But when the Pharisees heard *this*, they said, “This man casts out demons only by Beelzebul the ruler of the demons.”

Mark 3:22

²²The scribes who came down from Jerusalem were saying, “He is possessed by Beelzebul,” and “He casts out the demons by the ruler of the demons.”

b. The Defence, Matthew 12:25-29; Mark 3:23-27

Matthew 12:25-29

²⁵And knowing their thoughts Jesus said to them, “Any kingdom divided against itself is laid waste; and any city or house divided against itself will not stand. ²⁶“If Satan casts out Satan, he is divided against himself; how then will his kingdom stand?

²⁷“If I by Beelzebul cast out demons, by whom do your sons cast *them* out? For this reason they will be your judges.

²⁸“But if I cast out demons by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.

²⁹“Or how can anyone enter the strong man’s house and carry off his property, unless he first binds the strong *man*? And then he will plunder his house.

Mark 3:23-27

²³And He called them to Himself and began speaking to them in parables, “How can Satan cast out Satan? ²⁴“If a kingdom is divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand. ²⁵“If a house is divided against itself, that house will not be able to stand. ²⁶“If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided, he cannot stand, but he is finished!

²⁷“But no one can enter the strong man’s house and plunder his property unless he first binds the strong man, and then he will plunder his house.

c. The Judgement, Matthew 12:30-37; Mark 3: 28-30

[Matthew 12:30-37](#)

³⁰“He who is not with Me is against Me; and he who does not gather with Me scatters. ³¹“Therefore I say to you, any sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven people, but blasphemy against the Spirit shall not be forgiven. ³²“Whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man, it shall be forgiven him; but whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, it shall not be forgiven him, either in this age or in the *age* to come.

[Mark 3: 28-30](#)

²⁸“Truly I say to you, all sins shall be forgiven the sons of men, and whatever blasphemies they utter; ²⁹but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit never has forgiveness, but is guilty of an eternal sin”— ³⁰because they were saying, “He has an unclean spirit.”

[Matthew 12:30-37 \(continued\)](#)

Words Reveal Character

³³“Either make the tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad; for the tree is known by its fruit.

³⁴“You brood of vipers, how can you, being evil, speak what is good? For the mouth speaks out of that which fills the heart.

³⁵“The good man brings out of *his* good treasure what is good; and the evil man brings out of *his* evil treasure what is evil.

³⁶“But I tell you that every careless word that people speak, they shall give an accounting for it in the day of judgment.

³⁷“For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned.”

**2. The New Policy Concerning Signs,
§ 62, Matthew 12:38-45**

a. The Sign for that Generation

[Matthew 12:38–40](#)

³⁸Then some of the scribes and Pharisees said to Him, “Teacher, we want to see a sign from You.” ³⁹But He answered and said to them, “An evil and adulterous generation craves for a sign; and *yet* no sign will be given to it but the sign of Jonah the prophet; ⁴⁰for just as JONAH WAS THREE DAYS AND THREE NIGHTS IN THE BELLY OF THE SEA MONSTER, so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

b. The Judgement of that Generation

[Matthew 12:41-45](#)

⁴¹“The men of Nineveh will stand up with this generation at the judgment, and will condemn it because they repented at the preaching of Jonah; and behold, something greater than Jonah is here. ⁴²“*The Queen of the South* will rise up with this generation at the judgment and will condemn it, because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and behold, something greater than Solomon is here.

⁴³“Now when the unclean spirit goes out of a man, it passes through waterless places seeking rest, and does

not find *it*. ⁴⁴Then it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came'; and when it comes, it finds *it* unoccupied, swept, and put in order. ⁴⁵Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more wicked than itself, and they go in and live there; and the last state of that man becomes worse than the first. That is the way it will also be with this evil generation."

F. Revelation in view of Rejection, § 63 - 68

1. The Repudiation of all Earthly Relations, § 63, Matthew 12:46-50; Mark 3:31-35; Luke 8:19-21

The events of this section occur after the first few parables of section 64, but are placed here so that the parables can be considered without interruption.

Matthew 12:46–50

⁴⁶While He was still speaking to the crowds, behold, His mother and brothers were standing outside, seeking to speak to Him.

⁴⁷Someone said to Him, “Behold, Your mother and Your brothers are standing outside seeking to speak to You.”⁴⁸But Jesus answered the one who was telling Him and said, “Who is My mother and who are My brothers?”⁴⁹And stretching out His hand toward His disciples, He said, “Behold My mother and My brothers!”⁵⁰“For whoever does the will of My Father who is in heaven, he is My brother and sister and mother.”

Mark 3:31–35

³¹Then His mother and His brothers *arrived, and standing outside they sent *word* to Him and called Him.

³²A crowd was sitting around Him, and they *said to Him, “Behold, Your mother and Your brothers are outside looking for You.”

³³Answering them, He *said, “Who are My mother and My brothers?”

³⁴Looking about at those who were sitting around Him, He *said, “Behold My mother and My brothers!”³⁵“For whoever does the will of God, he is My brother and sister and mother.”

Luke 8:19–21

¹⁹And His mother and brothers came to Him, and they were unable to get to Him because of the crowd. ²⁰And it was reported to Him, “Your mother and Your brothers are standing outside, wishing to see You.”²¹But He answered and said to them, “My mother and My brothers are these who hear the word of God and do it.”

2. The Course of the Kingdom Program in the Present Age, § 64, Matthew 13:1-53; Mark 4:1-34; Luke 8:4-18

Jesus Teaches in Parables, Mark 4:1-2; Matthew 13:1-3a; Luke 8:4

Matthew 13:1–3a

¹That day Jesus went out of the house and was sitting by the sea. ²And large crowds gathered to Him, so He got into a boat and sat down, and the whole crowd was standing on the beach. ³And He spoke many things to them in parables,

Mark 4:1–2

¹He began to teach again by the sea. And such a very large crowd gathered to Him that He got into a boat in the sea and sat down; and the whole crowd was by the sea on the land. ²And He was teaching them many things in parables, and was saying to them in His teaching,

Luke 8:4

⁴When a large crowd was coming together, and those from the various cities were journeying to Him, He spoke by way of a parable:

The Reason Jesus Teaches in Parables, Matthew 13:10-17, 34-35; Mark 4:10-12, 21-25, 33-34; Luke 8:9-10, 16-18

These explanations actually occur after the first parable, but are placed here so that the parables can be considered without interruption.

[Matthew 13:10-17, 34-35](#)

¹⁰And the disciples came and said to Him, “Why do You speak to them in parables?”

Jesus answered them, “To you it has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been granted.

¹²“For whoever has, to him more shall be given, and he will have an abundance; but whoever does not have, even what he has shall be taken away from him.

¹³“Therefore I speak to them in parables; because while seeing they do not see, and while hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand.

¹⁴“In their case the prophecy of Isaiah is being fulfilled, which says, ‘YOU WILL KEEP ON HEARING, BUT WILL NOT UNDERSTAND; YOU WILL KEEP ON SEEING, BUT WILL NOT PERCEIVE; ¹⁵FOR THE HEART OF THIS PEOPLE HAS BECOME DULL, WITH THEIR EARS THEY SCARCELY HEAR, AND THEY HAVE CLOSED THEIR EYES, OTHERWISE THEY WOULD SEE WITH THEIR EYES, HEAR WITH THEIR EARS, AND UNDERSTAND WITH THEIR HEART AND RETURN, AND I WOULD HEAL THEM.’

¹⁶ “But blessed are your eyes, because they see; and your ears, because they hear. ¹⁷“For truly I say to you that many prophets and righteous men desired to see what you see, and did not see it, and to hear what you hear, and did not hear it.

[Mark 4:10-12, 21-25, 33-34](#)

¹⁰As soon as He was alone, His followers, along with the twelve, *began* asking Him *about* the parables.

¹¹And He was saying to them, “To you has been given the mystery of the kingdom of God, but those who are outside get everything in parables,

¹²so that WHILE SEEING, THEY MAY SEE AND NOT PERCEIVE, AND WHILE HEARING, THEY MAY HEAR AND NOT UNDERSTAND, OTHERWISE THEY MIGHT RETURN AND BE FORGIVEN.”

[Luke 8:9-10, 16-18](#)

⁹His disciples *began* questioning Him as to what this parable meant.

¹⁰And He said, “To you it has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God, but to the rest *it is* in parables,

so that SEEING THEY MAY NOT SEE, AND HEARING THEY MAY NOT UNDERSTAND.

[Matthew 13:10-17, 34-35 \(cont.\)](#)

[Mark 4:10-12, 21-25, 33-34 \(cont.\)](#)

[Luke 8:9-10, 16-18 \(cont.\)](#)

²¹And He was saying to them, “A lamp is not brought to be put under a basket, is it, or under a bed? Is it not *brought* to be put on the lampstand? ²²“For nothing is hidden, except to be revealed; nor has *anything* been secret, but that it would come to light. ²³“If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear.”

²⁴And He was saying to them, “Take care what you listen to. By your standard of measure it will be measured to you; and more will be given you besides. ²⁵“For whoever has, to him *more* shall be given; and whoever does not have, even what he has shall be taken away from him.”

¹⁶“Now no one after lighting a lamp covers it over with a container, or puts it under a bed; but he puts it on a lampstand, so that those who come in may see the light. ¹⁷“For nothing is hidden that will not become evident, nor *anything* secret that will not be known and come to light. ¹⁸“So take care how you listen; for whoever has, to him *more* shall be given; and whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has shall be taken away from him.”

³⁴All these things Jesus spoke to the crowds in parables, and He did not speak to them without a parable. ³⁵*This was* to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet: “I WILL OPEN MY MOUTH IN PARABLES; I WILL UTTER THINGS HIDDEN SINCE THE FOUNDATION OF THE WORLD.”

³³With many such parables He was speaking the word to them, so far as they were able to hear it; ³⁴and He did not speak to them without a parable; but He was explaining everything privately to His own disciples.

a. The Parable of the Sower, Matthew 13:3b-9, 18-23; Mark 4:3-9, 13-20; Luke 8:5-7, 11-15

Matthew 13:3b-9

saying, "Behold, the sower went out to sow;

⁴and as he sowed, some *seeds* fell beside the road, and the birds came and ate them up.

⁵Others fell on the rocky places, where they did not have much soil; and immediately they sprang up, because they had no depth of soil. ⁶But when the sun had risen, they were scorched; and because they had no root, they withered away.

⁷Others fell among the thorns, and the thorns came up and choked them out.

⁸And others fell on the good soil and *yielded a crop, some a hundredfold, some sixty, and some thirty.

⁹"He who has ears, let him hear."

Mark 4:3-9

³"Listen *to this!* Behold, the sower went out to sow;

⁴as he was sowing, some *seed* fell beside the road, and the birds came and ate it up.

⁵Other *seed* fell on the rocky *ground* where it did not have much soil; and immediately it sprang up because it had no depth of soil. ⁶And after the sun had risen, it was scorched; and because it had no root, it withered away.

⁷Other *seed* fell among the thorns, and the thorns came up and choked it, and it yielded no crop.

⁸"Other *seeds* fell into the good soil, and as they grew up and increased, they yielded a crop and produced thirty, sixty, and a hundredfold."

⁹And He was saying, "He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

Luke 8:5-7

⁵"The sower went out to sow his seed;

and as he sowed, some fell beside the road, and it was trampled under foot and the birds of the air ate it up.

⁶"Other *seed* fell on rocky *soil*, and as soon as it grew up, it withered away, because it had no moisture.

⁷"Other *seed* fell among the thorns; and the thorns grew up with it and choked it out.

⁸ "Other *seed* fell into the good soil, and grew up, and produced a crop a hundred times as great."

As He said these things, He would call out, "He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

The Sower Explained

[Matthew 13:18-23](#)

¹⁸“Hear then the parable of the sower.

¹⁹“When anyone hears the word of the kingdom and does not understand it, the evil *one* comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart. This is the one on whom seed was sown beside the road.

²⁰“The one on whom seed was sown on the rocky places, this is the man who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy; ²¹yet he has no *firm* root in himself, but is *only* temporary, and when affliction or persecution arises because of the word, immediately he falls away.

²²“And the one on whom seed was sown among the thorns, this is the man who hears the word, and the worry of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful.

²³“And the one on whom seed was sown on the good soil, this is the man who hears the word and understands it; who indeed bears fruit and brings forth, some a hundredfold, some sixty, and some thirty.”

[Mark 4:13-20](#)

¹³And He ^{*}said to them, “Do you not understand this parable? How will you understand all the parables? ¹⁴“The sower sows the word.

¹⁵“These are the ones who are beside the road where the word is sown; and when they hear, immediately Satan comes and takes away the word which has been sown in them.

¹⁶“In a similar way these are the ones on whom seed was sown on the rocky *places*, who, when they hear the word, immediately receive it with joy; ¹⁷and they have no *firm* root in themselves, but are *only* temporary; then, when affliction or persecution arises because of the word, immediately they fall away.

¹⁸“And others are the ones on whom seed was sown among the thorns; these are the ones who have heard the word, ¹⁹but the worries of the world, and the deceitfulness of riches, and the desires for other things enter in and choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful.

²⁰“And those are the ones on whom seed was sown on the good soil; and they hear the word and accept it and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, and a hundredfold.”

[Luke 8:11-15](#)

¹¹“Now the parable is this: the seed is the word of God.

¹²“Those beside the road are those who have heard; then the devil comes and takes away the word from their heart, so that they will not believe and be saved.

¹³“Those on the rocky *soil* are those who, when they hear, receive the word with joy; and these have no *firm* root; they believe for a while, and in time of temptation fall away.

¹⁴“The *seed* which fell among the thorns, these are the ones who have heard, and as they go on their way they are choked with worries and riches and pleasures of *this* life, and bring no fruit to maturity.

¹⁵“But the *seed* in the good soil, these are the ones who have heard the word in an honest and good heart, and hold it fast, and bear fruit with perseverance.

b. The Parable of the Seed that is sown, Mark 4:26-29

[Mark 4:26–29](#)

²⁶And He was saying, “The kingdom of God is like a man who casts seed upon the soil; ²⁷and he goes to bed at night and gets up by day, and the seed sprouts and grows—how, he himself does not know. ²⁸“The soil produces crops by itself; first the blade, then the head, then the mature grain in the head. ²⁹“But when the crop permits, he immediately puts in the sickle, because the harvest has come.”

c. The Parable of the Tares, Matthew 13:24-30, 36-43

[Matthew 13:24–30](#)

²⁴Jesus presented another parable to them, saying, “The kingdom of heaven may be compared to a man who sowed good seed in his field. ²⁵“But while his men were sleeping, his enemy came and sowed tares among the wheat, and went away. ²⁶“But when the wheat sprouted and bore grain, then the tares became evident also. ²⁷“The slaves of the landowner came and said to him, ‘Sir, did you not sow good seed in your field? How then does it have tares?’ ²⁸“And he said to them, ‘An enemy has done this!’ The slaves *said to him, ‘Do you want us, then, to go and gather them up?’ ²⁹“But he *said, ‘No; for while you are gathering up the tares, you may uproot the wheat with them. ³⁰“Allow both to grow together until the harvest; and in the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, “First gather up the tares and bind them in bundles to burn them up; but gather the wheat into my barn.” ’ ’ ’

[Matthew 13:36–43](#)

The Tares Explained

³⁶Then He left the crowds and went into the house. And His disciples came to Him and said, “Explain to us the parable of the tares of the field.”

³⁷And He said, “The one who sows the good seed is the Son of Man, ³⁸and the field is the world; and *as for* the good seed, these are the sons of the kingdom; and the tares are the sons of the evil *one*; ³⁹and the enemy who sowed them is the devil, and the harvest is the end of the age; and the reapers are angels.

⁴⁰“So just as the tares are gathered up and burned with fire, so shall it be at the end of the age. ⁴¹“The Son of Man will send forth His angels, and they will gather out of His kingdom all stumbling blocks, and those who commit lawlessness, ⁴²and will throw them into the furnace of fire; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth. ⁴³“Then THE RIGHTEOUS WILL SHINE FORTH AS THE SUN in the kingdom of their Father. He who has ears, let him hear.

d. The Parable of the Mustard Seed, Matthew 13:31-32; Mark 4:30-32

[Matthew 13:31–32](#)

³¹He presented another parable to them, saying, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed, which a man took and sowed in his field; ³²and this is smaller than all *other* seeds, but when it is full grown, it is larger than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that THE BIRDS OF THE AIR COME AND NEST IN ITS BRANCHES.”

[Mark 4:30–32](#)

³⁰And He said, “How shall we picture the kingdom of God, or by what parable shall we present it? ³¹“*It is* like a mustard seed, which, when sown upon the soil, though it is smaller than all the seeds that are upon the soil, ³²yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes larger than all the garden plants and forms large branches; so that THE BIRDS OF THE AIR CAN NEST UNDER ITS SHADE.”

e. The Parable of the Leaven, Matthew 13:33

[Matthew 13:33](#)

³³He spoke another parable to them, “The kingdom of heaven is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three pecks of flour until it was all leavened.”

f. The Parable of the Hidden Treasure, Matthew 13:44

[Matthew 13:44](#)

⁴⁴“The kingdom of heaven is like a treasure hidden in the field, which a man found and hid *again*; and from joy over it he goes and sells all that he has and buys that field.

g. The Parable of the Pearl of Great Price, Matthew 13: 45-46

[Matthew 13:45–46](#)

⁴⁵“Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a merchant seeking fine pearls, ⁴⁶and upon finding one pearl of great value, he went and sold all that he had and bought it.

h. The Parable of the Net, Matthew 13:47-50

[Matthew 13:47–50](#)

⁴⁷“Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a dragnet cast into the sea, and gathering *fish* of every kind; ⁴⁸and when it was filled, they drew it up on the beach; and they sat down and gathered the good *fish* into containers, but the bad they threw away. ⁴⁹“So it will be at the end of the age; the angels will come forth and take out the wicked from among the righteous, ⁵⁰and will throw them into the furnace of fire; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

i. The Parable of the Householder, Matthew 13:51-52

[Matthew 13:51–53](#)

⁵¹“Have you understood all these things?” They ^{*}said to Him, “Yes.” ⁵²And Jesus said to them, “Therefore every scribe who has become a disciple of the kingdom of heaven is like a head of a household, who brings out of his treasure things new and old.” ⁵³When Jesus had finished these parables, He departed from there.

3. Power over Nature,

§ 65, Matthew 8:18, 23-27; Mark 4:35-41; Luke 8:22-25

Jesus stills the Sea

Matthew 8:18, 23-27

¹⁸Now when Jesus saw a crowd around Him, He gave orders to depart to the other side *of the sea*.

²³When He got into the boat, His disciples followed Him.

²⁴And behold, there arose a great storm on the sea, so that the boat was being covered with the waves; but Jesus Himself was asleep.

²⁵And they came to *Him* and woke Him, saying, "Save *us*, Lord; we are perishing!"

²⁶He ^{*}said to them, "Why are you afraid, you men of little faith?" Then He got up and rebuked the winds and the sea, and it became perfectly calm.

²⁷The men were amazed, and said, "What kind of a man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey Him?"

Mark 4:35-41

³⁵On that day, when evening came, He ^{*}said to them, "Let us go over to the other side." ³⁶Leaving the crowd, they ^{*}took Him along with them in the boat, just as He was; and other boats were with Him.

³⁷And there ^{*}arose a fierce gale of wind, and the waves were breaking over the boat so much that the boat was already filling up. ³⁸Jesus Himself was in the stern, asleep on the cushion;

and they ^{*}woke Him and ^{*}said to Him, "Teacher, do You not care that we are perishing?"

³⁹And He got up and rebuked the wind and said to the sea, "Hush, be still." And the wind died down and it became perfectly calm. ⁴⁰And He said to them, "Why are you afraid? How is it that you have no faith?"

⁴¹They became very much afraid and said to one another, "Who then is this, that even the wind and the sea obey Him?"

Luke 8:22-25

²²Now on one of *those* days Jesus and His disciples got into a boat, and He said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." So they launched out.

²³But as they were sailing along He fell asleep; and a fierce gale of wind descended on the lake, and they *began* to be swamped and to be in danger.

²⁴They came to Jesus and woke Him up, saying, "Master, Master, we are perishing!"

And He got up and rebuked the wind and the surging waves, and they stopped, and it became calm. ²⁵And He said to them, "Where is your faith?"

They were fearful and amazed, saying to one another, "Who then is this, that He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey Him?"

4. Power over Demons, The Gerasene Demoniac
§ 66, Matthew 8:28-34; Mark 5:1-20; Luke 8:26-39

[Matthew 8:28–29](#)

²⁸When He came to the other side into the country of the Gadarenes,

two men who were demon-possessed met Him as they were coming out of the tombs. *They were* so extremely violent that no one could pass by that way.

²⁹And they cried out, saying, “What business do we have with each other, Son of God? Have You come here to torment us before the time?”

[Mark 5:1–20](#)

¹They came to the other side of the sea, into the country of the Gerasenes.

²When He got out of the boat, immediately a man from the tombs with an unclean spirit met Him, ³and he had his dwelling among the tombs. And no one was able to bind him anymore, even with a chain; ⁴because he had often been bound with shackles and chains, and the chains had been torn apart by him and the shackles broken in pieces, and no one was strong enough to subdue him. ⁵Constantly, night and day, he was screaming among the tombs and in the mountains, and gashing himself with stones.

⁶Seeing Jesus from a distance, he ran up and bowed down before Him; ⁷and shouting with a loud voice, he ^{*}said, “What business do we have with each other, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I implore You by God, do not torment me!”

⁸For He had been saying to him, “Come out of the man, you unclean spirit!” ⁹And He was asking him, “What is your name?” And he ^{*}said to Him, “My name is Legion; for we are many.”

¹⁰And he *began* to implore Him earnestly not to send them out of the country.

[Luke 8:26–39](#)

²⁶Then they sailed to the country of the Gerasenes, which is opposite Galilee.

²⁷And when He came out onto the land, He was met by a man from the city who was possessed with demons; and who had not put on any clothing for a long time, and was not living in a house, but in the tombs.

²⁸Seeing Jesus, he cried out and fell before Him, and said in a loud voice, “What business do we have with each other, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg You, do not torment me.”

²⁹For He had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For it had seized him many times; and he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, and yet he would break his bonds and be driven by the demon into the desert. ³⁰And Jesus asked him, “What is your name?” And he said, “Legion”; for many demons had entered him.

³¹They were imploring Him not to command them to go away into the abyss.

[Matthew 8:30–34](#)

³⁰Now there was a herd of many swine feeding at a distance from them. ³¹The demons *began* to entreat Him, saying, “If You *are going* to cast us out, send us into the herd of swine.”

³²And He said to them, “Go!” And they came out and went into the swine, and the whole herd rushed down the steep bank into the sea and perished in the waters.

³³The herdsmen ran away, and went to the city and reported everything, including what had happened to the demoniacs.

³⁴And behold, the whole city came out to meet Jesus;

and when they saw Him, they implored Him to leave their region.

[Mark 5:18–20](#)

¹⁸As He was getting into the boat, the man who had been demon-possessed was imploring Him that he might accompany Him. ¹⁹And He did not let him, but He **said* to him, “Go home to your people and report to them what great things the Lord has done for you, and *how* He had mercy on you.” ²⁰And he went away and began to proclaim in Decapolis what great things Jesus had done for him; and everyone was amazed.

[Mark 5:11–17](#)

¹¹Now there was a large herd of swine feeding nearby on the mountain. ¹²*The demons* implored Him, saying, “Send us into the swine so that we may enter them.”

¹³Jesus gave them permission. And coming out, the unclean spirits entered the swine; and the herd rushed down the steep bank into the sea, about two thousand *of them*; and they were drowned in the sea.

¹⁴Their herdsmen ran away and reported it in the city and in the country.

And *the people* came to see what it was that had happened. ¹⁵They **came* to Jesus and **observed* the man who had been demon-possessed sitting down, clothed and in his right mind, the very man who had had the “legion”; and they became frightened.

¹⁶Those who had seen it described to them how it had happened to the demon-possessed man, and *all* about the swine. ¹⁷And they began to implore Him to leave their region.

[Luke 8:32–37a](#)

³²Now there was a herd of many swine feeding there on the mountain; and *the demons* implored Him to permit them to enter the swine.

And He gave them permission. ³³And the demons came out of the man and entered the swine; and the herd rushed down the steep bank into the lake and was drowned.

³⁴When the herdsmen saw what had happened, they ran away and reported it in the city and *out* in the country.

³⁵*The people* went out to see what had happened; and they came to Jesus, and found the man from whom the demons had gone out, sitting down at the feet of Jesus, clothed and in his right mind; and they became frightened.

³⁶Those who had seen it reported to them how the man who was demon-possessed had been made well. ³⁷And all the people of the country of the Gerasenes and the surrounding district asked Him to leave them, for they were gripped with great fear;

[Luke 8:37b-39](#)

and He got into a boat and returned. ³⁸But the man from whom the demons had gone out was begging Him that he might accompany Him; but He sent him away, saying, ³⁹“Return to your house and describe what great things God has done for you.” So he went away, proclaiming throughout the whole city what great things Jesus had done for him.

5. Power over Disease and Death, § 67, Matthew 9:18-26; Mark 5:21-43; Luke 8:40-56

[Matthew 9:18–22](#)

¹⁸While He was saying these things to them, a *synagogue* official came and bowed down before Him, and said, “My daughter has just died; but come and lay Your hand on her, and she will live.”

¹⁹Jesus got up and *began* to follow him, and *so did* His disciples. ²⁰And a woman who had been suffering from a hemorrhage for twelve years, came up behind Him and touched the fringe of His cloak; ²¹for she was saying to herself, “If I only touch His garment, I will get well.” ²²But Jesus turning and seeing her said, “Daughter, take courage; your faith has made you well.” At once the woman was made well.

[Mark 5:21–29](#)

²¹When Jesus had crossed over again in the boat to the other side, a large crowd gathered around Him; and so He stayed by the seashore. ²²One of the synagogue officials named Jairus *came up, and on seeing Him, *fell at His feet ²³and *implored Him earnestly, saying, “My little daughter is at the point of death; *please* come and lay Your hands on her, so that she will get well and live.”

²⁴And He went off with him; and a large crowd was following Him and pressing in on Him. ²⁵A woman who had had a hemorrhage for twelve years, ²⁶and had endured much at the hands of many physicians, and had spent all that she had and was not helped at all, but rather had grown worse— ²⁷after hearing about Jesus, she came up in the crowd behind *Him* and touched His cloak. ²⁸For she thought, “If I just touch His garments, I will get well.” ²⁹Immediately the flow of her blood was dried up; and she felt in her body that she was healed of her affliction.

[Luke 8:40–44](#)

⁴⁰And as Jesus returned, the people welcomed Him, for they had all been waiting for Him. ⁴¹And there came a man named Jairus, and he was an official of the synagogue; and he fell at Jesus’ feet, and *began* to implore Him to come to his house; ⁴²for he had an only daughter, about twelve years old, and she was dying.

But as He went, the crowds were pressing against Him. ⁴³And a woman who had a hemorrhage for twelve years, and could not be healed by anyone, ⁴⁴came up behind Him and touched the fringe of His cloak, and immediately her hemorrhage stopped.

[Mark 5:30-46](#)

³⁰Immediately Jesus, perceiving in Himself that the power *proceeding* from Him had gone forth, turned around in the crowd and said, “Who touched My garments?” ³¹And His disciples said to Him, “You see the crowd pressing in on You, and You say, ‘Who touched Me?’ ” ³²And He looked around to see the woman who had done this. ³³But the woman fearing and trembling, aware of what had happened to her, came and fell down before Him and told Him the whole truth. ³⁴And He said to her, “Daughter, your faith has made you well; go in peace and be healed of your affliction.”

[Luke 8:45-50](#)

⁴⁵And Jesus said, “Who is the one who touched Me?” And while they were all denying it, Peter said, “Master, the people are crowding and pressing in on You.” ⁴⁶But Jesus said, “Someone did touch Me, for I was aware that power had gone out of Me.” ⁴⁷When the woman saw that she had not escaped notice, she came trembling and fell down before Him, and declared in the presence of all the people the reason why she had touched Him, and how she had been immediately healed. ⁴⁸And He said to her, “Daughter, your faith has made you well; go in peace.”

[Mark 5:30-46 \(cont.\)](#)

³⁵While He was still speaking, they *came from the *house of the synagogue official*, saying, “Your daughter has died; why trouble the Teacher anymore?” ³⁶But Jesus, overhearing what was being spoken, *said to the synagogue official, “Do not be afraid *any longer*, only believe.”

[Luke 8:45-50 \(cont.\)](#)

⁴⁹While He was still speaking, someone *came from *the house of the synagogue official*, saying, “Your daughter has died; do not trouble the Teacher anymore.” ⁵⁰But when Jesus heard *this*, He answered him, “Do not be afraid *any longer*; only believe, and she will be made well.”

[Matthew 9:23-26](#)

²³When Jesus came into the official’s house, and saw the flute-players and the crowd in noisy disorder, ²⁴He said, “Leave; for the girl has not died, but is asleep.” And they *began* laughing at Him. ²⁵But when the crowd had been sent out, He entered

and took her by the hand, and the girl got up. ²⁶This news spread throughout all that land.

[Mark 5:37-43](#)

³⁷And He allowed no one to accompany Him, except Peter and James and John the brother of James. ³⁸They *came to the house of the synagogue official; and He *saw a commotion, and *people* loudly weeping and wailing. ³⁹And entering in, He *said to them, “Why make a commotion and weep? The child has not died, but is asleep.” ⁴⁰They *began* laughing at Him. But putting them all out, He *took along the child’s father and mother and His own companions, and *entered *the room* where the child was.

⁴¹Taking the child by the hand, He *said to her, “Talitha kum!” (which translated means, “Little girl, I say to you, get up!”). ⁴²Immediately the girl got up and *began* to walk, for she was twelve years old. And immediately they were completely astounded. ⁴³And He gave them strict orders that no one should know about this, and He said that *something* should be given her to eat.

[Luke 8:51-56](#)

⁵¹When He came to the house, He did not allow anyone to enter with Him, except Peter and John and James, and the girl’s father and mother. ⁵²Now they were all weeping and lamenting for her; but He said, “Stop weeping, for she has not died, but is asleep.” ⁵³And they *began* laughing at Him, knowing that she had died.

⁵⁴He, however, took her by the hand and called, saying, “Child, arise!” ⁵⁵And her spirit returned, and she got up immediately; and He gave orders for *something* to be given her to eat. ⁵⁶Her parents were amazed; but He instructed them to tell no one what had happened.

6. Power over Blindness, § 68, Matthew 9:27-34

²⁷As Jesus went on from there, two blind men followed Him, crying out, “Have mercy on us, Son of David!”
²⁸When He entered the house, the blind men came up to Him, and Jesus *said to them, “Do you believe that I am able to do this?” They *said to Him, “Yes, Lord.”²⁹ Then He touched their eyes, saying, “It shall be done to you according to your faith.”³⁰ And their eyes were opened. And Jesus sternly warned them: “See that no one knows *about this!*”³¹ But they went out and spread the news about Him throughout all that land.

³²As they were going out, a mute, demon-possessed man was brought to Him.³³ After the demon was cast out, the mute man spoke; and the crowds were amazed, *and were* saying, “Nothing like this has ever been seen in Israel.”³⁴ But the Pharisees were saying, “He casts out the demons by the ruler of the demons.”

G. The Final Rejection in Nazareth, § 69, Matthew 13:54-58; Mark 6:1-6a

Matthew 13:54–58

⁵⁴He came to His hometown and *began* teaching them in their synagogue, so that they were astonished, and said, “Where *did* this man *get* this wisdom and *these* miraculous powers?⁵⁵ “Is not this the carpenter’s son? Is not His mother called Mary, and His brothers, James and Joseph and Simon and Judas?⁵⁶ “And His sisters, are they not all with us? Where then *did* this man *get* all these things?”⁵⁷ And they took offense at Him.

But Jesus said to them, “A prophet is not without honor except in his hometown and in his *own* household.”

⁵⁸And He did not do many miracles there because of their unbelief.

Mark 6:1–6a

¹Jesus went out from there and *came into His hometown; and His disciples *followed Him.² When the Sabbath came, He began to teach in the synagogue; and the many listeners were astonished, saying, “Where did this man *get* these things, and what is *this* wisdom given to Him, and such miracles as these performed by His hands?³ “Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary, and brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are not His sisters here with us?” And they took offense at Him.

⁴Jesus said to them, “A prophet is not without honor except in his hometown and among his *own* relatives and in his *own* household.”

⁵And He could do no miracle there except that He laid His hands on a few sick people and healed them.⁶ And He wondered at their unbelief.

H. Witness in view of Rejection, § 70, Matthew 9:35-11:1; Mark 6:6b-13; Luke 9:1-6

1. Introduction, Mark 6:6b; Matthew 9:35-38

[Matthew 9:35–38](#)

³⁵Jesus was going through all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues and proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every kind of disease and every kind of sickness. ³⁶Seeing the people, He felt compassion for them, because they were distressed and dispirited like sheep without a shepherd. ³⁷Then He *said to His disciples, “The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. ³⁸“Therefore beseech the Lord of the harvest to send out workers into His harvest.”

[Mark 6:6b](#)

^{6b}And He was going around the villages teaching.

2. The Ministry of the Twelve, Matthew 10:1; Mark 6:7; Luke 9:1-2

[Matthew 10:1](#)

¹Jesus summoned His twelve disciples

and gave them authority over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal every kind of disease and every kind of sickness.

[Mark 6:7](#)

⁷And He *summoned the twelve and began to send them out in pairs,

and gave them authority over the unclean spirits;

[Luke 9:1–2](#)

¹And He called the twelve together,

and gave them power and authority over all the demons and to heal diseases. ²And He sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to perform healing.

[Matthew 10:2-4](#)

²Now the names of the twelve apostles are these: The first, Simon, who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother; and James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother; ³Philip and Bartholomew; Thomas and Matthew the tax collector; James the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus; ⁴Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot, the one who betrayed Him.

3. Practical Instructions for the Mission, Matt. 10:5-15; Mark 6:8-11; Luke 9:3-5

[Matthew 10:5–8a](#)

⁵These twelve Jesus sent out after instructing them:

“Do not go in *the* way of *the* Gentiles, and do not enter *any* city of the Samaritans; ⁶but rather go to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.

⁷“And as you go, preach, saying, ‘The kingdom of heaven is at hand.’

⁸“Heal *the* sick, raise *the* dead, cleanse *the* lepers, cast out demons.

[Matthew 10:8b–15](#)

Freely you received, freely give.
⁹“Do not acquire gold, or silver, or copper for your money belts, ¹⁰or a bag for *your* journey, or even two coats, or sandals, or a staff; for the worker is worthy of his support.

¹¹“And whatever city or village you enter, inquire who is worthy in it, and stay at his house until you leave *that city*. ¹²“As you enter the house, give it your greeting. ¹³“If the house is worthy, give it your *blessing of peace*. But if it is not worthy, take back your *blessing of peace*.

¹⁴“Whoever does not receive you, nor heed your words, as you go out of that house or that city, shake the dust off your feet. ¹⁵“Truly I say to you, it will be more tolerable for *the* land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment than for that city.

[Mark 6:8-11](#)

⁸and He instructed them that they should take nothing for *their* journey, except a mere staff—no bread, no bag, no money in their belt— ⁹but *to* wear sandals; and *He added*, “Do not put on two tunics.”

¹⁰And He said to them, “Wherever you enter a house, stay there until you leave town.

¹¹“Any place that does not receive you or listen to you, as you go out from there, shake the dust off the soles of your feet for a testimony against them.”

[Luke 9:3-5](#)

³And He said to them, “Take nothing for *your* journey, neither a staff, nor a bag, nor bread, nor money; and do not *even* have two tunics apiece.

⁴“Whatever house you enter, stay there until you leave that city.

⁵“And as for those who do not receive you, as you go out from that city, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony against them.”

4. Instructions in View of the Coming Persecution, Matthew 10:16-23

[Matthew 10:16-23](#)

¹⁶“Behold, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves; so be shrewd as serpents and innocent as doves. ¹⁷“But beware of men, for they will hand you over to *the* courts and scourge you in their synagogues; ¹⁸and you will even be brought before governors and kings for My sake, as a testimony to them and to the Gentiles.

¹⁹“But when they hand you over, do not worry about how or what you are to say; for it will be given you in that hour what you are to say. ²⁰“For it is not you who speak, but *it is* the Spirit of your Father who speaks in you.

²¹“Brother will betray brother to death, and a father *his* child; and children will rise up against parents and cause them to be put to death. ²²“You will be hated by all because of My name, but it is the one who has endured to the end who will be saved.

²³“But whenever they persecute you in one city, flee to the next; for truly I say to you, you will not finish *going through* the cities of Israel until the Son of Man comes.

5. Instructions in View of Rejection, Matthew 10:24-33

[Matthew 10:24-33](#)

²⁴“A disciple is not above his teacher, nor a slave above his master. ²⁵“It is enough for the disciple that he become like his teacher, and the slave like his master. If they have called the head of the house Beelzebul, how much more *will they malign* the members of his household!

²⁶“Therefore do not fear them, for there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, or hidden that will not be known. ²⁷“What I tell you in the darkness, speak in the light; and what you hear *whispered* in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops.

²⁸“Do not fear those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul; but rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

²⁹“Are not two sparrows sold for a cent? And *yet* not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father. ³⁰“But the very hairs of your head are all numbered. ³¹“So do not fear; you are more valuable than many sparrows.

³²“Therefore everyone who confesses Me before men, I will also confess him before My Father who is in heaven. ³³“But whoever denies Me before men, I will also deny him before My Father who is in heaven.

6. The Results of Rejection, Matthew 10:34-39

[Matthew 10:34-39](#)

³⁴“Do not think that I came to bring peace on the earth; I did not come to bring peace, but a sword. ³⁵“For I came to SET A MAN AGAINST HIS FATHER, AND A DAUGHTER AGAINST HER MOTHER, AND A DAUGHTER-IN-LAW AGAINST HER MOTHER-IN-LAW; ³⁶and A MAN’S ENEMIES WILL BE THE MEMBERS OF HIS HOUSEHOLD. ³⁷“He who loves father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and he who loves son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me. ³⁸“And he who does not take his cross and follow after Me is not worthy of Me. ³⁹“He who has found his life will lose it, and he who has lost his life for My sake will find it.

7. Rewards for Individuals Who Accept, Matthew 10:40-42

[Matthew 10:40-42](#)

⁴⁰“He who receives you receives Me, and he who receives Me receives Him who sent Me. ⁴¹“He who receives a prophet in *the* name of a prophet shall receive a prophet’s reward; and he who receives a righteous man in the name of a righteous man shall receive a righteous man’s reward. ⁴²“And whoever in the name of a disciple gives to one of these little ones even a cup of cold water to drink, truly I say to you, he shall not lose his reward.”

8. The Fulfilment, Matthew 11:1; Mark 6:12-13; Luke 9:6

[Matthew 11:1](#)

¹When Jesus had finished giving instructions to His twelve disciples, He departed from there to teach and preach in their cities.

[Mark 6:12-13](#)

¹²They went out and preached that *men* should repent. ¹³And they were casting out many demons and were anointing with oil many sick people and healing them.

[Luke 9:6](#)

⁶Departing, they *began* going throughout the villages, preaching the gospel and healing everywhere.

I. The Death of the Herald, § 71, Matthew 14:1-12; Mark 6:14-29; Luke 9:7-9

[Matthew 14:1-12](#)

¹At that time Herod the tetrarch heard the news about Jesus, ²and said to his servants, "This is John the Baptist; he has risen from the dead, and that is why miraculous powers are at work in him." ³For when Herod had John arrested, he bound him and put him in prison because of Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip.

[Mark 6:14-29](#)

¹⁴And King Herod heard of *it*, for His name had become well known; and *people* were saying, "John the Baptist has risen from the dead, and that is why these miraculous powers are at work in Him." ¹⁵But others were saying, "He is Elijah." And others were saying, "*He is* a prophet, like one of the prophets of *old*." ¹⁶But when Herod heard of *it*, he kept saying, "John, whom I beheaded, has risen!" ¹⁷For Herod himself had sent and had John arrested and bound in prison on account of Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip, because he had married her.

[Luke 9:7-9](#)

⁷Now Herod the tetrarch heard of all that was happening; and he was greatly perplexed, because it was said by some that John had risen from the dead, ⁸and by some that Elijah had appeared, and by others that one of the prophets of old had risen again. ⁹Herod said, "I myself had John beheaded; but who is this man about whom I hear such things?" And he kept trying to see Him.

[Matthew 14:4-12](#)

⁴For John had been saying to him, "It is not lawful for you to have her." ⁵Although Herod wanted to put him to death, he feared the crowd, because they regarded John as a prophet. ⁶But when Herod's birthday came, the daughter of Herodias danced before *them* and pleased Herod, ⁷so *much* that he promised with an oath to give her whatever she asked. ⁸Having been prompted by her mother, she ^{*}said, "Give me here on a platter the head of John the Baptist." ⁹Although he was grieved, the king commanded *it* to be given because of his oaths, and because of his dinner guests. ¹⁰He sent and had John beheaded in the prison. ¹¹And his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl, and she brought it to her mother. ¹²His disciples came and took away the body and buried it; and they went and reported to Jesus.

[Mark 6:18-29](#)

¹⁸For John had been saying to Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife." ¹⁹Herodias had a grudge against him and wanted to put him to death and could not *do so*; ²⁰for Herod was afraid of John, knowing that he was a righteous and holy man, and he kept him safe. And when he heard him, he was very perplexed; but he used to enjoy listening to him. ²¹A strategic day came when Herod on his birthday gave a banquet for his lords and military commanders and the leading men of Galilee; ²²and when the daughter of Herodias herself came in and danced, she pleased Herod and his dinner guests; and the king said to the girl, "Ask me for whatever you want and I will give it to you." ²³And he swore to her, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give it to you; up to half of my kingdom." ²⁴And she went out and said to her mother, "What shall I ask for?" And she said, "The head of John the Baptist." ²⁵Immediately she came in a hurry to the king and asked, saying, "I want you to give me at once the head of John the Baptist on a platter." ²⁶And although the king was very sorry, *yet* because of his oaths and because of his dinner guests, he was unwilling to refuse her. ²⁷Immediately the king sent an executioner and commanded *him* to bring *back* his head. And he went and had him beheaded in the prison, ²⁸and brought his head on a platter, and gave it to the girl; and the girl gave it to her mother. ²⁹When his disciples heard *about this*, they came and took away his body and laid it in a tomb.

IV The Training of the Twelve by the King, § 72 – 95

A. The Feeding of the five thousand,

§ 72, Matthew 14:13–21; Mark 6:30–44; Luke 9:10–17; John 6:1–13

[Matthew 14:13–21](#)

¹³Now when Jesus heard *about John*, He withdrew from there in a boat to a secluded place by Himself;

and when the people heard *of this*, they followed Him on foot from the cities.

¹⁴When He went ashore, He saw a large crowd, and felt compassion for them and healed their sick.

¹⁵When it was evening, the disciples came to Him and said, “This place is desolate and the hour is already late; so send the crowds away, that they may go into the villages and buy food for themselves.” ¹⁶But Jesus said to them,

[Mark 6:30–44](#)

³⁰The apostles *gathered together with Jesus; and they reported to Him all that they had done and taught. ³¹And He *said to them, “Come away by yourselves to a secluded place and rest a while.” (For there were many *people* coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat.) ³²They went away in the boat to a secluded place by themselves.

³³*The people* saw them going, and many recognized *them* and ran there together on foot from all the cities, and got there ahead of them.

³⁴When Jesus went ashore, He saw a large crowd, and He felt compassion for them because they were like sheep without a shepherd; and He began to teach them many things.

³⁵When it was already quite late, His disciples came to Him and said, “This place is desolate and it is already quite late; ³⁶send them away so that they may go into the surrounding countryside and villages and buy themselves something to eat.” ³⁷But He answered them, “You give

[Luke 9:10–17](#)

¹⁰When the apostles returned, they gave an account to Him of all that they had done. Taking them with Him, He withdrew by Himself to a city called Bethsaida.

¹¹But the crowds were aware of this and followed Him;

and welcoming them, He *began* speaking to them about the kingdom of God and curing those who had need of healing.

¹²Now the day was ending, and the twelve came and said to Him, “Send the crowd away, that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside and find lodging and get something to eat; for here we are in a desolate place.” ¹³But He

[John 6:1–13](#)

¹After these things Jesus went away to the other side of the Sea of Galilee (or Tiberias).

²A large crowd followed Him, because they saw the signs which He was performing on those who were sick.

³Then Jesus went up on the mountain, and there He sat down with His disciples.⁴ Now the Passover, the feast of the Jews, was near. ⁵Therefore Jesus, lifting up His eyes and seeing that a large crowd was coming to Him, *said to Philip, “Where are we to

“They do not need to go away; you give them *something* to eat!”

¹⁷They *said to Him, “We have here only five loaves and two fish.” ¹⁸And He said, “Bring them here to Me.”

¹⁹Ordering the people to sit down on the grass, He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up toward heaven, He blessed *the food*, and breaking the loaves He gave them to the disciples, and the disciples *gave them* to the crowds, ²⁰and they all ate and were satisfied.

They picked up what was left over of the broken pieces, twelve full baskets. ²¹There were about five thousand men who ate, besides women and children.

them *something* to eat!”

And they *said to Him, “Shall we go and spend two hundred denarii on bread and give them *something* to eat?” ³⁸And He *said to them, “How many loaves do you have? Go look!” And when they found out, they *said, “Five, and two fish.” ³

⁹And He commanded them all to sit down by groups on the green grass. ⁴⁰They sat down in groups of hundreds and of fifties. ⁴¹And He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up toward heaven, He blessed *the food* and broke the loaves and He kept giving *them* to the disciples to set before them; and He divided up the two fish among them all. ⁴²They all ate and were satisfied,k

⁴³and they picked up twelve full baskets of the broken pieces, and also of the fish. ⁴⁴There were five thousand men who ate the loaves.

said to them, “You give them *something* to eat!”

And they said, “We have no more than five loaves and two fish, unless perhaps we go and buy food for all these people.” ¹⁴(For there were about five thousand men.)

And He said to His disciples, “Have them sit down *to eat* in groups of about fifty each.” ¹⁵They did so, and had them all sit down. ¹⁶Then He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up to heaven, He blessed them, and broke *them*, and kept giving *them* to the disciples to set before the people. ¹⁷And they all ate and were satisfied;

and the broken pieces which they had left over were picked up, twelve baskets *full*.

buy bread, so that these may eat?” ⁶This He was saying to test him, for He Himself knew what He was intending to do.

⁷Philip answered Him, “Two hundred denarii worth of bread is not sufficient for them, for everyone to receive a little.” ⁸One of His disciples, Andrew, Simon Peter’s brother, *said to Him, ⁹“There is a lad here who has five barley loaves and two fish, but what are these for so many people?”

¹⁰Jesus said, “Have the people sit down.” Now there was much grass in the place. So the men sat down, in number about five thousand. ¹¹Jesus then took the loaves, and having given thanks, He distributed to those who were seated; likewise also of the fish as much as they wanted.

¹²When they were filled, He *said to His disciples, “Gather up the leftover fragments so that nothing will be lost.” ¹³So they gathered them up, and filled twelve baskets with fragments from the five barley loaves which were left over by those who had eaten.

B. Messiah's Rejection of the Galileans Offer to make Him King, § 73, Matthew 14:22–23; Mark 6:45–46; John 6:14–15

[Matthew 14:22–23](#)

²²Immediately He made the disciples get into the boat and go ahead of Him to the other side, while He sent the crowds away. ²³After He had sent the crowds away, He went up on the mountain by Himself to pray; and when it was evening, He was there alone.

[Mark 6:45–46](#)

⁴⁵Immediately Jesus made His disciples get into the boat and go ahead of *Him* to the other side to Bethsaida, while He Himself was sending the crowd away. ⁴⁶After bidding them farewell, He left for the mountain to pray.

[John 6:14–15](#)

¹⁴Therefore when the people saw the sign which He had performed, they said, "This is truly the Prophet who is to come into the world." ¹⁵So Jesus, perceiving that they were intending to come and take Him by force to make Him king, withdrew again to the mountain by Himself alone.

C. The Training through the Storm, § 74, Matthew 14:24–33; Mark 6:47–52; John 6:16–21

[Matthew 14:24–33](#)

²⁴But the boat was already a long distance from the land, battered by the waves; for the wind was contrary.

²⁵And in the fourth watch of the night He came to them, walking on the sea.

²⁶When the disciples saw Him walking on the sea, they were terrified, and said, "It is a ghost!" And they cried out in fear.

²⁷But immediately Jesus spoke to them, saying, "Take courage, it is I; do not be afraid."

[Mark 6:47–52](#)

⁴⁷When it was evening, the boat was in the middle of the sea, and He was alone on the land.

⁴⁸Seeing them straining at the oars, for the wind was against them, at about the fourth watch of the night He ^{*}came to them, walking on the sea; and He intended to pass by them.

⁴⁹But when they saw Him walking on the sea, they supposed that it was a ghost, and cried out; ⁵⁰for they all saw Him and were terrified.

But immediately He spoke with them and ^{*}said to them, "Take courage; it is I, do not be afraid."

[John 6:16–17a](#)

¹⁶Now when evening came, His disciples went down to the sea, ¹⁷and after getting into a boat, they *started to* cross the sea to Capernaum.

[John 6:17b–21](#)

It had already become dark, and Jesus had not yet come to them. ¹⁸The sea *began to* be stirred up because a strong wind was blowing.

¹⁹Then, when they had rowed about three or four miles, they ^{*}saw Jesus walking on the sea and drawing near to the boat;

and they were frightened.

²⁰But He ^{*}said to them, "It is I; do not be afraid."

²⁸Peter said to Him, “Lord, if it is You, command me to come to You on the water.” ²⁹And He said, “Come!” And Peter got out of the boat, and walked on the water and came toward Jesus. ³⁰But seeing the wind, he became frightened, and beginning to sink, he cried out, “Lord, save me!” ³¹Immediately Jesus stretched out His hand and took hold of him, and *said to him, “You of little faith, why did you doubt?”

³²When they got into the boat, the wind stopped.

⁵¹Then He got into the boat with them, and the wind stopped;

²¹So they were willing to receive Him into the boat, and immediately the boat was at the land to which they were going.

³³And those who were in the boat worshiped Him, saying, “You are certainly God’s Son!”

and they were utterly astonished, ⁵²for they had not gained any insight from the *incident of* the loaves, but their heart was hardened.

D. The Reception in Gennesaret, § 75, Matthew 14:34–36; Mark 6:53–56

Matthew 14:34–36

³⁴When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret.

³⁵And when the men of that place recognized Him, they sent *word* into all that surrounding district and brought to Him all who were sick;

³⁶and they implored Him that they might just touch the fringe of His cloak; and as many as touched *it* were cured.

Mark 6:53–56

⁵³When they had crossed over they came to land at Gennesaret, and moored to the shore.

⁵⁴When they got out of the boat, immediately *the people* recognized Him, ⁵⁵and ran about that whole country and began to carry here and there on their pallets those who were sick, to the place they heard He was.

⁵⁶Wherever He entered villages, or cities, or countryside, they were laying the sick in the market places, and imploring Him that they might just touch the fringe of His cloak; and as many as touched it were being cured.

E. Instruction Concerning the Bread of Life, § 76, John 6:22–71

John 6:22–71

The Occasion

The crowd seeking Jesus

²²The next day the crowd that stood on the other side of the sea saw that there was no other small boat there, except one, and that Jesus had not entered with His disciples into the boat, but *that* His disciples had gone away alone. ²³There came other small boats from Tiberias near to the place where they ate the bread after the Lord had given thanks. ²⁴So when the crowd saw that Jesus was not there, nor His disciples, they themselves got into the small boats, and came to Capernaum seeking Jesus. ²⁵When they found Him on the other side of the sea, they said to Him, “Rabbi, when did You get here?”

Words to the People

Food which endures

²⁶Jesus answered them and said, “Truly, truly, I say to you, you seek Me, not because you saw signs, but because you ate of the loaves and were filled. ²⁷“Do not work for the food which perishes, but for the food which endures to eternal life, which the Son of Man will give to you, for on Him the Father, God, has set His seal.”

The work of God

²⁸Therefore they said to Him, “What shall we do, so that we may work the works of God?” ²⁹Jesus answered and said to them, “This is the work of God, that you believe in Him whom He has sent.”

The Bread of God

³⁰So they said to Him, “What then do You do for a sign, so that we may see, and believe You? What work do You perform? ³¹“Our fathers ate the manna in the wilderness; as it is written, ‘HE GAVE THEM BREAD OUT OF HEAVEN TO EAT.’ ” ³²Jesus then said to them, “Truly, truly, I say to you, it is not Moses who has given you the bread out of heaven, but it is My Father who gives you the true bread out of heaven. ³³“For the bread of God is that which comes down out of heaven, and gives life to the world.”

The Bread of Life

³⁴Then they said to Him, “Lord, always give us this bread.” ³⁵Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to Me will not hunger, and he who believes in Me will never thirst.

The will of God

³⁶“But I said to you that you have seen Me, and yet do not believe. ³⁷“All that the Father gives Me will come to Me, and the one who comes to Me I will certainly not cast out. ³⁸“For I have come down from heaven, not to do My own will, but the will of Him who sent Me. ³⁹“This is the will of Him who sent Me, that of all that He has given Me I lose nothing, but raise it up on the last day. ⁴⁰“For this is the will of My Father, that everyone who beholds the Son and believes in Him will have eternal life, and I Myself will raise him up on the last day.”

Words to the Jews

Grumbling

⁴¹Therefore the Jews were grumbling about Him, because He said, "I am the bread that came down out of heaven." ⁴²They were saying, "Is not this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How does He now say, 'I have come down out of heaven?'"

Taught of God

⁴³Jesus answered and said to them, "Do not grumble among yourselves. ⁴⁴"No one can come to Me unless the Father who sent Me draws him; and I will raise him up on the last day. ⁴⁵"It is written in the prophets, 'AND THEY SHALL ALL BE TAUGHT OF GOD.' Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father, comes to Me. ⁴⁶"Not that anyone has seen the Father, except the One who is from God; He has seen the Father.

The Parable

The parable of the bread of life

⁴⁷"Truly, truly, I say to you, he who believes has eternal life. ⁴⁸"I am the bread of life. ⁴⁹"Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, and they died. ⁵⁰"This is the bread which comes down out of heaven, so that one may eat of it and not die. ⁵¹"I am the living bread that came down out of heaven; if anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever; and the bread also which I will give for the life of the world is My flesh."

The question

⁵²Then the Jews *began* to argue with one another, saying, "How can this man give us *His* flesh to eat?"

The parable restated

⁵³So Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink His blood, you have no life in yourselves. ⁵⁴"He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day.

The elements of the parable

⁵⁵"For My flesh is true food, and My blood is true drink. ⁵⁶"He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood abides in Me, and I in him. ⁵⁷"As the living Father sent Me, and I live because of the Father, so he who eats Me, he also will live because of Me.

The contrast

⁵⁸"This is the bread which came down out of heaven; not as the fathers ate and died; he who eats this bread will live forever."

*Words to the Disciples**Response of His disciples*

⁵⁹These things He said in the synagogue as He taught in Capernaum. ⁶⁰Therefore many of His disciples, when they heard *this* said, “This is a difficult statement; who can listen to it?”

Spiritual life

⁶¹But Jesus, conscious that His disciples grumbled at this, said to them, “Does this cause you to stumble?

⁶²“*What* then if you see the Son of Man ascending to where He was before?”

⁶³“It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.

Consequence of unbelief

⁶⁴“But there are some of you who do not believe.” For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were who did not believe, and who it was that would betray Him.

⁶⁵And He was saying, “For this reason I have said to you, that no one can come to Me unless it has been granted him from the Father.”

*The Results**Response of His disciples*

⁶⁶As a result of this many of His disciples withdrew and were not walking with Him anymore.

Peter’s confession of faith

⁶⁷So Jesus said to the twelve, “You do not want to go away also, do you?”

⁶⁸Simon Peter answered Him, “Lord, to whom shall we go? You have words of eternal life. ⁶⁹“We have believed and have come to know that You are the Holy One of God.”

Betrayal foretold

⁷⁰Jesus answered them, “Did I Myself not choose you, the twelve, and yet one of you is a devil?” ⁷¹Now He meant Judas *the son* of Simon Iscariot, for he, one of the twelve, was going to betray Him.

F. Instruction Concerning Defilement, § 77, Matthew 15:1–20; Mark 7:1–23; John 7:1

[John 7:1](#)

¹After these things Jesus was walking in Galilee, for He was unwilling to walk in Judea because the Jews were seeking to kill Him.

[Matthew 15:1–20](#)[Mark 7:1–23](#)

¹Then some Pharisees and scribes *came to Jesus ¹The Pharisees and some of the scribes gathered

from Jerusalem and said, ²“Why do Your disciples break the tradition of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat bread.”

around Him when they had come from Jerusalem, ²and had seen that some of His disciples were eating their bread with impure hands, that is, unwashed. ³(For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they carefully wash their hands, *thus* observing the traditions of the elders; ⁴and *when they come* from the market place, they do not eat unless they cleanse themselves; and there are many other things which they have received in order to observe, such as the washing of cups and pitchers and copper pots.) ⁵The Pharisees and the scribes ^{*}asked Him, “Why do Your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with impure hands?”

⁷“You hypocrites, rightly did Isaiah prophesy of you: ⁸‘THIS PEOPLE HONORS ME WITH THEIR LIPS, BUT THEIR HEART IS FAR AWAY FROM ME. ⁹‘BUT IN VAIN DO THEY WORSHIP ME, TEACHING AS DOCTRINES THE PRECEPTS OF MEN.’ ”

⁶And He said to them, “Rightly did Isaiah prophesy of you hypocrites, as it is written: ‘THIS PEOPLE HONORS ME WITH THEIR LIPS, BUT THEIR HEART IS FAR AWAY FROM ME. ⁷‘BUT IN VAIN DO THEY WORSHIP ME, TEACHING AS DOCTRINES THE PRECEPTS OF MEN.’ ”

³And He answered and said to them, “Why do you yourselves transgress the commandment of God for the sake of your tradition?”

⁸“Neglecting the commandment of God, you hold to the tradition of men.” ⁹He was also saying to them, “You are experts at setting aside the commandment of God in order to keep your tradition.

⁴“For God said, ‘HONOR YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER,’ and, ‘HE WHO SPEAKS EVIL OF FATHER OR MOTHER IS TO BE PUT TO DEATH.’ ⁵“But you say, ‘Whoever says to *his* father or mother, “Whatever I have that would help you has been given *to God*,” ⁶he is not to honor his father or his mother.’ And *by this* you invalidated the word of God for the sake of your tradition.

¹⁰“For Moses said, ‘HONOR YOUR FATHER AND YOUR MOTHER’; and, ‘HE WHO SPEAKS EVIL OF FATHER OR MOTHER, IS TO BE PUT TO DEATH’; ¹¹but you say, ‘If a man says to *his* father or *his* mother, whatever I have that would help you is Corban (that is to say, given *to God*),’ ¹²you no longer permit him to do anything for *his* father or *his* mother; ¹³*thus* invalidating the word of God by your tradition which you have handed down; and you do many things such as that.”

¹⁰After Jesus called the crowd to Him, He said to them, “Hear and understand. ¹¹“*It is* not what enters into the mouth *that* defiles the man, but what proceeds out of the mouth, this defiles the man.”

¹⁴After He called the crowd to Him again, He *began* saying to them, “Listen to Me, all of you, and understand: ¹⁵there is nothing outside the man which can defile him if it goes into him; but the things which proceed out of the man are what defile the man. ¹⁶“[If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear.]”

¹²Then the disciples ^{*}came and ^{*}said to Him, “Do You know that the Pharisees were offended when they heard this statement?” ¹³But He answered and said, “Every plant which My heavenly Father did not plant shall be uprooted. ¹⁴“Let them alone; they are blind

guides of the blind. And if a blind man guides a blind man, both will fall into a pit.”

¹⁵Peter said to Him, “Explain the parable to us.”

¹⁷When he had left the crowd *and* entered the house, His disciples questioned Him about the parable.

¹⁶Jesus said, “Are you still lacking in understanding also? ¹⁷“Do you not understand that everything that goes into the mouth passes into the stomach, and is eliminated?

¹⁸And He ^{*}said to them, “Are you so lacking in understanding also? Do you not understand that whatever goes into the man from outside cannot defile him, ¹⁹because it does not go into his heart, but into his stomach, and is eliminated?” (*Thus He declared all foods clean.*)

¹⁸“But the things that proceed out of the mouth come from the heart, and those defile the man. ¹⁹“For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, slanders. ²⁰“These are the things which defile the man; but to eat with unwashed hands does not defile the man.”

²⁰And He was saying, “That which proceeds out of the man, that is what defiles the man. ²¹“For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed the evil thoughts, fornications, thefts, murders, adulteries, ²²deeds of coveting *and* wickedness, *as well as* deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride *and* foolishness. ²³“All these evil things proceed from within and defile the man.”

G. The Reception in Tyre and Sidon, § 78, Matthew 15:21–28; Mark 7:24–30

Matthew 15:21–28

²¹Jesus went away from there, and withdrew into the district of Tyre and Sidon.

²²And a Canaanite woman from that region came out and *began* to cry out, saying, “Have mercy on me, Lord, Son of David; my daughter is cruelly demon-possessed.” ²³But He did not answer her a word. And His disciples came and implored Him, saying, “Send her away, because she keeps shouting at us.” ²⁴But He answered and said, “I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.” ²⁵But she came and *began* to bow down before Him, saying, “Lord, help me!”

²⁶And He answered and said, “It is not good to take the children’s bread and throw it to the dogs.” ²⁷But she said, “Yes, Lord; but even the dogs feed on the crumbs which fall from their masters’ table.”

²⁸Then Jesus said to her, “O woman, your faith is great; it shall be done for you as you wish.”

And her daughter was healed at once.

Mark 7:24–30

²⁴Jesus got up and went away from there to the region of Tyre.

And when He had entered a house, He wanted no one to know *of it*; yet He could not escape notice.

²⁵But after hearing of Him, a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit immediately came and fell at His feet. ²⁶Now the woman was a Gentile, of the Syrophenician race. And she kept asking Him to cast the demon out of her daughter.

²⁷And He was saying to her, “Let the children be satisfied first, for it is not good to take the children’s bread and throw it to the dogs.” ²⁸But she answered and ^{*}said to Him, “Yes, Lord, *but* even the dogs under the table feed on the children’s crumbs.”

²⁹And He said to her, “Because of this answer go; the demon has gone out of your daughter.”

³⁰And going back to her home, she found the child lying on the bed, the demon having left.

H. The Reception in Decapolis, § 79, Matthew 15:29–38; Mark 7:31–8:9

Matthew 15:29–31

²⁹Departing from there, Jesus went along by the Sea of Galilee, and having gone up on the mountain, He was sitting there.

³⁰And large crowds came to Him, bringing with them *those who were* lame, crippled, blind, mute, and many others, and they laid them down at His feet; and He healed them.

³¹So the crowd marveled as they saw the mute speaking, the crippled restored, and the lame walking, and the blind seeing; and they glorified the God of Israel.

Mark 7:31–7:37

³¹Again He went out from the region of Tyre, and came through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee, within the region of Decapolis.

³²They *brought to Him one who was deaf and spoke with difficulty, and they *implored Him to lay His hand on him. ³³Jesus took him aside from the crowd, by himself, and put His fingers into his ears, and after spitting, He touched his tongue *with the saliva*; ³⁴and looking up to heaven with a deep sigh, He *said to him, “Ephphatha!” that is, “Be opened!” ³⁵And his ears were opened, and the impediment of his tongue was removed, and he *began* speaking plainly. ³⁶And He gave them orders not to tell anyone; but the more He ordered them, the more widely they continued to proclaim it.

³⁷They were utterly astonished, saying, “He has done all things well; He makes even the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”

Feeding the four thousand[Matthew 15:32–38](#)

³²And Jesus called His disciples to Him, and said, “I feel compassion for the people, because they have remained with Me now three days and have nothing to eat; and I do not want to send them away hungry, for they might faint on the way.”

³³The disciples *said to Him, “Where would we get so many loaves in *this* desolate place to satisfy such a large crowd?” ³⁴And Jesus *said to them, “How many loaves do you have?” And they said, “Seven, and a few small fish.”

³⁵And He directed the people to sit down on the ground; ³⁶and He took the seven loaves and the fish; and giving thanks, He broke them and started giving them to the disciples, and the disciples *gave them* to the people.

³⁷And they all ate and were satisfied, and they picked up what was left over of the broken pieces, seven large baskets full. ³⁸And those who ate were four thousand men, besides women and children.

[Mark 8:1–8:9](#)

^{8:1}In those days, when there was again a large crowd and they had nothing to eat, Jesus called His disciples and *said to them, ²“I feel compassion for the people because they have remained with Me now three days and have nothing to eat. ³“If I send them away hungry to their homes, they will faint on the way; and some of them have come from a great distance.”

⁴And His disciples answered Him, “Where will anyone be able *to find enough* bread here in *this* desolate place to satisfy these people?” ⁵And He was asking them, “How many loaves do you have?” And they said, “Seven.”

⁶And He *directed the people to sit down on the ground; and taking the seven loaves, He gave thanks and broke them, and started giving them to His disciples to serve to them, and they served them to the people. ⁷They also had a few small fish; and after He had blessed them, He ordered these to be served as well.

⁸And they ate and were satisfied; and they picked up seven large baskets full of what was left over of the broken pieces. ⁹About four thousand were *there*; and He sent them away.

I. The Rejection in Magadan, § 80, Matthew 15:39–16:4; Mark 8:10–12

Matthew 15:39–16:4

³⁹And sending away the crowds, Jesus got into the boat and came to the region of Magadan.

^{16:1}The Pharisees and Sadducees came up, and testing Jesus, they asked Him to show them a sign from heaven.

²But He replied to them, “When it is evening, you say, ‘*It will be fair weather, for the sky is red.*’ ³“And in the morning, ‘*There will be a storm today, for the sky is red and threatening.*’ Do you know how to discern the appearance of the sky, but cannot *discern* the signs of the times?

⁴“An evil and adulterous generation seeks after a sign; and a sign will not be given it, except the sign of Jonah.” And He left them and went away.

Mark 8:10–12

¹⁰And immediately He entered the boat with His disciples and came to the district of Dalmanutha.

¹¹The Pharisees came out and began to argue with Him, seeking from Him a sign from heaven, to test Him.

¹²Sighing deeply in His spirit, He *said, “Why does this generation seek for a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation.”

J. The Warning against Rejection, § 81, Matthew 16:5–12; Mark 8:13–26

Matthew 16:5–12

⁵And the disciples came to the other side *of the sea*, but they had forgotten to bring *any* bread.

⁶And Jesus said to them, “Watch out and beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees.”

⁷They began to discuss *this* among themselves, saying, “*He said that* because we did not bring *any* bread.” ⁸But Jesus, aware of this, said, “You men of little faith, why do you discuss among yourselves that you have no bread?”

⁹“Do you not yet understand or remember the five loaves of the five thousand, and how many baskets *full* you picked up? ¹⁰“Or the seven loaves of the four thousand, and how many large baskets *full* you picked up?”

¹¹“How is it that you do not understand that I did not speak to you concerning bread? But beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” ¹²Then they understood that He did not say to beware of the leaven of bread, but of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Mark 8:13–26

¹³Leaving them, He again embarked and went away to the other side. ¹⁴And they had forgotten to take bread, and did not have more than one loaf in the boat with them.

¹⁵And He was giving orders to them, saying, “Watch out! Beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and the leaven of Herod.”

¹⁶They *began* to discuss with one another *the fact* that they had no bread. ¹⁷And Jesus, aware of this, ^{*}said to them, “Why do you discuss *the fact* that you have no bread?”

Do you not yet see or understand? Do you have a hardened heart? ¹⁸“HAVING EYES, DO YOU NOT SEE? AND HAVING EARS, DO YOU NOT HEAR? And do you not remember, ¹⁹when I broke the five loaves for the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces you picked up?” They ^{*}said to Him, “Twelve.” ²⁰“When *I broke* the seven for the four thousand, how many large baskets full of broken pieces did you pick up?” And they ^{*}said to Him, “Seven.”

²¹And He was saying to them, “Do you not yet understand?”

²²And they ^{*}came to Bethsaida. And they ^{*}brought a blind man to Jesus and ^{*}implored Him to touch him. ²³Taking the blind man by the hand, He brought him out of the village; and after spitting on his eyes and laying His hands on him, He asked him, “Do you see anything?” ²⁴And he looked up and said, “I see men, for I see *them* like trees, walking around.” ²⁵Then again He laid His hands on his eyes; and he looked intently and was restored, and *began* to see everything clearly. ²⁶And He sent him to his home, saying, “Do not even enter the village.”

K. The Confession of Peter, § 82, Matthew 16:13–20; Mark 8:27–30; Luke 9:18–21

1. Jesus' questions and Peter's confession of His Messiahship

[Matthew 16:13–16](#)

¹³Now when Jesus came into the district of Caesarea Philippi, He was asking His disciples, "Who do people say that the Son of Man is?" ¹⁴And they said, "Some say John the Baptist; and others, Elijah; but still others, Jeremiah, or one of the prophets."

¹⁵He *said to them, "But who do you say that I am?" ¹⁶Simon Peter answered, "You are the Christ, the Son of the living God."

[Mark 8:27–29](#)

²⁷Jesus went out, along with His disciples, to the villages of Caesarea Philippi; and on the way He questioned His disciples, saying to them, "Who do people say that I am?" ²⁸They told Him, saying, "John the Baptist; and others say Elijah; but others, one of the prophets."

²⁹And He *continued* by questioning them, "But who do you say that I am?" Peter *answered and *said to Him, "You are the Christ."

[Luke 9:18–20](#)

¹⁸And it happened that while He was praying alone, the disciples were with Him, and He questioned them, saying, "Who do the people say that I am?" ¹⁹They answered and said, "John the Baptist, and others say Elijah; but others, that one of the prophets of old has risen again."

²⁰And He said to them, "But who do you say that I am?" And Peter answered and said, "The Christ of God."

2. Jesus' Response to Peter

[Matthew 16:17-19](#)

¹⁷And Jesus said to him, "Blessed are you, Simon Barjona, because flesh and blood did not reveal *this* to you, but My Father who is in heaven. ¹⁸"I also say to you that you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build My church; and the gates of Hades will not overpower it. ¹⁹"I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and whatever you bind on earth shall have been bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall have been loosed in heaven."

3. Jesus' Policy

[Matthew 16:20](#)

²⁰Then He warned the disciples that they should tell no one that He was the Christ.

[Mark 8:30](#)

³⁰And He warned them to tell no one about Him.

[Luke 9:21](#)

²¹But He warned them and instructed *them* not to tell this to anyone,

L. Instruction Concerning the Death of the King, § 83, Matthew 16:21–26; Mark 8:31–37; Luke 9:22–25

Matthew 16:21–26

²¹From that time Jesus began to show His disciples that He must go to Jerusalem, and suffer many things from the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised up on the third day.

²²Peter took Him aside and began to rebuke Him, saying, “God forbid it, Lord! This shall never happen to You.” ²³But He turned and said to Peter, “Get behind Me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to Me; for you are not setting your mind on God’s interests, but man’s.”

²⁴Then Jesus said to His disciples, “If anyone wishes to come after Me, he must deny himself, and take up his cross and follow Me. ²⁵“For whoever wishes to save his life will lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake will find it. ²⁶“For what will it profit a man if he gains the whole world and forfeits his soul? Or what will a man give in exchange for his soul?

Mark 8:31–37

³¹And He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again. ³²And He was stating the matter plainly.

And Peter took Him aside and began to rebuke Him. ³³But turning around and seeing His disciples, He rebuked Peter and *said, “Get behind Me, Satan; for you are not setting your mind on God’s interests, but man’s.”

³⁴And He summoned the crowd with His disciples, and said to them, “If anyone wishes to come after Me, he must deny himself, and take up his cross and follow Me. ³⁵“For whoever wishes to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for My sake and the gospel’s will save it. ³⁶“For what does it profit a man to gain the whole world, and forfeit his soul? ³⁷“For what will a man give in exchange for his soul?

Luke 9:22–25

²²saying, “The Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed and be raised up on the third day.”

²³And He was saying to *them* all, “If anyone wishes to come after Me, he must deny himself, and take up his cross daily and follow Me. ²⁴“For whoever wishes to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for My sake, he is the one who will save it. ²⁵“For what is a man profited if he gains the whole world, and loses or forfeits himself?

M. Instruction Concerning the Kingdom, § 84-85

1. The Promise of Revelation,

§ 84, Matthew 16:27-28; Mark 8:38-9:1; Luke 9:26-27

Matthew 16:27-28

²⁷“For the Son of Man is going to come in the glory of His Father with His angels, and WILL THEN REPAY EVERY MAN ACCORDING TO HIS DEEDS. ²⁸“Truly I say to you, there are some of those who are standing here who will not taste death until they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom.”

Mark 8:38-9:1

³⁸“For whoever is ashamed of Me and My words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him when He comes in the glory of His Father with the holy angels.” ^{9:1}And Jesus was saying to them, “Truly I say to you, there are some of those who are standing here who will not taste death until they see the kingdom of God after it has come with power.”

Luke 9:26-27

²⁶“For whoever is ashamed of Me and My words, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when He comes in His glory, and *the glory* of the Father and of the holy angels. ²⁷“But I say to you truthfully, there are some of those standing here who will not taste death until they see the kingdom of God.”

2. The Transfiguration: The Revelation of the Kingdom,

§ 85, Matthew 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36a

Matthew 17:1-8

¹Six days later Jesus *took with Him Peter and James and John his brother, and *led them up on a high mountain by themselves.

²And He was transfigured before them; and His face shone like the sun, and His garments became as white as light.

³And behold, Moses and Elijah appeared to them, talking with Him.

Mark 9:2-8

²Six days later, Jesus *took with Him Peter and James and John, and *brought them up on a high mountain by themselves.

And He was transfigured before them; ³and His garments became radiant and exceedingly white, as no launderer on earth can whiten them.

⁴Elijah appeared to them along with Moses; and they were talking with Jesus.

Luke 9:28-36a

²⁸Some eight days after these sayings, He took along Peter and John and James, and went up on the mountain to pray.

²⁹And while He was praying, the appearance of His face became different, and His clothing *became* white *and* gleaming.

³⁰And behold, two men were talking with Him; and they were Moses and Elijah, ³¹who, appearing in glory, were speaking of His departure which He was about to accomplish at Jerusalem.

³²Now Peter and his companions had been overcome with sleep; but when they were fully awake, they saw His glory and the two men standing with Him.

⁴Peter said to Jesus, “Lord, it is good for us to be here; if You wish, I will make three tabernacles here, one for You, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah.”

⁵Peter *said to Jesus, “Rabbi, it is good for us to be here; let us make three tabernacles, one for You, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah.”

⁶For he did not know what to answer; for they became terrified.

³³And as these were leaving Him, Peter said to Jesus, “Master, it is good for us to be here; let us make three tabernacles: one for You, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah”—not realizing what he was saying.

⁵While he was still speaking, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and behold, a voice out of the cloud said, “This is My beloved Son, with whom I am well-pleased; listen to Him!”

⁷Then a cloud formed, overshadowing them, and a voice came out of the cloud, “This is My beloved Son, listen to Him!”

³⁴While he was saying this, a cloud formed and *began* to overshadow them; and they were afraid as they entered the cloud. ³⁵Then a voice came out of the cloud, saying, “This is My Son, My Chosen One; listen to Him!”

⁶When the disciples heard *this*, they fell face down to the ground and were terrified. ⁷And Jesus came to *them* and touched them and said, “Get up, and do not be afraid.” ⁸And lifting up their eyes, they saw no one except Jesus Himself alone.

⁸All at once they looked around and saw no one with them anymore, except Jesus alone.

^{36a}And when the voice had spoken, Jesus was found alone.

N. Instruction Concerning Elijah, § 86, Matthew 17:9–13; Mark 9:9–13; Luke 9:36b

[Matthew 17:9–13](#)

⁹As they were coming down from the mountain, Jesus commanded them, saying, “Tell the vision to no one until the Son of Man has risen from the dead.”

¹⁰And His disciples asked Him, “Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?” ¹¹And He answered and said, “Elijah is coming and will restore all things; ¹²but I say to you that Elijah already came, and they did not recognize him, but did to him whatever they wished. So also the Son of Man is going to suffer at their hands.” ¹³Then the disciples understood that He had spoken to them about John the Baptist.

[Mark 9:9–13](#)

⁹As they were coming down from the mountain, He gave them orders not to relate to anyone what they had seen, until the Son of Man rose from the dead. ¹⁰They seized upon that statement, discussing with one another what rising from the dead meant.

¹¹They asked Him, saying, “*Why is it that the scribes say that Elijah must come first?*” ¹²And He said to them, “Elijah does first come and restore all things. And yet how is it written of the Son of Man that He will suffer many things and be treated with contempt? ¹³“But I say to you that Elijah has indeed come, and they did to him whatever they wished, just as it is written of him.”

[Luke 9:36b](#)

^{36b} And they kept silent, and reported to no one in those days any of the things which they had seen.

O. Instruction Concerning Faith, § 87, Matthew 17:14–20; Mark 9:14–29; Luke 9:37–43a

[Matthew 17:14–20](#)

¹⁴When they came to the crowd, a man came up to Jesus, falling on his knees before Him and saying, ¹⁵“Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is a lunatic and is very ill; for he often falls into the fire and often into the water. ¹⁶“I brought him to Your disciples, and they could not cure him.” ¹⁷And Jesus answered and said, “You unbelieving and perverted generation, how long shall I be with you? How long shall I put up with you?”

[Mark 9:14–29](#)

¹⁴When they came *back* to the disciples, they saw a large crowd around them, and *some* scribes arguing with them. ¹⁵Immediately, when the entire crowd saw Him, they were amazed and *began* running up to greet Him. ¹⁶And He asked them, “What are you discussing with them?” ¹⁷And one of the crowd answered Him, “Teacher, I brought You my son, possessed with a spirit which makes him mute; ¹⁸and whenever it seizes him, it slams him *to the ground* and he foams *at the mouth*, and grinds his teeth and stiffens out. I told

[Luke 9:37–43a](#)

³⁷On the next day, when they came down from the mountain, a large crowd met Him. ³⁸And a man from the crowd shouted, saying, “Teacher, I beg You to look at my son, for he is my only *boy*, ³⁹and a spirit seizes him, and he suddenly screams, and it throws him into a convulsion with foaming *at the mouth*; and only with difficulty does it leave him, mauling him *as it leaves*. ⁴⁰“I begged Your disciples to cast it out, and they could not.” ⁴¹And Jesus answered and said, “You unbelieving and perverted generation, how long

Your disciples to cast it out, and they could not *do it*.”¹⁹ And He *answered them and *said, “O unbelieving generation, how long shall I be with you? How long shall I put up with you? shall I be with you and put up with you?”

Bring him here to Me.”¹⁸ And Jesus rebuked him, and the demon came out of him, and the boy was cured at once.

Bring him to Me!”²⁰ They brought the boy to Him. When he saw Him, immediately the spirit threw him into a convulsion, and falling to the ground, he *began* rolling around and foaming *at the mouth*.²¹ And He asked his father, “How long has this been happening to him?” And he said, “From childhood.”²² “It has often thrown him both into the fire and into the water to destroy him. But if You can do anything, take pity on us and help us!”²³ And Jesus said to him, “‘If You can?’ All things are possible to him who believes.”²⁴ Immediately the boy’s father cried out and said, “I do believe; help my unbelief.”²⁵ When Jesus saw that a crowd was rapidly gathering, He rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, “You deaf and mute spirit, I command you, come out of him and do not enter him again.”²⁶ After crying out and throwing him into terrible convulsions, it came out; and *the boy* became so much like a corpse that most of *them* said, “He is dead!”²⁷ But Jesus took him by the hand and raised him; and he got up.

Bring your son here.”⁴² While he was still approaching, the demon slammed him *to the ground* and threw him into a convulsion. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the boy and gave him back to his father.

¹⁹ Then the disciples came to Jesus privately and said, “Why could we not drive it out?”²⁰ And He *said to them, “Because of the littleness of your faith; for truly I say to you, if you have faith the size of a mustard seed, you will say to this mountain, ‘Move from here to there,’ and it will move; and nothing will be impossible to you.

²⁸ When He came into *the house*, His disciples *began* questioning Him privately, “Why could we not drive it out?”²⁹ And He said to them, “This kind cannot come out by anything but prayer.”

^{43a} And they were all amazed at the greatness of God.

P. Instruction Concerning the Death of the King , § 88, Matthew 17:22–23; Mark 9:30–32; Luke 9:43b–45

Matthew 17:22–23

²²And while they were gathering together in Galilee, Jesus said to them, “The Son of Man is going to be delivered into the hands of men; ²³and they will kill Him, and He will be raised on the third day.” And they were deeply grieved.

Mark 9:30–32

³⁰From there they went out and *began* to go through Galilee, and He did not want anyone to know *about it*. ³¹For He was teaching His disciples and telling them, “The Son of Man is to be delivered into the hands of men, and they will kill Him; and when He has been killed, He will rise three days later.” ³²But they did not understand *this* statement, and they were afraid to ask Him.

Luke 9:43b–45

^{43b} But while everyone was marveling at all that He was doing, He said to His disciples, ⁴⁴“Let these words sink into your ears; for the Son of Man is going to be delivered into the hands of men.” ⁴⁵But they did not understand this statement, and it was concealed from them so that they would not perceive it; and they were afraid to ask Him about this statement.

Q. Instruction Concerning Sonship, § 89, Matthew 17:24–27

Matthew 17:24–27

²⁴When they came to Capernaum, those who collected the two-drachma *tax* came to Peter and said, “Does your teacher not pay the two-drachma *tax*?” ²⁵He *said, “Yes.” And when he came into the house, Jesus spoke to him first, saying, “What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect customs or poll-tax, from their sons or from strangers?” ²⁶When Peter said, “From strangers,” Jesus said to him, “Then the sons are exempt. ²⁷“However, so that we do not offend them, go to the sea and throw in a hook, and take the first fish that comes up; and when you open its mouth, you will find a shekel. Take that and give it to them for you and Me.”

R. Instruction Concerning Humility, § 90, Matthew 18:1–5; Mark 9:33–37; Luke 9:46–48

Matthew 18:1–5

¹At that time the disciples came to Jesus and said, “Who then is greatest in the kingdom of heaven?”

²And He called a child to Himself and set him before them, ³and said,

“Truly I say to you, unless you are converted and become like children, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven.

⁴“Whoever then humbles himself as this child, he is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven. ⁵“And whoever receives one such child in My name receives Me;

Mark 9:33–37

³³They came to Capernaum; and when He was in the house, He *began* to question them, “What were you discussing on the way?”

³⁴But they kept silent, for on the way they had discussed with one another which *of them was* the greatest. ³⁵Sitting down, He called the twelve and *said* to them, “If anyone wants to be first, he shall be last of all and servant of all.”

³⁶Taking a child, He set him before them, and taking him in His arms, He said to them,

³⁷“Whoever receives one child like this in My name receives Me; and whoever receives Me does not receive Me, but Him who sent Me.”

Luke 9:46–48

⁴⁶An argument started among them as to which of them might be the greatest. ⁴⁷But Jesus, knowing what they were thinking in their heart,

took a child and stood him by His side, ⁴⁸and said to them,

“Whoever receives this child in My name receives Me, and whoever receives Me receives Him who sent Me; for the one who is least among all of you, this is the one who is great.”

S. Instruction Concerning Exclusiveness and Pride, § 91, Matthew 18:6–14; Mark 9:38–50; Luke 9:49–50

Mark 9:38–41

³⁸John said to Him, “Teacher, we saw someone casting out demons in Your name, and we tried to prevent him because he was not following us.” ³⁹But Jesus said, “Do not hinder him, for there is no one who will perform a miracle in My name, and be able soon afterward to speak evil of Me. ⁴⁰“For he who is not against us is for us. ⁴¹“For whoever gives you a cup of water to drink because of your name as *followers* of Christ, truly I say to you, he will not lose his reward.

Luke 9:49–50

⁴⁹John answered and said, “Master, we saw someone casting out demons in Your name; and we tried to prevent him because he does not follow along with us.” ⁵⁰But Jesus said to him, “Do not hinder *him*; for he who is not against you is for you.”

Matthew 18:6–14

⁶but whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a heavy millstone hung around his neck, and to be drowned in the depth of the sea. ⁷“Woe to the world because of *its* stumbling blocks! For it is inevitable that stumbling blocks come; but woe to that man through whom the stumbling block comes!

⁸“If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it from you; it is better for you to enter life crippled or lame, than to have two hands or two feet and be cast into the eternal fire. ⁹“If your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it from you. It is better for you to enter life with one eye, than to have two eyes and be cast into the fiery hell.

¹⁰“See that you do not despise one of these little ones, for I say to you that their angels in heaven continually see the face of My Father who is in heaven. ¹¹“For the Son of Man has come to save that which was lost.] ¹²“What do you think? If any man has a hundred sheep, and one of them has gone astray, does he not leave the ninety-nine on the mountains and go and search for the one that is straying? ¹³“If it turns out that he finds it, truly I say to you, he rejoices over it more than over the ninety-nine which have not gone astray. ¹⁴“So it is not *the* will of your Father who is in heaven that one of these little ones perish.

Mark 9:42–50

⁴²“Whoever causes one of these little ones who believe to stumble, it would be better for him if, with a heavy millstone hung around his neck, he had been cast into the sea.

⁴³“If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off; it is better for you to enter life crippled, than, having your two hands, to go into hell, into the unquenchable fire, ⁴⁴[where THEIR WORM DOES NOT DIE, AND THE FIRE IS NOT QUENCHED.] ⁴⁵“If your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off; it is better for you to enter life lame, than, having your two feet, to be cast into hell, ⁴⁶[where THEIR WORM DOES NOT DIE, AND THE FIRE IS NOT QUENCHED.] ⁴⁷“If your eye causes you to stumble, throw it out; it is better for you to enter the kingdom of God with one eye, than, having two eyes, to be cast into hell, ⁴⁸where THEIR WORM DOES NOT DIE, AND THE FIRE IS NOT QUENCHED.

⁴⁹“For everyone will be salted with fire. ⁵⁰“Salt is good; but if the salt becomes unsalty, with what will you make it salty *again*? Have salt in yourselves, and be at peace with one another.”

T. Instruction Concerning Forgiveness, § 92, Matthew 18:15–35

Matthew 18:15–35

¹⁵“If your brother sins, go and show him his fault in private; if he listens to you, you have won your brother.

¹⁶“But if he does not listen *to you*, take one or two more with you, so that BY THE MOUTH OF TWO OR THREE WITNESSES EVERY FACT MAY BE CONFIRMED. ¹⁷“If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church; and if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector.

¹⁸“Truly I say to you, whatever you bind on earth shall have been bound in heaven; and whatever you loose on earth shall have been loosed in heaven. ¹⁹“Again I say to you, that if two of you agree on earth about anything that they may ask, it shall be done for them by My Father who is in heaven. ²⁰“For where two or three have gathered together in My name, I am there in their midst.”

²¹Then Peter came and said to Him, “Lord, how often shall my brother sin against me and I forgive him? Up to seven times?” ²²Jesus *said to him, “I do not say to you, up to seven times, but up to seventy times seven.

²³“For this reason the kingdom of heaven may be compared to a king who wished to settle accounts with his slaves. ²⁴“When he had begun to settle *them*, one who owed him ten thousand talents was brought to him.

²⁵“But since he did not have *the means* to repay, his lord commanded him to be sold, along with his wife and children and all that he had, and repayment to be made. ²⁶“So the slave fell *to the ground* and prostrated himself before him, saying, ‘Have patience with me and I will repay you everything.’ ²⁷“And the lord of that slave felt compassion and released him and forgave him the debt. ²⁸“But that slave went out and found one of his fellow slaves who owed him a hundred denarii; and he seized him and *began* to choke *him*, saying, ‘Pay back what you owe.’ ²⁹“So his fellow slave fell *to the ground* and *began* to plead with him, saying, ‘Have patience with me and I will repay you.’ ³⁰“But he was unwilling and went and threw him in prison until he should pay back what was owed. ³¹“So when his fellow slaves saw what had happened, they were deeply grieved and came and reported to their lord all that had happened. ³²“Then summoning him, his lord *said to him, ‘You wicked slave, I forgave you all that debt because you pleaded with me. ³³‘Should you not also have had mercy on your fellow slave, in the same way that I had mercy on you?’ ³⁴“And his lord, moved with anger, handed him over to the torturers until he should repay all that was owed him. ³⁵“My heavenly Father will also do the same to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.”

U. The Challenge by the Brothers, § 93, John 7:2–9

John 7:2–9

²Now the feast of the Jews, the Feast of Booths, was near. ³Therefore His brothers said to Him, “Leave here and go into Judea, so that Your disciples also may see Your works which You are doing. ⁴“For no one does anything in secret when he himself seeks to be *known* publicly. If You do these things, show Yourself to the world.” ⁵For not even His brothers were believing in Him. ⁶So Jesus *said to them, “My time is not yet here, but your time is always opportune. ⁷“The world cannot hate you, but it hates Me because I testify of it, that its deeds are evil. ⁸“Go up to the feast yourselves; I do not go up to this feast because My time has not yet fully come.” ⁹Having said these things to them, He stayed in Galilee.

V. The Journey to Jerusalem, § 94, Luke 9:51–56; John 7:10

[Luke 9:51–56](#)

⁵¹When the days were approaching for His ascension, He was determined to go to Jerusalem; ⁵²and He sent messengers on ahead of Him, and they went and entered a village of the Samaritans to make arrangements for Him. ⁵³But they did not receive Him, because He was traveling toward Jerusalem. ⁵⁴When His disciples James and John saw *this*, they said, “Lord, do You want us to command fire to come down from heaven and consume them?” ⁵⁵But He turned and rebuked them, [and said, “You do not know what kind of spirit you are of; ⁵⁶for the Son of Man did not come to destroy men’s lives, but to save them.”] And they went on to another village.

[John 7:10](#)

¹⁰But when His brothers had gone up to the feast, then He Himself also went up, not publicly, but as if, in secret.

W. Instruction Concerning Discipleship, § 95, Matthew 8:19–22; Luke 9:57–62

[Matthew 8:19–22](#)

¹⁹Then a scribe came and said to Him, “Teacher, I will follow You wherever You go.” ²⁰Jesus *said to him, “The foxes have holes and the birds of the air *have* nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay His head.”

²¹Another of the disciples said to Him, “Lord, permit me first to go and bury my father.” ²²But Jesus *said to him, “Follow Me, and allow the dead to bury their own dead.”

[Luke 9:57–62](#)

⁵⁷As they were going along the road, someone said to Him, “I will follow You wherever You go.” ⁵⁸And Jesus said to him, “The foxes have holes and the birds of the air *have* nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay His head.”

⁵⁹And He said to another, “Follow Me.” But he said, “Lord, permit me first to go and bury my father.” ⁶⁰But He said to him, “Allow the dead to bury their own dead; but as for you, go and proclaim everywhere the kingdom of God.”

⁶¹Another also said, “I will follow You, Lord; but first permit me to say good-bye to those at home.” ⁶²But Jesus said to him, “No one, after putting his hand to the plow and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God.”

V THE OPPOSITION TO THE KING, § 96-112

A. The Conflict at the Feast of Tabernacles, § 96, John 7:11-52

1. Messiah's Authority Questioned, John 7:11-15

[John 7:11-15](#)

¹¹So the Jews were seeking Him at the feast and were saying, "Where is He?" ¹²There was much grumbling among the crowds concerning Him; some were saying, "He is a good man"; others were saying, "No, on the contrary, He leads the people astray." ¹³Yet no one was speaking openly of Him for fear of the Jews. ¹⁴But when it was now the midst of the feast Jesus went up into the temple, and *began to* teach. ¹⁵The Jews then were astonished, saying, "How has this man become learned, having never been educated?"

2. Messiah's Explanation, John 7:16-24

[John 7:16-24](#)

¹⁶So Jesus answered them and said, "My teaching is not Mine, but His who sent Me. ¹⁷"If anyone is willing to do His will, he will know of the teaching, whether it is of God or *whether* I speak from Myself. ¹⁸"He who speaks from himself seeks his own glory; but He who is seeking the glory of the One who sent Him, He is true, and there is no unrighteousness in Him. ¹⁹"Did not Moses give you the Law, and *yet* none of you carries out the Law? Why do you seek to kill Me?" ²⁰The crowd answered, "You have a demon! Who seeks to kill You?" ²¹Jesus answered them, "I did one deed, and you all marvel. ²²"For this reason Moses has given you circumcision (not because it is from Moses, but from the fathers), and on *the* Sabbath you circumcise a man. ²³"If a man receives circumcision on *the* Sabbath so that the Law of Moses will not be broken, are you angry with Me because I made an entire man well on *the* Sabbath? ²⁴"Do not judge according to appearance, but judge with righteous judgment."

3. Messiah's Person Questioned, John 7:25-27

[John 7:25-27](#)

²⁵So some of the people of Jerusalem were saying, "Is this not the man whom they are seeking to kill? ²⁶"Look, He is speaking publicly, and they are saying nothing to Him. The rulers do not really know that this is the Christ, do they? ²⁷"However, we know where this man is from; but whenever the Christ may come, no one knows where He is from."

4. Messiah's Explanation, John 7:28-30

[John 7:28-30](#)

²⁸Then Jesus cried out in the temple, teaching and saying, “You both know Me and know where I am from; and I have not come of Myself, but He who sent Me is true, whom you do not know. ²⁹“I know Him, because I am from Him, and He sent Me.” ³⁰So they were seeking to seize Him; and no man laid his hand on Him, because His hour had not yet come.

5. The People's Response, John 7:31-36

[John 7:31-36](#)

³¹But many of the crowd believed in Him; and they were saying, “When the Christ comes, He will not perform more signs than those which this man has, will He?” ³²The Pharisees heard the crowd muttering these things about Him, and the chief priests and the Pharisees sent officers to seize Him. ³³Therefore Jesus said, “For a little while longer I am with you, then I go to Him who sent Me. ³⁴“You will seek Me, and will not find Me; and where I am, you cannot come.” ³⁵The Jews then said to one another, “Where does this man intend to go that we will not find Him? He is not intending to go to the Dispersion among the Greeks, and teach the Greeks, is He? ³⁶“What is this statement that He said, ‘You will seek Me, and will not find Me; and where I am, you cannot come?’”

6. Messiah's Invitation, John 7:37-44

[John 7:37-44](#)

³⁷Now on the last day, the great *day* of the feast, Jesus stood and cried out, saying, “If anyone is thirsty, let him come to Me and drink. ³⁸“He who believes in Me, as the Scripture said, ‘From his innermost being will flow rivers of living water.’” ³⁹But this He spoke of the Spirit, whom those who believed in Him were to receive; for the Spirit was not yet *given*, because Jesus was not yet glorified. ⁴⁰Some of the people therefore, when they heard these words, were saying, “This certainly is the Prophet.” ⁴¹Others were saying, “This is the Christ.” Still others were saying, “Surely the Christ is not going to come from Galilee, is He? ⁴²“Has not the Scripture said that the Christ comes from the descendants of David, and from Bethlehem, the village where David was?” ⁴³So a division occurred in the crowd because of Him. ⁴⁴Some of them wanted to seize Him, but no one laid hands on Him.

7. The Pharisaic Response, John 7:45-52

[John 7:45-52](#)

⁴⁵The officers then came to the chief priests and Pharisees, and they said to them, “Why did you not bring Him?” ⁴⁶The officers answered, “Never has a man spoken the way this man speaks.” ⁴⁷The Pharisees then answered them, “You have not also been led astray, have you? ⁴⁸“No one of the rulers or Pharisees has believed in Him, has he? ⁴⁹“But this crowd which does not know the Law is accursed.” ⁵⁰Nicodemus (he who came to Him before, being one of them) *said to them, ⁵¹“Our Law does not judge a man unless it first hears from him and knows what he is doing, does it?” ⁵²They answered him, “You are not also from Galilee, are you? Search, and see that no prophet arises out of Galilee.”

B. The Conflict Over the Law, § 97, John 7:53–8:11

John 7:53–8:11

⁵³[Everyone went to his home. ^{8:1}But Jesus went to the Mount of Olives. ²Early in the morning He came again into the temple, and all the people were coming to Him; and He sat down and *began* to teach them.

³The scribes and the Pharisees ^{*}brought a woman caught in adultery, and having set her in the center *of the court*, ⁴they ^{*}said to Him, “Teacher, this woman has been caught in adultery, in the very act. ⁵“Now in the Law Moses commanded us to stone such women; what then do You say?” ⁶They were saying this, testing Him, so that they might have grounds for accusing Him. But Jesus stooped down and with His finger wrote on the ground.

⁷But when they persisted in asking Him, He straightened up, and said to them, “He who is without sin among you, let him *be the* first to throw a stone at her.” ⁸Again He stooped down and wrote on the ground.

⁹When they heard it, they *began to go* out one by one, beginning with the older ones, and He was left alone, and the woman, where she was, in the center *of the court*.

¹⁰Straightening up, Jesus said to her, “Woman, where are they? Did no one condemn you?” ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” And Jesus said, “I do not condemn you, either. Go. From now on sin no more.”]

C. The Conflict Over the Light, § 98, John 8:12–20

John 8:12–20

¹²Then Jesus again spoke to them, saying, “I am the Light of the world; he who follows Me will not walk in the darkness, but will have the Light of life.”

¹³So the Pharisees said to Him, “You are testifying about Yourself; Your testimony is not true.”

¹⁴Jesus answered and said to them, “Even if I testify about Myself, My testimony is true, for I know where I came from and where I am going; but you do not know where I come from or where I am going. ¹⁵“You judge according to the flesh; I am not judging anyone.

¹⁶“But even if I do judge, My judgment is true; for I am not alone *in it*, but I and the Father who sent Me.

¹⁷“Even in your law it has been written that the testimony of two men is true. ¹⁸“I am He who testifies about Myself, and the Father who sent Me testifies about Me.”

¹⁹So they were saying to Him, “Where is Your Father?” Jesus answered, “You know neither Me nor My Father; if you knew Me, you would know My Father also.”

²⁰These words He spoke in the treasury, as He taught in the temple; and no one seized Him, because His hour had not yet come.

D. The Conflict Over His Person, § 99, John 8:21–59

1. Messiah the True Object of Faith, John 8:21-30

John 8:21–30

²¹Then He said again to them, “I go away, and you will seek Me, and will die in your sin; where I am going, you cannot come.” ²²So the Jews were saying, “Surely He will not kill Himself, will He, since He says, ‘Where I am going, you cannot come?’” ²³And He was saying to them, “You are from below, I am from above; you are of this world, I am not of this world. ²⁴“Therefore I said to you that you will die in your sins; for unless you believe that I am *He*, you will die in your sins.”

²⁵So they were saying to Him, “Who are You?” Jesus said to them, “What have I been saying to you *from* the beginning? ²⁶“I have many things to speak and to judge concerning you, but He who sent Me is true; and the things which I heard from Him, these I speak to the world.”

²⁷They did not realize that He had been speaking to them about the Father. ²⁸So Jesus said, “When you lift up the Son of Man, then you will know that I am *He*, and I do nothing on My own initiative, but I speak these things as the Father taught Me. ²⁹“And He who sent Me is with Me; He has not left Me alone, for I always do the things that are pleasing to Him.”

³⁰As He spoke these things, many came to believe in Him.

2. Messiah the True Deliverer, John 8:31-59

a. *From Sin, John 8:31-40*

John 8:31-40

³¹So Jesus was saying to those Jews who had believed Him, “If you continue in My word, *then* you are truly disciples of Mine; ³²and you will know the truth, and the truth will make you free.” ³³They answered Him, “We are Abraham’s descendants and have never yet been enslaved to anyone; how is it that You say, ‘You will become free?’”

³⁴Jesus answered them, “Truly, truly, I say to you, everyone who commits sin is the slave of sin. ³⁵“The slave does not remain in the house forever; the son does remain forever. ³⁶“So if the Son makes you free, you will be free indeed.

³⁷“I know that you are Abraham’s descendants; yet you seek to kill Me, because My word has no place in you. ³⁸“I speak the things which I have seen with My Father; therefore you also do the things which you heard from *your* father.” ³⁹They answered and said to Him, “Abraham is our father.” Jesus *said to them, “If you are Abraham’s children, do the deeds of Abraham. ⁴⁰“But as it is, you are seeking to kill Me, a man who has told you the truth, which I heard from God; this Abraham did not do.

b. From Satan, John 8:41-48

[John 8:41-48](#)

⁴¹“You are doing the deeds of your father.” They said to Him, “We were not born of fornication; we have one Father: God.” ⁴²Jesus said to them, “If God were your Father, you would love Me, for I proceeded forth and have come from God, for I have not even come on My own initiative, but He sent Me.

⁴³“Why do you not understand what I am saying? *It is* because you cannot hear My word. ⁴⁴“You are of *your* father the devil, and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own *nature*, for he is a liar and the father of lies. ⁴⁵“But because I speak the truth, you do not believe Me.

⁴⁶“Which one of you convicts Me of sin? If I speak truth, why do you not believe Me? ⁴⁷“He who is of God hears the words of God; for this reason you do not hear *them*, because you are not of God.”

⁴⁸The Jews answered and said to Him, “Do we not say rightly that You are a Samaritan and have a demon?”

c. From Death, John 8:49-59

[John 8:49-59](#)

⁴⁹Jesus answered, “I do not have a demon; but I honor My Father, and you dishonor Me. ⁵⁰“But I do not seek My glory; there is One who seeks and judges.

⁵¹“Truly, truly, I say to you, if anyone keeps My word he will never see death.” ⁵²The Jews said to Him, “Now we know that You have a demon. Abraham died, and the prophets *also*; and You say, ‘If anyone keeps My word, he will never taste of death.’ ⁵³“Surely You are not greater than our father Abraham, who died? The prophets died too; whom do You make Yourself out *to be*?”

⁵⁴Jesus answered, “If I glorify Myself, My glory is nothing; it is My Father who glorifies Me, of whom you say, ‘He is our God’; ⁵⁵and you have not come to know Him, but I know Him; and if I say that I do not know Him, I will be a liar like you, but I do know Him and keep His word.

⁵⁶“Your father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw *it* and was glad.” ⁵⁷So the Jews said to Him, “You are not yet fifty years old, and have You seen Abraham?”

⁵⁸Jesus said to them, “Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am.” ⁵⁹Therefore they picked up stones to throw at Him, but Jesus hid Himself and went out of the temple.

E. The Conflict Over the Healing of the Man Born Blind, § 100, John 9:1–41

1. Physical Healing, John 9:1-12

[John 9:1–12](#)

¹As He passed by, He saw a man blind from birth. ²And His disciples asked Him, “Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, that he would be born blind?” ³Jesus answered, “*It was* neither *that* this man sinned, nor his parents; but *it was* so that the works of God might be displayed in him. ⁴“We must work the works of Him who sent Me as long as it is day; night is coming when no one can work. ⁵“While I am in the world, I am the Light of the world.”

⁶When He had said this, He spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle, and applied the clay to his eyes, ⁷and said to him, “Go, wash in the pool of Siloam” (which is translated, Sent). So he went away and washed, and came *back* seeing. ⁸Therefore the neighbors, and those who previously saw him as a beggar, were saying, “Is not this the one who used to sit and beg?” ⁹Others were saying, “This is he,” *still* others were saying, “No, but he is like him.” He kept saying, “I am the one.” ¹⁰So they were saying to him, “How then were your eyes opened?” ¹¹He answered, “The man who is called Jesus made clay, and anointed my eyes, and said to me, ‘Go to Siloam and wash’; so I went away and washed, and I received sight.” ¹²They said to him, “Where is He?” He ^{*}said, “I do not know.”

2. The First Interrogation, John 9:13-17

[John 9:13–17](#)

¹³They ^{*}brought to the Pharisees the man who was formerly blind. ¹⁴Now it was a Sabbath on the day when Jesus made the clay and opened his eyes. ¹⁵Then the Pharisees also were asking him again how he received his sight. And he said to them, “He applied clay to my eyes, and I washed, and I see.” ¹⁶Therefore some of the Pharisees were saying, “This man is not from God, because He does not keep the Sabbath.” But others were saying, “How can a man who is a sinner perform such signs?” And there was a division among them. ¹⁷So they ^{*}said to the blind man again, “What do you say about Him, since He opened your eyes?” And he said, “He is a prophet.”

3. The Interrogation of Parents, John 9:18-22

[John 9:18–22](#)

¹⁸The Jews then did not believe *it* of him, that he had been blind and had received sight, until they called the parents of the very one who had received his sight, ¹⁹and questioned them, saying, “Is this your son, who you say was born blind? Then how does he now see?” ²⁰His parents answered them and said, “We know that this is our son, and that he was born blind; ²¹but how he now sees, we do not know; or who opened his eyes, we do not know. Ask him; he is of age, he will speak for himself.” ²²His parents said this because they were afraid of the Jews; for the Jews had already agreed that if anyone confessed Him to be Christ, he was to be put out of the synagogue.

4. The Second Interrogation, John 9:23-34

[John 9:23–34](#)

²³For this reason his parents said, “He is of age; ask him.” ²⁴So a second time they called the man who had been blind, and said to him, “Give glory to God; we know that this man is a sinner.”

²⁵He then answered, “Whether He is a sinner, I do not know; one thing I do know, that though I was blind, now I see.”

²⁶So they said to him, “What did He do to you? How did He open your eyes?”

²⁷He answered them, “I told you already and you did not listen; why do you want to hear *it* again? You do not want to become His disciples too, do you?”

²⁸They reviled him and said, “You are His disciple, but we are disciples of Moses. ²⁹“We know that God has spoken to Moses, but as for this man, we do not know where He is from.”

³⁰The man answered and said to them, “Well, here is an amazing thing, that you do not know where He is from, and *yet* He opened my eyes. ³¹“We know that God does not hear sinners; but if anyone is God-fearing and does His will, He hears him. ³²“Since the beginning of time it has never been heard that anyone opened the eyes of a person born blind. ³³“If this man were not from God, He could do nothing.”

³⁴They answered him, “You were born entirely in sins, and are you teaching us?” So they put him out.

5. Spiritual Healing, John 9:35-41

[John 9:35–41](#)

³⁵Jesus heard that they had put him out, and finding him, He said, “Do you believe in the Son of Man?” ³⁶He answered, “Who is He, Lord, that I may believe in Him?” ³⁷Jesus said to him, “You have both seen Him, and He is the one who is talking with you.” ³⁸And he said, “Lord, I believe.” And he worshiped Him.

³⁹And Jesus said, “For judgment I came into this world, so that those who do not see may see, and that those who see may become blind.” ⁴⁰Those of the Pharisees who were with Him heard these things and said to Him, “We are not blind too, are we?” ⁴¹Jesus said to them, “If you were blind, you would have no sin; but since you say, ‘We see,’ your sin remains.

F. The Conflict Over the Shepherd, § 101, John 10:1–21

1. Messiah the True Shepherd, John 10:1-6

[John 10:1–6](#)

¹“Truly, truly, I say to you, he who does not enter by the door into the fold of the sheep, but climbs up some other way, he is a thief and a robber. ²“But he who enters by the door is a shepherd of the sheep. ³“To him the doorkeeper opens, and the sheep hear his voice, and he calls his own sheep by name and leads them out. ⁴“When he puts forth all his own, he goes ahead of them, and the sheep follow him because they know his voice. ⁵“A stranger they simply will not follow, but will flee from him, because they do not know the voice of strangers.” ⁶This figure of speech Jesus spoke to them, but they did not understand what those things were which He had been saying to them.

2. Messiah the Door, John 10:7-10

[John 10:7–10](#)

⁷So Jesus said to them again, “Truly, truly, I say to you, I am the door of the sheep. ⁸“All who came before Me are thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not hear them. ⁹“I am the door; if anyone enters through Me, he will be saved, and will go in and out and find pasture. ¹⁰“The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy; I came that they may have life, and have *it* abundantly.

3. Messiah the Good Shepherd, John 10:11-18

[John 10:11–18](#)

¹¹“I am the good shepherd; the good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep. ¹²“He who is a hired hand, and not a shepherd, who is not the owner of the sheep, sees the wolf coming, and leaves the sheep and flees, and the wolf snatches them and scatters *them*. ¹³“*He flees* because he is a hired hand and is not concerned about the sheep. ¹⁴“I am the good shepherd, and I know My own and My own know Me, ¹⁵even as the Father knows Me and I know the Father; and I lay down My life for the sheep. ¹⁶“I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; I must bring them also, and they will hear My voice; and they will become one flock *with* one shepherd. ¹⁷“For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life so that I may take it again. ¹⁸“No one has taken it away from Me, but I lay it down on My own initiative. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. This commandment I received from My Father.”

4. The Division, John 10:19-21

[John 10:19–21](#)

¹⁹A division occurred again among the Jews because of these words. ²⁰Many of them were saying, “He has a demon and is insane. Why do you listen to Him?” ²¹Others were saying, “These are not the sayings of one demon-possessed. A demon cannot open the eyes of the blind, can he?”

G. The Witness of the Seventy, § 102, Luke 10:1-24

1. The Seventy Sent, Luke 10:1-16

Luke 10:1-16

¹Now after this the Lord appointed seventy others, and sent them in pairs ahead of Him to every city and place where He Himself was going to come.

²And He was saying to them, “The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few; therefore beseech the Lord of the harvest to send out laborers into His harvest. ³“Go; behold, I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves.

⁴“Carry no money belt, no bag, no shoes; and greet no one on the way.

⁵“Whatever house you enter, first say, ‘Peace *be* to this house.’ ⁶“If a man of peace is there, your peace will rest on him; but if not, it will return to you. ⁷“Stay in that house, eating and drinking what they give you; for the laborer is worthy of his wages. Do not keep moving from house to house.

⁸“Whatever city you enter and they receive you, eat what is set before you; ⁹and heal those in it who are sick, and say to them, ‘The kingdom of God has come near to you.’ ¹⁰“But whatever city you enter and they do not receive you, go out into its streets and say, ¹¹‘Even the dust of your city which clings to our feet we wipe off *in protest* against you; yet be sure of this, that the kingdom of God has come near.’

¹²“I say to you, it will be more tolerable in that day for Sodom than for that city. ¹³“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles had been performed in Tyre and Sidon which occurred in you, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. ¹⁴“But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon in the judgment than for you. ¹⁵“And you, Capernaum, will not be exalted to heaven, will you? You will be brought down to Hades!

¹⁶“The one who listens to you listens to Me, and the one who rejects you rejects Me; and he who rejects Me rejects the One who sent Me.”

2. The Seventy Return, Luke 10:17-20

Luke 10:17-20

¹⁷The seventy returned with joy, saying, “Lord, even the demons are subject to us in Your name.” ¹⁸And He said to them, “I was watching Satan fall from heaven like lightning. ¹⁹“Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing will injure you. ²⁰“Nevertheless do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you, but rejoice that your names are recorded in heaven.”

3. Messiah's Prayer, Luke 10:21-24

[Luke 10:21-24](#)

²¹At that very time He rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit, and said, "I praise You, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that You have hidden these things from *the* wise and intelligent and have revealed them to infants. Yes, Father, for this way was well-pleasing in Your sight. ²²"All things have been handed over to Me by My Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son wills to reveal *Him*."

²³Turning to the disciples, He said privately, "Blessed *are* the eyes which see the things you see, ²⁴for I say to you, that many prophets and kings wished to see the things which you see, and did not see *them*, and to hear the things which you hear, and did not hear *them*."

H. The Conflict Over the Question of Eternal Life, § 103, Luke 10:25-37

[Luke 10:25-37](#)

²⁵And a lawyer stood up and put Him to the test, saying, "Teacher, what shall I do to inherit eternal life?" ²⁶And He said to him, "What is written in the Law? How does it read to you?" ²⁷And he answered, "YOU SHALL LOVE THE LORD YOUR GOD WITH ALL YOUR HEART, AND WITH ALL YOUR SOUL, AND WITH ALL YOUR STRENGTH, AND WITH ALL YOUR MIND; AND YOUR NEIGHBOR AS YOURSELF." ²⁸And He said to him, "You have answered correctly; DO THIS AND YOU WILL LIVE."

²⁹But wishing to justify himself, he said to Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?" ³⁰Jesus replied and said, "A man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among robbers, and they stripped him and beat him, and went away leaving him half dead. ³¹"And by chance a priest was going down on that road, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. ³²"Likewise a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side. ³³"But a Samaritan, who was on a journey, came upon him; and when he saw him, he felt compassion, ³⁴and came to him and bandaged up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on *them*; and he put him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn and took care of him. ³⁵"On the next day he took out two denarii and gave them to the innkeeper and said, 'Take care of him; and whatever more you spend, when I return I will repay you.' ³⁶"Which of these three do you think proved to be a neighbor to the man who fell into the robbers' *hands*?" ³⁷And he said, "The one who showed mercy toward him." Then Jesus said to him, "Go and do the same."

I. The Example of Fellowship, § 104, Luke 10:38-42

[Luke 10:38-42](#)

³⁸Now as they were traveling along, He entered a village; and a woman named Martha welcomed Him into her home. ³⁹She had a sister called Mary, who was seated at the Lord's feet, listening to His word. ⁴⁰But Martha was distracted with all her preparations; and she came up *to Him* and said, "Lord, do You not care that my sister has left me to do all the serving alone? Then tell her to help me." ⁴¹But the Lord answered and said to her, "Martha, Martha, you are worried and bothered about so many things; ⁴²but *only* one thing is necessary, for Mary has chosen the good part, which shall not be taken away from her."

J. Instruction in Prayer, § 105, Luke 11:1–13

[Luke 11:1–13](#)

¹It happened that while Jesus was praying in a certain place, after He had finished, one of His disciples said to Him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” ²And He said to them, “When you pray, say: ‘Father, hallowed be Your name. Your kingdom come. ³Give us each day our daily bread. ⁴And forgive us our sins, For we ourselves also forgive everyone who is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation.’ ”

⁵Then He said to them, “Suppose one of you has a friend, and goes to him at midnight and says to him, ‘Friend, lend me three loaves; ⁶for a friend of mine has come to me from a journey, and I have nothing to set before him’; ⁷and from inside he answers and says, ‘Do not bother me; the door has already been shut and my children and I are in bed; I cannot get up and give you *anything*.’ ⁸“I tell you, even though he will not get up and give him *anything* because he is his friend, yet because of his persistence he will get up and give him as much as he needs.

⁹“So I say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you. ¹⁰“For everyone who asks, receives; and he who seeks, finds; and to him who knocks, it will be opened.

¹¹“Now suppose one of you fathers is asked by his son for a fish; he will not give him a snake instead of a fish, will he? ¹²“Or if he is asked for an egg, he will not give him a scorpion, will he? ¹³“If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him?”

K. Conflict Over Healing of the Dumb Man, § 106, Luke 11:14–36

1. The Charge, Luke 11:14-16

[Luke 11:14–16](#)

¹⁴And He was casting out a demon, and it was mute; when the demon had gone out, the mute man spoke; and the crowds were amazed. ¹⁵But some of them said, “He casts out demons by Beelzebul, the ruler of the demons.” ¹⁶Others, to test *Him*, were demanding of Him a sign from heaven.

2. The Defence, Luke 11:17-23

[Luke 11:17–23](#)

¹⁷But He knew their thoughts and said to them, “Any kingdom divided against itself is laid waste; and a house *divided* against itself falls. ¹⁸“If Satan also is divided against himself, how will his kingdom stand? For you say that I cast out demons by Beelzebul. ¹⁹“And if I by Beelzebul cast out demons, by whom do your sons cast them out? So they will be your judges. ²⁰“But if I cast out demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you. ²¹“When a strong *man*, fully armed, guards his own house, his possessions are undisturbed. ²²“But when someone stronger than he attacks him and overpowers him, he takes away from him all his armor on which he had relied and distributes his plunder. ²³“He who is not with Me is against Me; and he who does not gather with Me, scatters.

3. The Condition of the Nation, Luke 11:24-28

[Luke 11:24–28](#)

²⁴“When the unclean spirit goes out of a man, it passes through waterless places seeking rest, and not finding any, it says, ‘I will return to my house from which I came.’ ²⁵“And when it comes, it finds it swept and put in order. ²⁶“Then it goes and takes *along* seven other spirits more evil than itself, and they go in and live there; and the last state of that man becomes worse than the first.”

²⁷While Jesus was saying these things, one of the women in the crowd raised her voice and said to Him, “Blessed is the womb that bore You and the breasts at which You nursed.” ²⁸But He said, “On the contrary, blessed are those who hear the word of God and observe it.”

4. The Sign to that Generation, Luke 11:29-32

[Luke 11:29–32](#)

²⁹As the crowds were increasing, He began to say, “This generation is a wicked generation; it seeks for a sign, and yet no sign will be given to it but the sign of Jonah. ³⁰“For just as Jonah became a sign to the Ninevites, so will the Son of Man be to this generation.

³¹“The Queen of the South will rise up with the men of this generation at the judgment and condemn them, because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon; and behold, something greater than Solomon is here. ³²“The men of Nineveh will stand up with this generation at the judgment and condemn it, because they repented at the preaching of Jonah; and behold, something greater than Jonah is here.

5. The Call to the Nation, Luke 11:33-36

[Luke 11:33–36](#)

³³“No one, after lighting a lamp, puts it away in a cellar nor under a basket, but on the lampstand, so that those who enter may see the light.

³⁴“The eye is the lamp of your body; when your eye is clear, your whole body also is full of light; but when it is bad, your body also is full of darkness. ³⁵“Then watch out that the light in you is not darkness. ³⁶“If therefore your whole body is full of light, with no dark part in it, it will be wholly illumined, as when the lamp illumines you with its rays.”

L. The Conflict Over Pharisaic Ritualism, § 107, Luke 11:37–54

Luke 11:37–54

³⁷Now when He had spoken, a Pharisee *asked Him to have lunch with him; and He went in, and reclined *at the table*. ³⁸When the Pharisee saw it, he was surprised that He had not first ceremonially washed before the meal.

³⁹But the Lord said to him, “Now you Pharisees clean the outside of the cup and of the platter; but inside of you, you are full of robbery and wickedness. ⁴⁰“You foolish ones, did not He who made the outside make the inside also? ⁴¹“But give that which is within as charity, and then all things are clean for you.

⁴²“But woe to you Pharisees! For you pay tithe of mint and rue and every *kind of* garden herb, and yet disregard justice and the love of God; but these are the things you should have done without neglecting the others.

⁴³“Woe to you Pharisees! For you love the chief seats in the synagogues and the respectful greetings in the market places.

⁴⁴“Woe to you! For you are like concealed tombs, and the people who walk over *them* are unaware *of it*.”

⁴⁵One of the lawyers *said to Him in reply, “Teacher, when You say this, You insult us too.”

⁴⁶But He said, “Woe to you lawyers as well! For you weigh men down with burdens hard to bear, while you yourselves will not even touch the burdens with one of your fingers.

⁴⁷“Woe to you! For you build the tombs of the prophets, and *it was* your fathers *who* killed them. ⁴⁸“So you are witnesses and approve the deeds of your fathers; because it was they who killed them, and you build *their tombs*. ⁴⁹“For this reason also the wisdom of God said, ‘I will send to them prophets and apostles, and *some* of them they will kill and *some* they will persecute, ⁵⁰so that the blood of all the prophets, shed since the foundation of the world, may be charged against this generation, ⁵¹from the blood of Abel to the blood of Zechariah, who was killed between the altar and the house *of God*; yes, I tell you, it shall be charged against this generation.’

⁵²“Woe to you lawyers! For you have taken away the key of knowledge; you yourselves did not enter, and you hindered those who were entering.”

⁵³When He left there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to be very hostile and to question Him closely on many subjects, ⁵⁴plotting against Him to catch *Him* in something He might say.

M. Instruction of the Disciples, § 108-111

1. Hypocrisy, § 108, Luke 12:1-12

[Luke 12:1-12](#)

¹Under these circumstances, after so many thousands of people had gathered together that they were stepping on one another, He began saying to His disciples first *of all*,

“Beware of the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy.

²“But there is nothing covered up that will not be revealed, and hidden that will not be known. ³“Accordingly, whatever you have said in the dark will be heard in the light, and what you have whispered in the inner rooms will be proclaimed upon the housetops.

⁴“I say to you, My friends, do not be afraid of those who kill the body and after that have no more that they can do. ⁵“But I will warn you whom to fear: fear the One who, after He has killed, has authority to cast into hell; yes, I tell you, fear Him!

⁶“Are not five sparrows sold for two cents? *Yet* not one of them is forgotten before God. ⁷“Indeed, the very hairs of your head are all numbered. Do not fear; you are more valuable than many sparrows.

⁸“And I say to you, everyone who confesses Me before men, the Son of Man will confess him also before the angels of God; ⁹but he who denies Me before men will be denied before the angels of God.

¹⁰“And everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven him; but he who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven him.

¹¹“When they bring you before the synagogues and the rulers and the authorities, do not worry about how or what you are to speak in your defense, or what you are to say; ¹²for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that very hour what you ought to say.”

2. Covetousness, Luke 12:13-34

a. Occasion, Luke 12:13-15

[Luke 12:13–15](#)

¹³Someone in the crowd said to Him, “Teacher, tell my brother to divide the *family* inheritance with me.” ¹⁴But He said to him, “Man, who appointed Me a judge or arbitrator over you?” ¹⁵Then He said to them, “Beware, and be on your guard against every form of greed; for not *even* when one has an abundance does his life consist of his possessions.”

b. Instruction, Luke 12:16-21

[Luke 12:16–21](#)

¹⁶And He told them a parable, saying, “The land of a rich man was very productive. ¹⁷“And he began reasoning to himself, saying, ‘What shall I do, since I have no place to store my crops?’ ¹⁸“Then he said, ‘This is what I will do: I will tear down my barns and build larger ones, and there I will store all my grain and my goods. ¹⁹‘And I will say to my soul, “Soul, you have many goods laid up for many years *to come*; take your ease, eat, drink *and* be merry.”’ ²⁰“But God said to him, ‘You fool! This *very* night your soul is required of you; and *now* who will own what you have prepared?’ ²¹“So is the man who stores up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God.”

c. Application, Luke 12:22-34

[Luke 12:22–34](#)

²²And He said to His disciples, “For this reason I say to you, do not worry about *your* life, *as to* what you will eat; nor for your body, *as to* what you will put on. ²³“For life is more than food, and the body more than clothing.

²⁴“Consider the ravens, for they neither sow nor reap; they have no storeroom nor barn, and *yet* God feeds them; how much more valuable you are than the birds! ²⁵“And which of you by worrying can add a *single* hour to his life’s span? ²⁶“If then you cannot do even a very little thing, why do you worry about other matters?

²⁷“Consider the lilies, how they grow: they neither toil nor spin; but I tell you, not even Solomon in all his glory clothed himself like one of these. ²⁸“But if God so clothes the grass in the field, which is *alive* today and tomorrow is thrown into the furnace, how much more *will He clothe* you? You men of little faith!

²⁹“And do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink, and do not keep worrying. ³⁰“For all these things the nations of the world eagerly seek; but your Father knows that you need these things. ³¹“But seek His kingdom, and these things will be added to you.

³²“Do not be afraid, little flock, for your Father has chosen gladly to give you the kingdom. ³³“Sell your possessions and give to charity; make yourselves money belts which do not wear out, an unfailing treasure in heaven, where no thief comes near nor moth destroys. ³⁴“For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

3. Watchfulness, Luke 12:35-40

[Luke 12:35–40](#)

³⁵“Be dressed in readiness, and *keep* your lamps lit.

³⁶“Be like men who are waiting for their master when he returns from the wedding feast, so that they may immediately open *the door* to him when he comes and knocks. ³⁷“Blessed are those slaves whom the master will find on the alert when he comes; truly I say to you, that he will gird himself *to serve*, and have them recline *at the table*, and will come up and wait on them. ³⁸“Whether he comes in the second watch, or even in the third, and finds *them* so, blessed are those *slaves*.

³⁹“But be sure of this, that if the head of the house had known at what hour the thief was coming, he would not have allowed his house to be broken into. ⁴⁰“You too, be ready; for the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect.”

4. Faithfulness, Luke 12:41-48

[Luke 12:41–48](#)

⁴¹Peter said, “Lord, are You addressing this parable to us, or to everyone *else* as well?”

⁴²And the Lord said, “Who then is the faithful and sensible steward, whom his master will put in charge of his servants, to give them their rations at the proper time? ⁴³“Blessed is that slave whom his master finds so doing when he comes. ⁴⁴“Truly I say to you that he will put him in charge of all his possessions.

⁴⁵“But if that slave says in his heart, ‘My master will be a long time in coming,’ and begins to beat the slaves, *both* men and women, and to eat and drink and get drunk; ⁴⁶the master of that slave will come on a day when he does not expect *him* and at an hour he does not know, and will cut him in pieces, and assign him a place with the unbelievers.

⁴⁷“And that slave who knew his master’s will and did not get ready or act in accord with his will, will receive many lashes, ⁴⁸but the one who did not know *it*, and committed deeds worthy of a flogging, will receive but few. From everyone who has been given much, much will be required; and to whom they entrusted much, of him they will ask all the more.

5. The Effects of His Coming, Luke 12:49-53

[Luke 12:49–53](#)

⁴⁹“I have come to cast fire upon the earth; and how I wish it were already kindled! ⁵⁰“But I have a baptism to undergo, and how distressed I am until it is accomplished!

⁵¹“Do you suppose that I came to grant peace on earth? I tell you, no, but rather division; ⁵²for from now on five *members* in one household will be divided, three against two and two against three. ⁵³“They will be divided, father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, mother-in-law against daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against mother-in-law.”

6. The Signs of the Times, Luke 12:54-59

[Luke 12:54-59](#)

⁵⁴And He was also saying to the crowds, “When you see a cloud rising in the west, immediately you say, ‘A shower is coming,’ and so it turns out. ⁵⁵“And when *you see* a south wind blowing, you say, ‘It will be a hot day,’ and it turns out *that way*. ⁵⁶“You hypocrites! You know how to analyze the appearance of the earth and the sky, but why do you not analyze this present time?”

⁵⁷“And why do you not even on your own initiative judge what is right? ⁵⁸“For while you are going with your opponent to appear before the magistrate, on *your way there* make an effort to settle with him, so that he may not drag you before the judge, and the judge turn you over to the officer, and the officer throw you into prison. ⁵⁹“I say to you, you will not get out of there until you have paid the very last cent.”

7. Concerning Repentance, § 109, Luke 13:1-9

[Luke 13:1-9](#)

¹Now on the same occasion there were some present who reported to Him about the Galileans whose blood Pilate had mixed with their sacrifices. ²And Jesus said to them, “Do you suppose that these Galileans were *greater* sinners than all *other* Galileans because they suffered this *fate*? ³“I tell you, no, but unless you repent, you will all likewise perish.

⁴“Or do you suppose that those eighteen on whom the tower in Siloam fell and killed them were *worse* culprits than all the men who live in Jerusalem? ⁵“I tell you, no, but unless you repent, you will all likewise perish.”

⁶And He *began* telling this parable: “A man had a fig tree which had been planted in his vineyard; and he came looking for fruit on it and did not find any. ⁷“And he said to the vineyard-keeper, ‘Behold, for three years I have come looking for fruit on this fig tree without finding any. Cut it down! Why does it even use up the ground?’

⁸“And he answered and said to him, ‘Let it alone, sir, for this year too, until I dig around it and put in fertilizer; ⁹and if it bears fruit next year, *fine*; but if not, cut it down.’ ”

8. Concerning Israel's Need, § 110, Luke 13:10-17

[Luke 13:10-17](#)

¹⁰And He was teaching in one of the synagogues on the Sabbath. ¹¹And there was a woman who for eighteen years had had a sickness caused by a spirit; and she was bent double, and could not straighten up at all. ¹²When Jesus saw her, He called her over and said to her, “Woman, you are freed from your sickness.” ¹³And He laid His hands on her; and immediately she was made erect again and *began* glorifying God. ¹⁴But the synagogue official, indignant because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath, *began* saying to the crowd in response, “There are six days in which work should be done; so come during them and get healed, and not on the Sabbath day.” ¹⁵But the Lord answered him and said, “You hypocrites, does not each of you on the Sabbath untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead him away to water *him*? ¹⁶“And this woman, a daughter of Abraham as she is, whom Satan has bound for eighteen long years, should she not have been released from this bond on the Sabbath day?” ¹⁷As He said this, all His opponents were being humiliated; and the entire crowd was rejoicing over all the glorious things being done by Him.

9. Concerning the Kingdom Program, § 111, Luke 13:18-21

Luke 13:18–21

¹⁸So He was saying, “What is the kingdom of God like, and to what shall I compare it? ¹⁹“It is like a mustard seed, which a man took and threw into his own garden; and it grew and became a tree, and THE BIRDS OF THE AIR NESTED IN ITS BRANCHES.”

²⁰And again He said, “To what shall I compare the kingdom of God? ²¹“It is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three pecks of flour until it was all leavened.”

N. The Conflict at the Feast of Dedication, § 112, John 10:22–39

John 10:22–39

²²At that time the Feast of the Dedication took place at Jerusalem; ²³it was winter, and Jesus was walking in the temple in the portico of Solomon.

²⁴The Jews then gathered around Him, and were saying to Him, “How long will You keep us in suspense? If You are the Christ, tell us plainly.” ²⁵Jesus answered them, “I told you, and you do not believe; the works that I do in My Father’s name, these testify of Me. ²⁶“But you do not believe because you are not of My sheep.

²⁷“My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me; ²⁸and I give eternal life to them, and they will never perish; and no one will snatch them out of My hand. ²⁹“My Father, who has given *them* to Me, is greater than all; and no one is able to snatch *them* out of the Father’s hand.

³⁰“I and the Father are one.” ³¹The Jews picked up stones again to stone Him. ³²Jesus answered them, “I showed you many good works from the Father; for which of them are you stoning Me?” ³³The Jews answered Him, “For a good work we do not stone You, but for blasphemy; and because You, being a man, make Yourself out *to be* God.”

³⁴Jesus answered them, “Has it not been written in your Law, ‘I SAID, YOU ARE GODS’? ³⁵“If he called them gods, to whom the word of God came (and the Scripture cannot be broken), ³⁶do you say of Him, whom the Father sanctified and sent into the world, ‘You are blaspheming,’ because I said, ‘I am the Son of God’? ³⁷“If I do not do the works of My Father, do not believe Me; ³⁸but if I do them, though you do not believe Me, believe the works, so that you may know and understand that the Father is in Me, and I in the Father.”

³⁹Therefore they were seeking again to seize Him, and He eluded their grasp.

VI THE PREPARATION OF THE DISCIPLES BY THE KING, § 113-130

A. The Withdrawal from Judea, § 113, John 10:40-42

[John 10:40-42](#)

⁴⁰And He went away again beyond the Jordan to the place where John was first baptizing, and He was staying there. ⁴¹Many came to Him and were saying, “While John performed no sign, yet everything John said about this man was true.” ⁴²Many believed in Him there.

B. Instruction Concerning Entrance into the Kingdom, § 114, Luke 13:22-35

[Luke 13:22-35](#)

²²And He was passing through from one city and village to another, teaching, and proceeding on His way to Jerusalem.

²³And someone said to Him, “Lord, are there *just* a few who are being saved?”

And He said to them, ²⁴“Strive to enter through the narrow door; for many, I tell you, will seek to enter and will not be able.

²⁵“Once the head of the house gets up and shuts the door, and you begin to stand outside and knock on the door, saying, ‘Lord, open up to us!’ then He will answer and say to you, ‘I do not know where you are from.’

²⁶“Then you will begin to say, ‘We ate and drank in Your presence, and You taught in our streets’; ²⁷and He will say, ‘I tell you, I do not know where you are from; DEPART FROM ME, ALL YOU EVILDOERS.’

²⁸“In that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth when you see Abraham and Isaac and Jacob and all the prophets in the kingdom of God, but yourselves being thrown out. ²⁹“And they will come from east and west and from north and south, and will recline *at the table* in the kingdom of God. ³⁰“And behold, *some* are last who will be first and *some* are first who will be last.”

³¹Just at that time some Pharisees approached, saying to Him, “Go away, leave here, for Herod wants to kill You.”

³²And He said to them, “Go and tell that fox, ‘Behold, I cast out demons and perform cures today and tomorrow, and the third *day* I reach My goal.’ ³³“Nevertheless I must journey on today and tomorrow and the next *day*; for it cannot be that a prophet would perish outside of Jerusalem.

³⁴“O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, *the city* that kills the prophets and stones those sent to her! How often I wanted to gather your children together, just as a hen *gathers* her brood under her wings, and you would not *have it!*

³⁵“Behold, your house is left to you *desolate*; and I say to you, you will not see Me until *the time* comes when you say, ‘BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD!’”

C. Instruction in a Pharisee's House, § 115, Luke 14:1-24

1. True Sabbath Rest, Luke 14:1-6

[Luke 14:1-6](#)

¹It happened that when He went into the house of one of the leaders of the Pharisees on *the Sabbath* to eat bread, they were watching Him closely. ²And there in front of Him was a man suffering from dropsy. ³And Jesus answered and spoke to the lawyers and Pharisees, saying, “Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?” ⁴But they kept silent. And He took hold of him and healed him, and sent him away. ⁵And He said to them, “Which one of you will have a son or an ox fall into a well, and will not immediately pull him out on a Sabbath day?” ⁶And they could make no reply to this.

2. Humility, Luke 14:7-11

[Luke 14:7-11](#)

⁷And He *began* speaking a parable to the invited guests when He noticed how they had been picking out the places of honor *at the table*, saying to them, ⁸“When you are invited by someone to a wedding feast, do not take the place of honor, for someone more distinguished than you may have been invited by him, ⁹and he who invited you both will come and say to you, ‘Give *your* place to this man,’ and then in disgrace you proceed to occupy the last place. ¹⁰“But when you are invited, go and recline at the last place, so that when the one who has invited you comes, he may say to you, ‘Friend, move up higher’; then you will have honor in the sight of all who are at the table with you. ¹¹“For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted.”

3. Respect of Persons, Luke 14:12-14

[Luke 14:12-14](#)

¹²And He also went on to say to the one who had invited Him, “When you give a luncheon or a dinner, do not invite your friends or your brothers or your relatives or rich neighbors, otherwise they may also invite you in return and *that* will be your repayment. ¹³“But when you give a reception, invite *the poor, the crippled, the lame, the blind,* ¹⁴and you will be blessed, since they do not have *the means* to repay you; for you will be repaid at the resurrection of the righteous.”

4. The Rejection of the Invitation, Luke 14:15-24

[Luke 14:15-24](#)

¹⁵When one of those who were reclining *at the table* with Him heard this, he said to Him, “Blessed is everyone who will eat bread in the kingdom of God!”

¹⁶But He said to him, “A man was giving a big dinner, and he invited many; ¹⁷and at the dinner hour he sent his slave to say to those who had been invited, ‘Come; for everything is ready now.’ ¹⁸“But they all alike began to make excuses. The first one said to him, ‘I have bought a piece of land and I need to go out and look at it; please consider me excused.’ ¹⁹“Another one said, ‘I have bought five yoke of oxen, and I am going to try them out; please consider me excused.’ ²⁰“Another one said, ‘I have married a wife, and for that reason I cannot come.’ ²¹“And the slave came *back* and reported this to his master.

Then the head of the household became angry and said to his slave, ‘Go out at once into the streets and lanes of the city and bring in here the poor and crippled and blind and lame.’ ²²“And the slave said, ‘Master, what you commanded has been done, and still there is room.’

²³“And the master said to the slave, ‘Go out into the highways and along the hedges, and compel *them* to come in, so that my house may be filled.

²⁴‘For I tell you, none of those men who were invited shall taste of my dinner.’ ”

D. Instruction Concerning Discipleship, § 116, Luke 14:25-35

[Luke 14:25-35](#)

²⁵Now large crowds were going along with Him; and He turned and said to them, ²⁶“If anyone comes to Me, and does not hate his own father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters, yes, and even his own life, he cannot be My disciple.

²⁷“Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after Me cannot be My disciple.

²⁸“For which one of you, when he wants to build a tower, does not first sit down and calculate the cost to see if he has enough to complete it? ²⁹“Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation and is not able to finish, all who observe it begin to ridicule him, ³⁰saying, ‘This man began to build and was not able to finish.’ ³¹“Or what king, when he sets out to meet another king in battle, will not first sit down and consider whether he is strong enough with ten thousand *men* to encounter the one coming against him with twenty thousand? ³²“Or else, while the other is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks for terms of peace.

³³“So then, none of you can be My disciple who does not give up all his own possessions.

³⁴“Therefore, salt is good; but if even salt has become tasteless, with what will it be seasoned? ³⁵“It is useless either for the soil or for the manure pile; it is thrown out. He who has ears to hear, let him hear.”

E. Instruction Concerning God's Attitude toward Sinners, § 117, Luke 15:1-32

1. The Occasion

[Luke 15:1-2](#)

¹Now all the tax collectors and the sinners were coming near Him to listen to Him. ²Both the Pharisees and the scribes *began* to grumble, saying, “This man receives sinners and eats with them.”

2. The Parable of the Lost Sheep, Luke 15:3-7

[Luke 15:3-7](#)

³So He told them this parable, saying, ⁴“What man among you, if he has a hundred sheep and has lost one of them, does not leave the ninety-nine in the open pasture and go after the one which is lost until he finds it? ⁵“When he has found it, he lays it on his shoulders, rejoicing. ⁶“And when he comes home, he calls together his friends and his neighbors, saying to them, ‘Rejoice with me, for I have found my sheep which was lost!’ ⁷“I tell you that in the same way, there will be *more* joy in heaven over one sinner who repents than over ninety-nine righteous persons who need no repentance.

3. The Parable of the Lost Coin, Luke 15:8-10

[Luke 15:8-10](#)

⁸“Or what woman, if she has ten silver coins and loses one coin, does not light a lamp and sweep the house and search carefully until she finds it? ⁹“When she has found it, she calls together her friends and neighbors, saying, ‘Rejoice with me, for I have found the coin which I had lost!’ ¹⁰“In the same way, I tell you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents.”

4. The Parable of the Prodigal Son, Luke 15:11-32

[Luke 15:11–32](#)

¹¹And He said, “A man had two sons. ¹²“The younger of them said to his father, ‘Father, give me the share of the estate that falls to me.’ So he divided his wealth between them. ¹³“And not many days later, the younger son gathered everything together and went on a journey into a distant country, and there he squandered his estate with loose living. ¹⁴“Now when he had spent everything, a severe famine occurred in that country, and he began to be impoverished. ¹⁵“So he went and hired himself out to one of the citizens of that country, and he sent him into his fields to feed swine. ¹⁶“And he would have gladly filled his stomach with the pods that the swine were eating, and no one was giving *anything* to him. ¹⁷“But when he came to his senses, he said, ‘How many of my father’s hired men have more than enough bread, but I am dying here with hunger! ¹⁸I will get up and go to my father, and will say to him, “Father, I have sinned against heaven, and in your sight; ¹⁹I am no longer worthy to be called your son; make me as one of your hired men.” ’

²⁰“So he got up and came to his father. But while he was still a long way off, his father saw him and felt compassion *for him*, and ran and embraced him and kissed him.

²¹“And the son said to him, ‘Father, I have sinned against heaven and in your sight; I am no longer worthy to be called your son.’ ²²“But the father said to his slaves, ‘Quickly bring out the best robe and put it on him, and put a ring on his hand and sandals on his feet; ²³and bring the fattened calf, kill it, and let us eat and celebrate; ²⁴for this son of mine was dead and has come to life again; he was lost and has been found.’ And they began to celebrate.

²⁵“Now his older son was in the field, and when he came and approached the house, he heard music and dancing. ²⁶“And he summoned one of the servants and *began* inquiring what these things could be. ²⁷“And he said to him, ‘Your brother has come, and your father has killed the fattened calf because he has received him back safe and sound.’ ²⁸“But he became angry and was not willing to go in; and his father came out and *began* pleading with him. ²⁹“But he answered and said to his father, ‘Look! For so many years I have been serving you and I have never neglected a command of yours; and *yet* you have never given me a young goat, so that I might celebrate with my friends; ³⁰but when this son of yours came, who has devoured your wealth with prostitutes, you killed the fattened calf for him.’

³¹“And he said to him, ‘Son, you have always been with me, and all that is mine is yours. ³²But we had to celebrate and rejoice, for this brother of yours was dead and *has begun* to live, and *was* lost and has been found.’ ”

F. Instruction Concerning Wealth, § 118, Luke 16:1-31

1. The Parable of the Unjust Steward, Luke 16:1-13

[Luke 16:1–13](#)

¹Now He was also saying to the disciples, “There was a rich man who had a manager, and this *manager* was reported to him as squandering his possessions. ²“And he called him and said to him, ‘What is this I hear about you? Give an accounting of your management, for you can no longer be manager.’ ³“The manager said to himself, ‘What shall I do, since my master is taking the management away from me? I am not strong enough to dig; I am ashamed to beg. ⁴‘I know what I shall do, so that when I am removed from the management people will welcome me into their homes.’ ⁵“And he summoned each one of his master’s debtors, and he *began* saying to the first, ‘How much do you owe my master?’ ⁶“And he said, ‘A hundred measures of oil.’ And he said to him, ‘Take your bill, and sit down quickly and write fifty.’ ⁷“Then he said to another, ‘And how much do you owe?’ And he said, ‘A hundred measures of wheat.’ He ^{*}said to him, ‘Take your bill, and write eighty.’ ⁸“And his master praised the unrighteous manager because he had acted shrewdly; for the sons of this age are more shrewd in relation to their own kind than the sons of light.

⁹“And I say to you, make friends for yourselves by means of the wealth of unrighteousness, so that when it fails, they will receive you into the eternal dwellings.

¹⁰“He who is faithful in a very little thing is faithful also in much; and he who is unrighteous in a very little thing is unrighteous also in much. ¹¹“Therefore if you have not been faithful in the *use of* unrighteous wealth, who will entrust the true *riches* to you? ¹²“And if you have not been faithful in *the use of* that which is another’s, who will give you that which is your own?

¹³“No servant can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth.”

2. The Conflict with the Pharisees, Luke 16:14-18

[Luke 16:14–18](#)

¹⁴Now the Pharisees, who were lovers of money, were listening to all these things and were scoffing at Him.

¹⁵And He said to them, “You are those who justify yourselves in the sight of men, but God knows your hearts; for that which is highly esteemed among men is detestable in the sight of God.

¹⁶“The Law and the Prophets *were proclaimed* until John; since that time the gospel of the kingdom of God has been preached, and everyone is forcing his way into it. ¹⁷“But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the Law to fail.

¹⁸“Everyone who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery, and he who marries one who is divorced from a husband commits adultery.

3. The Story of the Rich Man and Lazarus, Luke 16:19-31

[Luke 16:19–31](#)

¹⁹“Now there was a rich man, and he habitually dressed in purple and fine linen, joyously living in splendor every day. ²⁰“And a poor man named Lazarus was laid at his gate, covered with sores, ²¹and longing to be fed with the *crumbs* which were falling from the rich man’s table; besides, even the dogs were coming and licking his sores. ²²“Now the poor man died and was carried away by the angels to Abraham’s bosom; and the rich man also died and was buried. ²³“In Hades he lifted up his eyes, being in torment, and *saw Abraham far away and Lazarus in his bosom.

²⁴“And he cried out and said, ‘Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus so that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool off my tongue, for I am in agony in this flame.’ ²⁵“But Abraham said, ‘Child, remember that during your life you received your good things, and likewise Lazarus bad things; but now he is being comforted here, and you are in agony. ²⁶‘And besides all this, between us and you there is a great chasm fixed, so that those who wish to come over from here to you will not be able, and *that* none may cross over from there to us.’

²⁷“And he said, ‘Then I beg you, father, that you send him to my father’s house— ²⁸for I have five brothers—in order that he may warn them, so that they will not also come to this place of torment.’ ²⁹“But Abraham *said, ‘They have Moses and the Prophets; let them hear them.’ ³⁰“But he said, ‘No, father Abraham, but if someone goes to them from the dead, they will repent!’ ³¹“But he said to him, ‘If they do not listen to Moses and the Prophets, they will not be persuaded even if someone rises from the dead.’ ”

G. Instruction Concerning Forgiveness, § 119, Luke 17:1-4

[Luke 17:1–4](#)

¹He said to His disciples, “It is inevitable that stumbling blocks come, but woe to him through whom they come! ²“It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea, than that he would cause one of these little ones to stumble. ³“Be on your guard! If your brother sins, rebuke him; and if he repents, forgive him. ⁴“And if he sins against you seven times a day, and returns to you seven times, saying, ‘I repent,’ forgive him.”

H. Instruction Concerning Service, § 120, Luke 17:5-10

[Luke 17:5–10](#)

⁵The apostles said to the Lord, “Increase our faith!”

⁶And the Lord said, “If you had faith like a mustard seed, you would say to this mulberry tree, ‘Be uprooted and be planted in the sea’; and it would obey you.

⁷“Which of you, having a slave plowing or tending sheep, will say to him when he has come in from the field, ‘Come immediately and sit down to eat’? ⁸“But will he not say to him, ‘Prepare something for me to eat, and *properly* clothe yourself and serve me while I eat and drink; and afterward you may eat and drink’? ⁹“He does not thank the slave because he did the things which were commanded, does he?

¹⁰“So you too, when you do all the things which are commanded you, say, ‘We are unworthy slaves; we have done *only* that which we ought to have done.’ ”

I. The Resurrection of Lazarus: The First Sign of Jonah, § 121 -123

1. The Sign of Resurrection, § 121, John 11:1-44

a. *The Death of Lazarus, John 11:1-16*

[John 11:1-16](#)

¹Now a certain man was sick, Lazarus of Bethany, the village of Mary and her sister Martha. ²It was the Mary who anointed the Lord with ointment, and wiped His feet with her hair, whose brother Lazarus was sick. ³So the sisters sent *word* to Him, saying, "Lord, behold, he whom You love is sick." ⁴But when Jesus heard *this*, He said, "This sickness is not to end in death, but for the glory of God, so that the Son of God may be glorified by it." ⁵Now Jesus loved Martha and her sister and Lazarus.

⁶So when He heard that he was sick, He then stayed two days *longer* in the place where He was.

⁷Then after this He ^{*}said to the disciples, "Let us go to Judea again." ⁸The disciples ^{*}said to Him, "Rabbi, the Jews were just now seeking to stone You, and are You going there again?" ⁹Jesus answered, "Are there not twelve hours in the day? If anyone walks in the day, he does not stumble, because he sees the light of this world. ¹⁰"But if anyone walks in the night, he stumbles, because the light is not in him." ¹¹This He said, and after that He ^{*}said to them, "Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep; but I go, so that I may awaken him out of sleep." ¹²The disciples then said to Him, "Lord, if he has fallen asleep, he will recover." ¹³Now Jesus had spoken of his death, but they thought that He was speaking of literal sleep. ¹⁴So Jesus then said to them plainly, "Lazarus is dead, ¹⁵and I am glad for your sakes that I was not there, so that you may believe; but let us go to him."

¹⁶Therefore Thomas, who is called Didymus, said to *his* fellow disciples, "Let us also go, so that we may die with Him."

b. *Jesus and Martha, John 11:17-27*

[John 11:17-27](#)

¹⁷So when Jesus came, He found that he had already been in the tomb four days. ¹⁸Now Bethany was near Jerusalem, about two miles off; ¹⁹and many of the Jews had come to Martha and Mary, to console them concerning *their* brother.

²⁰Martha therefore, when she heard that Jesus was coming, went to meet Him, but Mary stayed at the house. ²¹Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, if You had been here, my brother would not have died. ²²"Even now I know that whatever You ask of God, God will give You." ²³Jesus ^{*}said to her, "Your brother will rise again." ²⁴Martha ^{*}said to Him, "I know that he will rise again in the resurrection on the last day." ²⁵Jesus said to her, "I am the resurrection and the life; he who believes in Me will live even if he dies, ²⁶and everyone who lives and believes in Me will never die. Do you believe this?" ²⁷She ^{*}said to Him, "Yes, Lord; I have believed that You are the Christ, the Son of God, *even* He who comes into the world."

c. Jesus and Mary, John 11:28-32

[John 11:28–32](#)

²⁸When she had said this, she went away and called Mary her sister, saying secretly, “The Teacher is here and is calling for you.” ²⁹And when she heard it, she *got up quickly and was coming to Him. ³⁰Now Jesus had not yet come into the village, but was still in the place where Martha met Him. ³¹Then the Jews who were with her in the house, and consoling her, when they saw that Mary got up quickly and went out, they followed her, supposing that she was going to the tomb to weep there. ³²Therefore, when Mary came where Jesus was, she saw Him, and fell at His feet, saying to Him, “Lord, if You had been here, my brother would not have died.”

d. Jesus and Lazarus, John 11:33-44

[John 11:33–44](#)

³³When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews who came with her *also* weeping, He was deeply moved in spirit and was troubled,

³⁴and said, “Where have you laid him?” They *said to Him, “Lord, come and see.” ³⁵Jesus wept. ³⁶So the Jews were saying, “See how He loved him!”

³⁷But some of them said, “Could not this man, who opened the eyes of the blind man, have kept this man also from dying?” ³⁸So Jesus, again being deeply moved within, *came to the tomb. Now it was a cave, and a stone was lying against it.

³⁹Jesus *said, “Remove the stone.” Martha, the sister of the deceased, *said to Him, “Lord, by this time there will be a stench, for he has been *dead* four days.” ⁴⁰Jesus *said to her, “Did I not say to you that if you believe, you will see the glory of God?” ⁴¹So they removed the stone. Then Jesus raised His eyes, and said, “Father, I thank You that You have heard Me. ⁴²“I knew that You always hear Me; but because of the people standing around I said it, so that they may believe that You sent Me.” ⁴³When He had said these things, He cried out with a loud voice, “Lazarus, come forth.” ⁴⁴The man who had died came forth, bound hand and foot with wrappings, and his face was wrapped around with a cloth. Jesus *said to them, “Unbind him, and let him go.”

2. The Rejection of the First Sign of Jonah, § 122, John 11:45–54

John 11:45–54

⁴⁵Therefore many of the Jews who came to Mary, and saw what He had done, believed in Him. ⁴⁶But some of them went to the Pharisees and told them the things which Jesus had done.

⁴⁷Therefore the chief priests and the Pharisees convened a council, and were saying, “What are we doing? For this man is performing many signs. ⁴⁸“If we let Him *go on* like this, all men will believe in Him, and the Romans will come and take away both our place and our nation.”

⁴⁹But one of them, Caiaphas, who was high priest that year, said to them, “You know nothing at all, ⁵⁰nor do you take into account that it is expedient for you that one man die for the people, and that the whole nation not perish.” ⁵¹Now he did not say this on his own initiative, but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus was going to die for the nation, ⁵²and not for the nation only, but in order that He might also gather together into one the children of God who are scattered abroad.

⁵³So from that day on they planned together to kill Him.

⁵⁴Therefore Jesus no longer continued to walk publicly among the Jews, but went away from there to the country near the wilderness, into a city called Ephraim; and there He stayed with the disciples.

3. Instruction in Light of Rejection, § 123, Luke 17:11–37

a. The Personal Witness to Caiaphas, Luke 17:11-19

Luke 17:11–19

¹¹While He was on the way to Jerusalem, He was passing between Samaria and Galilee.

¹²As He entered a village, ten leprous men who stood at a distance met Him; ¹³and they raised their voices, saying, “Jesus, Master, have mercy on us!” ¹⁴When He saw them, He said to them, “Go and show yourselves to the priests.” And as they were going, they were cleansed. ¹⁵Now one of them, when he saw that he had been healed, turned back, glorifying God with a loud voice, ¹⁶and he fell on his face at His feet, giving thanks to Him. And he was a Samaritan. ¹⁷Then Jesus answered and said, “Were there not ten cleansed? But the nine—where are they? ¹⁸“Was no one found who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?” ¹⁹And He said to him, “Stand up and go; your faith has made you well.”

b. The New Form of the Kingdom Program, Luke 17:20-21

Luke 17:20–21

²⁰Now having been questioned by the Pharisees as to when the kingdom of God was coming, He answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not coming with signs to be observed; ²¹nor will they say, ‘Look, here it is!’ or, ‘There it is!’ For behold, the kingdom of God is in your midst.”

c. Instruction Concerning the Second Coming, Luke 17:22-37

[Luke 17:22–37](#)

His coming will be obvious

²²And He said to the disciples, “The days will come when you will long to see one of the days of the Son of Man, and you will not see it.

²³“They will say to you, ‘Look there! Look here!’ Do not go away, and do not run after *them*. ²⁴“For just like the lightning, when it flashes out of one part of the sky, shines to the other part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in His day.

But His rejection comes first

²⁵“But first He must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation.

Judgement will come unexpectedly

²⁶“And just as it happened in the days of Noah, so it will be also in the days of the Son of Man: ²⁷they were eating, they were drinking, they were marrying, they were being given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered the ark, and the flood came and destroyed them all.

²⁸“It was the same as happened in the days of Lot: they were eating, they were drinking, they were buying, they were selling, they were planting, they were building; ²⁹but on the day that Lot went out from Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven and destroyed them all. ³⁰“It will be just the same on the day that the Son of Man is revealed.

Flee that judgement

³¹“On that day, the one who is on the housetop and whose goods are in the house must not go down to take them out; and likewise the one who is in the field must not turn back. ³²“Remember Lot’s wife. ³³“Whoever seeks to keep his life will lose it, and whoever loses *his life* will preserve it.

Rapture

³⁴“I tell you, on that night there will be two in one bed; one will be taken and the other will be left. ³⁵“There will be two women grinding at the same place; one will be taken and the other will be left. ³⁶“Two men will be in the field; one will be taken and the other will be left.”]

Where will He come?

³⁷And answering they *said to Him, “Where, Lord?” And He said to them, “Where the body *is*, there also the vultures will be gathered.”

J. Instruction in Prayer, § 124, Luke 18:1-14

1. Perpetual Prayer, Luke 18:1-8

[Luke 18:1-8](#)

¹Now He was telling them a parable to show that at all times they ought to pray and not to lose heart,

²saying, “In a certain city there was a judge who did not fear God and did not respect man. ³“There was a widow in that city, and she kept coming to him, saying, ‘Give me legal protection from my opponent.’ ⁴“For a while he was unwilling; but afterward he said to himself, ‘Even though I do not fear God nor respect man, ⁵yet because this widow bothers me, I will give her legal protection, otherwise by continually coming she will wear me out.’ ”

⁶And the Lord said, “Hear what the unrighteous judge ^{*}said; ⁷now, will not God bring about justice for His elect who cry to Him day and night, and will He delay long over them? ⁸“I tell you that He will bring about justice for them quickly. However, when the Son of Man comes, will He find faith on the earth?”

2. Humble Prayer, Luke 18:9-14

[Luke 18:9-14](#)

⁹And He also told this parable to some people who trusted in themselves that they were righteous, and viewed others with contempt:

¹⁰“Two men went up into the temple to pray, one a Pharisee and the other a tax collector. ¹¹“The Pharisee stood and was praying this to himself: ‘God, I thank You that I am not like other people: swindlers, unjust, adulterers, or even like this tax collector. ¹²‘I fast twice a week; I pay tithes of all that I get.’ ¹³“But the tax collector, standing some distance away, was even unwilling to lift up his eyes to heaven, but was beating his breast, saying, ‘God, be merciful to me, the sinner!’

¹⁴“I tell you, this man went to his house justified rather than the other; for everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but he who humbles himself will be exalted.”

K. Instruction on Divorce, § 125, Matthew 19:1–12; Mark 10:1–12

Matthew 19:1–12

¹When Jesus had finished these words, He departed from Galilee and came into the region of Judea beyond the Jordan; ²and large crowds followed Him, and He healed them there.

³Some Pharisees came to Jesus, testing Him and asking, “Is it lawful *for a man* to divorce his wife for any reason at all?”

⁴And He answered and said, “Have you not read that He who created *them* from the beginning MADE THEM MALE AND FEMALE, ⁵and said, ‘FOR THIS REASON A MAN SHALL LEAVE HIS FATHER AND MOTHER AND BE JOINED TO HIS WIFE, AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH’? ⁶“So they are no longer two, but one flesh. What therefore God has joined together, let no man separate.”

⁷They ^{*}said to Him, “Why then did Moses command to GIVE HER A CERTIFICATE OF DIVORCE AND SEND *her* AWAY?” ⁸He ^{*}said to them, “Because of your hardness of heart Moses permitted you to divorce your wives; but from the beginning it has not been this way.

⁹“And I say to you, whoever divorces his wife, except for immorality, and marries another woman commits adultery.”

¹⁰The disciples ^{*}said to Him, “If the relationship of the man with his wife is like this, it is better not to marry.” ¹¹But He said to them, “Not all men *can* accept this statement, but *only* those to whom it has been given. ¹²“For there are eunuchs who were born that way from their mother’s womb; and there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men; and there are *also* eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of heaven. He who is able to accept *this*, let him accept *it*.”

Mark 10:1–12

¹Getting up, He ^{*}went from there to the region of Judea and beyond the Jordan; crowds ^{*}gathered around Him again, and, according to His custom, He once more *began* to teach them.

²Some Pharisees came up to Jesus, testing Him, and *began* to question Him whether it was lawful for a man to divorce a wife.

³And He answered and said to them, “What did Moses command you?” ⁴They said, “Moses permitted *a man* TO WRITE A CERTIFICATE OF DIVORCE AND SEND *her* AWAY.” ⁵But Jesus said to them, “Because of your hardness of heart he wrote you this commandment.

⁶“But from the beginning of creation, *God* MADE THEM MALE AND FEMALE. ⁷“FOR THIS REASON A MAN SHALL LEAVE HIS FATHER AND MOTHER, ⁸AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH; so they are no longer two, but one flesh. ⁹“What therefore God has joined together, let no man separate.”

¹⁰In the house the disciples *began* questioning Him about this again.

¹¹And He ^{*}said to them, “Whoever divorces his wife and marries another woman commits adultery against her; ¹²and if she herself divorces her husband and marries another man, she is committing adultery.”

L. Instruction on Entrance into the Kingdom, § 126, Matthew 19:13-15; Mark 10:13-16; Luke 18:15-17

Matthew 19:13-15

¹³Then *some* children were brought to Him so that He might lay His hands on them and pray; and the disciples rebuked them. ¹⁴But Jesus said, "Let the children alone, and do not hinder them from coming to Me; for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such as these." ¹⁵After laying His hands on them, He departed from there.

Mark 10:13-16

¹³And they were bringing children to Him so that He might touch them; but the disciples rebuked them. ¹⁴But when Jesus saw this, He was indignant and said to them, "Permit the children to come to Me; do not hinder them; for the kingdom of God belongs to such as these. ¹⁵"Truly I say to you, whoever does not receive the kingdom of God like a child will not enter it *at all*." ¹⁶And He took them in His arms and *began* blessing them, laying His hands on them.

Luke 18:15-17

¹⁵And they were bringing even their babies to Him so that He would touch them, but when the disciples saw it, they *began* rebuking them. ¹⁶But Jesus called for them, saying, "Permit the children to come to Me, and do not hinder them, for the kingdom of God belongs to such as these. ¹⁷"Truly I say to you, whoever does not receive the kingdom of God like a child will not enter it *at all*."

M. Instruction on Eternal Life, § 127, Matthew 19:16-20:16; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 18:18-30

The Rich Young Ruler

Matthew 19:16-30

¹⁶And someone came to Him and said, "Teacher, what good thing shall I do that I may obtain eternal life?"

¹⁷And He said to him, "Why are you asking Me about what is good? There is *only* One who is good;

but if you wish to enter into life, keep the commandments." ¹⁸Then he **said* to Him, "Which ones?"

And Jesus said, "YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT MURDER; YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTERY; YOU SHALL NOT STEAL; YOU SHALL NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS; ¹⁹HONOR YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER; and YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR AS YOURSELF."

Mark 10:17-22

¹⁷As He was setting out on a journey, a man ran up to Him and knelt before Him, and asked Him, "Good Teacher, what shall I do to inherit eternal life?"

¹⁸And Jesus said to him, "Why do you call Me good? No one is good except God alone.

¹⁹"You know the commandments, 'DO NOT MURDER, DO NOT COMMIT ADULTERY, DO NOT STEAL, DO NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS, Do not defraud, HONOR YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER.' "

Luke 18:18-23

¹⁸A ruler questioned Him, saying, "Good Teacher, what shall I do to inherit eternal life?"

¹⁹And Jesus said to him, "Why do you call Me good? No one is good except God alone.

²⁰"You know the commandments, 'DO NOT COMMIT ADULTERY, DO NOT MURDER, DO NOT STEAL, DO NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS, HONOR YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER.' "

[Matthew 19:16–22 \(continued\)](#)

²⁰The young man *said to Him, “All these things I have kept; what am I still lacking?”

²¹Jesus said to him, “If you wish to be complete, go *and* sell your possessions and give to *the* poor, and you will have treasure in heaven; and come, follow Me.”

²²But when the young man heard this statement, he went away grieving; for he was one who owned much property.

[Mark 10:17–22 \(continued\)](#)

²⁰And he said to Him, “Teacher, I have kept all these things from my youth up.”

²¹Looking at him, Jesus felt a love for him and said to him, “One thing you lack: go and sell all you possess and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven; and come, follow Me.”

²²But at these words he was saddened, and he went away grieving, for he was one who owned much property.

[Luke 18:18–23 \(continued\)](#)

²¹And he said, “All these things I have kept from *my* youth.”

²²When Jesus heard *this*, He said to him, “One thing you still lack; sell all that you possess and distribute it to the poor, and you shall have treasure in heaven; and come, follow Me.”

²³But when he had heard these things, he became very sad, for he was extremely rich.

How hard it is[Matthew 19:23–26](#)

²³And Jesus said to His disciples, “Truly I say to you, it is hard for a rich man to enter the kingdom of heaven.

²⁴“Again I say to you, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”

²⁵When the disciples heard *this*, they were very astonished and said, “Then who can be saved?”

²⁶And looking at *them* Jesus said to them, “With people this is impossible, but with God all things are possible.”

[Mark 10:23–27](#)

²³And Jesus, looking around, *said to His disciples, “How hard it will be for those who are wealthy to enter the kingdom of God!”
²⁴The disciples were amazed at His words.

^{24b}But Jesus *answered again and *said to them, “Children, how hard it is to enter the kingdom of God! ²⁵“It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”

²⁶They were even more astonished and said to Him, “Then who can be saved?”

²⁷Looking at them, Jesus *said, “With people it is impossible, but not with God; for all things are possible with God.”

[Luke 18:24–27](#)

²⁴And Jesus looked at him and said, “How hard it is for those who are wealthy to enter the kingdom of God!

²⁵“For it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”

²⁶They who heard it said, “Then who can be saved?”

²⁷But He said, “The things that are impossible with people are possible with God.”

Peter's Question about Rewards[Matthew 19:27–30](#)

²⁷Then Peter said to Him, “Behold, we have left everything and followed You; what then will there be for us?”

²⁸And Jesus said to them, “Truly I say to you, that you who have followed Me, in the regeneration when the Son of Man will sit on His glorious throne, you also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

²⁹“And everyone who has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or farms for My name’s sake, will receive many times as much, and will inherit eternal life.

[Mark 10:28–31](#)

²⁸Peter began to say to Him, “Behold, we have left everything and followed You.”

²⁹Jesus said, “Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or brothers or sisters or mother or father or children or farms, for My sake and for the gospel’s sake, ³⁰but that he will receive a hundred times as much now in the present age, houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and farms, along with persecutions; and in the age to come, eternal life.

[Luke 18:28–30](#)

²⁸Peter said, “Behold, we have left our own *homes* and followed You.”

²⁹And He said to them, “Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or wife or brothers or parents or children, for the sake of the kingdom of God, ³⁰who will not receive many times as much at this time and in the age to come, eternal life.”

The last shall be first, and the first last

³⁰“But many *who are* first will be last; and *the* last, first.

³¹“But many *who are* first will be last, and the last, first.”

[Matthew 20:1–16](#)

^{20:1}“For the kingdom of heaven is like a landowner who went out early in the morning to hire laborers for his vineyard. ²“When he had agreed with the laborers for a denarius for the day, he sent them into his vineyard. ³“And he went out about the third hour and saw others standing idle in the market place; ⁴and to those he said, ‘You also go into the vineyard, and whatever is right I will give you.’ And so they went. ⁵“Again he went out about the sixth and the ninth hour, and did the same thing. ⁶“And about the eleventh *hour* he went out and found others standing *around*; and he ^{*}said to them, ‘Why have you been standing here idle all day long?’ ⁷“They ^{*}said to him, ‘Because no one hired us.’ He ^{*}said to them, ‘You go into the vineyard too.’ ⁸“When evening came, the owner of the vineyard ^{*}said to his foreman, ‘Call the laborers and pay them their wages, beginning with the last *group* to the first.’ ⁹“When those *hired* about the eleventh hour came, each one received a denarius. ¹⁰“When those *hired* first came, they thought that they would receive more; but each of them also received a denarius. ¹¹“When they received it, they grumbled at the landowner, ¹²saying, ‘These last men have worked *only* one hour, and you have made them equal to us who have borne the burden and the scorching heat of the day.’ ¹³“But he answered and said to one of them, ‘Friend, I am doing you no wrong; did you not agree with me for a denarius?’ ¹⁴“Take what is yours and go, but I wish to give to this last man the same as to you. ¹⁵‘Is it not lawful for me to do what I wish with what is my own? Or is your eye envious because I am generous?’ ¹⁶“So the last shall be first, and the first last.”

N. Instruction Concerning His Death, § 128, Matthew 20:17–28; Mark 10:32–45; Luke 18:31–34

Matthew 20:17–28

^{17a} As Jesus was about to go up to Jerusalem,

^{17b} He took the twelve *disciples* aside by themselves, and on the way He said to them,

¹⁸ “Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem;

^{18b} and the Son of Man will be delivered to the chief priests and scribes, and they will condemn Him to death,

¹⁹ and will hand Him over to the Gentiles to mock and scourge and crucify *Him*, and on the third day He will be raised up.”

Mark 10:32–45

^{32a} They were on the road going up to Jerusalem, and Jesus was walking on ahead of them; and they were amazed, and those who followed were fearful.

^{32b} And again He took the twelve aside and began to tell them what was going to happen to Him, ³³saying,

^{33a} “Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem,

^{33b} and the Son of Man will be delivered to the chief priests and the scribes; and they will condemn Him to death

^{33c} and will hand Him over to the Gentiles. ³⁴“They will mock Him and spit on Him, and scourge Him and kill *Him*, and three days later He will rise again.”

Luke 18:31–34

^{31a} Then He took the twelve aside and said to them,

^{31b} “Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem,

^{31c} and all things which are written through the prophets about the Son of Man will be accomplished.

³² “For He will be handed over to the Gentiles, and will be mocked and mistreated and spit upon, ³³and after they have scourged Him, they will kill Him; and the third day He will rise again.”

³⁴ But the disciples understood none of these things, and *the meaning of* this statement was hidden from them, and they did not comprehend the things that were said.

[Matthew 20:20-28](#)

²⁰Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee came to Jesus with her sons, bowing down and making a request of Him. ²¹And He said to her, "What do you wish?" She ^{*}said to Him, "Command that in Your kingdom these two sons of mine may sit one on Your right and one on Your left."

²²But Jesus answered, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I am about to drink?" They ^{*}said to Him, "We are able." ²³He ^{*}said to them, "My cup you shall drink;

^{23b}but to sit on My right and on My left, this is not Mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by My Father."

²⁴And hearing *this*, the ten became indignant with the two brothers. ²⁵But Jesus called them to Himself and said, "You know that the rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and *their* great men exercise authority over them. ²⁶"It is not this way among you, but whoever wishes to become great among you shall be your servant, ²⁷and whoever wishes to be first among you shall be your slave; ²⁸just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many."

[Mark 10:35-45](#)

³⁵James and John, the two sons of Zebedee, ^{*}came up to Jesus, saying, "Teacher, we want You to do for us whatever we ask of You." ³⁶And He said to them, "What do you want Me to do for you?" ³⁷They said to Him, "Grant that we may sit, one on Your right and one on *Your* left, in Your glory."

³⁸But Jesus said to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I drink, or to be baptized with the baptism with which I am baptized?" ³⁹They said to Him, "We are able." And Jesus said to them, "The cup that I drink you shall drink; and you shall be baptized with the baptism with which I am baptized.

⁴⁰"But to sit on My right or on My left, this is not Mine to give; but it is for those for whom it has been prepared."

⁴¹Hearing *this*, the ten began to feel indignant with James and John. ⁴²Calling them to Himself, Jesus ^{*}said to them, "You know that those who are recognized as rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them; and their great men exercise authority over them. ⁴³"But it is not this way among you, but whoever wishes to become great among you shall be your servant; ⁴⁴and whoever wishes to be first among you shall be slave of all. ⁴⁵"For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many."

O. The Healing of the Blind Men, § 129, Matthew 20:29–34; Mark 10:46–52; Luke 18:35–43

Matthew 20:29–34

²⁹As they were leaving Jericho, a large crowd followed Him.

³⁰And two blind men sitting by the road, hearing that Jesus was passing by, cried out, “Lord, have mercy on us, Son of David!”

³¹The crowd sternly told them to be quiet, but they cried out all the more, “Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us!”

³²And Jesus stopped and called them,

and said, “What do you want Me to do for you?”

³³They *said to Him, “Lord, *we want* our eyes to be opened.”

³⁴Moved with compassion, Jesus touched their eyes; and immediately they regained their sight and followed Him.

Mark 10:46–52

^{46a}Then they *came to Jericho. And as He was leaving Jericho with His disciples and a large crowd,

^{46b}a blind beggar *named* Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus, was sitting by the road. ⁴⁷When he heard that it was Jesus the Nazarene, he began to cry out and say, “Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!”

⁴⁸Many were sternly telling him to be quiet, but he kept crying out all the more, “Son of David, have mercy on me!”

⁴⁹And Jesus stopped and said, “Call him *here*.” So they *called the blind man, saying to him, “Take courage, stand up! He is calling for you.”

⁵⁰Throwing aside his cloak, he jumped up and came to Jesus.

⁵¹And answering him, Jesus said, “What do you want Me to do for you?” And the blind man said to Him, “Rabboni, *I want* to regain my sight!”

⁵²And Jesus said to him, “Go; your faith has made you well.” Immediately he regained his sight and *began* following Him on the road.

Luke 18:35–43

^{35a}As Jesus was approaching Jericho,

^{35b}a blind man was sitting by the road begging. ³⁶Now hearing a crowd going by, he *began* to inquire what this was. ³⁷They told him that Jesus of Nazareth was passing by. ³⁸And he called out, saying, “Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!”

³⁹Those who led the way were sternly telling him to be quiet; but he kept crying out all the more, “Son of David, have mercy on me!”

^{40a}And Jesus stopped and commanded that he be brought to Him;

^{40b}and when he came near, He questioned him, ⁴¹“What do you want Me to do for you?” And he said, “Lord, *I want* to regain my sight!”

⁴²And Jesus said to him, “Receive your sight; your faith has made you well.”

⁴³Immediately he regained his sight and *began* following Him, glorifying God; and when all the people saw it, they gave praise to God.

P. Instruction Concerning the Kingdom Program, § 130, Luke 19:1-28

1. Personal Faith, Luke 19:1-10

[Luke 19:1-10](#)

¹He entered Jericho and was passing through. ²And there was a man called by the name of Zaccheus; he was a chief tax collector and he was rich. ³Zaccheus was trying to see who Jesus was, and was unable because of the crowd, for he was small in stature. ⁴So he ran on ahead and climbed up into a sycamore tree in order to see Him, for He was about to pass through that way. ⁵When Jesus came to the place, He looked up and said to him, "Zaccheus, hurry and come down, for today I must stay at your house." ⁶And he hurried and came down and received Him gladly. ⁷When they saw it, they all *began* to grumble, saying, "He has gone to be the guest of a man who is a sinner." ⁸Zaccheus stopped and said to the Lord, "Behold, Lord, half of my possessions I will give to the poor, and if I have defrauded anyone of anything, I will give back four times as much."

⁹And Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he, too, is a son of Abraham. ¹⁰"For the Son of Man has come to seek and to save that which was lost."

2. Postponed Kingdom, Luke 19:11-28

[Luke 19:11-28](#)

¹¹While they were listening to these things, Jesus went on to tell a parable, because He was near Jerusalem, and they supposed that the kingdom of God was going to appear immediately.

¹²So He said, "A nobleman went to a distant country to receive a kingdom for himself, and *then* return. ¹³"And he called ten of his slaves, and gave them ten minas and said to them, 'Do business *with this* until I come *back*.' ¹⁴"But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We do not want this man to reign over us.'

¹⁵"When he returned, after receiving the kingdom, he ordered that these slaves, to whom he had given the money, be called to him so that he might know what business they had done.

¹⁶"The first appeared, saying, 'Master, your mina has made ten minas more.' ¹⁷"And he said to him, 'Well done, good slave, because you have been faithful in a very little thing, you are to be in authority over ten cities.' ¹⁸"The second came, saying, 'Your mina, master, has made five minas.' ¹⁹"And he said to him also, 'And you are to be over five cities.'

²⁰"Another came, saying, 'Master, here is your mina, which I kept put away in a handkerchief; ²¹for I was afraid of you, because you are an exacting man; you take up what you did not lay down and reap what you did not sow.' ²²"He ^{*}said to him, 'By your own words I will judge you, you worthless slave. Did you know that I am an exacting man, taking up what I did not lay down and reaping what I did not sow? ²³'Then why did you not put my money in the bank, and having come, I would have collected it with interest?' ²⁴"Then he said to the bystanders, 'Take the mina away from him and give it to the one who has the ten minas.' ²⁵"And they said to him, 'Master, he has ten minas *already*.' ²⁶"I tell you that to everyone who has, more shall be given, but from the one who does not have, even what he does have shall be taken away.

²⁷"But these enemies of mine, who did not want me to reign over them, bring them here and slay them in my presence."

²⁸After He had said these things, He was going on ahead, going up to Jerusalem.

VII THE OFFICIAL PRESENTATION OF THE KING, § 131-143

A. The Arrival in Bethany, § 131, John 11:55–12:1, 12:9–11

[John 11:55–12:1, 12:9–11](#)

⁵⁵Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover to purify themselves. ⁵⁶So they were seeking for Jesus, and were saying to one another as they stood in the temple, “What do you think; that He will not come to the feast at all?”

⁵⁷Now the chief priests and the Pharisees had given orders that if anyone knew where He was, he was to report it, so that they might seize Him.

^{12:1}Jesus, therefore, six days before the Passover, came to Bethany where Lazarus was, whom Jesus had raised from the dead.

⁹The large crowd of the Jews then learned that He was there; and they came, not for Jesus’ sake only, but that they might also see Lazarus, whom He raised from the dead. ¹⁰But the chief priests planned to put Lazarus to death also; ¹¹because on account of him many of the Jews were going away and were believing in Jesus.

B. The Triumphal Entry, § 132, Matthew 21:1-11, 14-17; Mark 11:1-11; Luke 19:29-44; John 12:12-19

Matthew 21:1-5

¹When they had approached Jerusalem and had come to Bethphage, at the Mount of Olives,

then Jesus sent two disciples, ²saying to them, “Go into the village opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied *there* and a colt with her; untie them and bring them to Me. ³“If anyone says anything to you, you shall say, ‘The Lord has need of them,’ and immediately he will send them.”

⁴This took place to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet: ⁵“Say to the daughter of Zion, ‘Behold your King is coming to you, Gentle, and mounted on a donkey, Even on a colt, the foal of a beast of burden.’”

Mark 11:1-6

¹As they *approached Jerusalem, at Bethphage and Bethany, near the Mount of Olives,

He *sent two of His disciples, ²and *said to them, “Go into the village opposite you, and immediately as you enter it, you will find a colt tied *there*, on which no one yet has ever sat; untie it and bring it *here*. ³“If anyone says to you, ‘Why are you doing this?’ you say, ‘The Lord has need of it’; and immediately he will send it back here.”

⁴They went away and found a colt tied at the door, outside in the street; and they *untied it. ⁵Some of the bystanders were saying to them, “What are you doing, untying the colt?” ⁶They spoke to them just as Jesus had told *them*, and they gave them permission.

Luke 19:29-34

²⁹When He approached Bethphage and Bethany, near the mount that is called Olivet,

He sent two of the disciples, ³⁰saying, “Go into the village ahead of *you*; there, as you enter, you will find a colt tied on which no one yet has ever sat; untie it and bring it *here*. ³¹“If anyone asks you, ‘Why are you untying it?’ you shall say, ‘The Lord has need of it.’”

³²So those who were sent went away and found it just as He had told them. ³³As they were untying the colt, its owners said to them, “Why are you untying the colt?” ³⁴They said, “The Lord has need of it.”

John 12:14-15

¹⁴Jesus, finding a young donkey, sat on it; as it is written, ¹⁵“FEAR NOT, DAUGHTER OF ZION; BEHOLD, YOUR KING IS COMING, SEATED ON A DONKEY’S COLT.”

[Matthew 21:6–9](#)

⁶The disciples went and did just as Jesus had instructed them, ⁷and brought the donkey and the colt, and laid their coats on them; and He sat on the coats.

⁸Most of the crowd spread their coats in the road, and others were cutting branches from the trees and spreading them in the road.

⁹The crowds going ahead of Him, and those who followed, were shouting, “Hosanna to the Son of David; BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD; Hosanna in the highest!”

[Mark 11:7–11](#)

⁷They *brought the colt to Jesus and put their coats on it; and He sat on it.

⁸And many spread their coats in the road, and others *spread* leafy branches which they had cut from the fields.

⁹Those who went in front and those who followed were shouting: “Hosanna! BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD; ¹⁰Blessed *is* the coming kingdom of our father David; Hosanna in the highest!”

[Luke 19:35–38](#)

³⁵They brought it to Jesus, and they threw their coats on the colt and put Jesus *on it*.

³⁶As He was going, they were spreading their coats on the road.

³⁷As soon as He was approaching, near the descent of the Mount of Olives, the whole crowd of the disciples began to praise God joyfully with a loud voice for all the miracles which they had seen, ³⁸shouting: “BLESSED IS THE KING WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD; Peace in heaven and glory in the highest!”

[John 12:12–13, 16](#)

¹²On the next day the large crowd who had come to the feast, when they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem, ¹³took the branches of the palm trees and went out to meet Him,

and *began* to shout, “Hosanna! BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD, even the King of Israel.”

¹⁶These things His disciples did not understand at the first; but when Jesus was glorified, then they remembered that these things were written of Him, and that they had done these things to Him.

[Luke 19:39–44](#)

³⁹Some of the Pharisees in the crowd said to Him, “Teacher, rebuke Your disciples.” ⁴⁰But Jesus answered, “I tell you, if these become silent, the stones will cry out!”

⁴¹When He approached *Jerusalem*, He saw the city and wept over it, ⁴²saying, “If you had known in this day, even you, the things which make for peace! But now they have been hidden from your eyes. ⁴³“For the days will come upon you when your enemies will throw up a barricade against you, and surround you and hem you in on every side, ⁴⁴and they will level you to the ground and your children within you, and they will not leave in you one stone upon another, because you did not recognize the time of your visitation.”

[Matthew 21:10a](#)

^{10a}When He had entered Jerusalem,

[Mark 11:11a](#)

^{11a}Jesus entered Jerusalem *and came* into the temple;

[Matthew 21:10b–14](#)

^{10b}all the city was stirred, saying, “Who is this?” ¹¹And the crowds were saying, “This is the prophet Jesus, from Nazareth in Galilee.”

¹⁴And *the blind and the lame* came to Him in the temple, and He healed them.

[John 12:17–18](#)

¹⁷So the people, who were with Him when He called Lazarus out of the tomb and raised him from the dead, continued to testify *about Him*. ¹⁸For this reason also the people went and met Him, because they heard that He had performed this sign.

[Matthew 21:15–16](#)

¹⁵But when the chief priests and the scribes saw the wonderful things that He had done, and the children who were shouting in the temple, “Hosanna to the Son of David,” they became indignant ¹⁶and said to Him, “Do You hear what these *children* are saying?” And Jesus *said to them, “Yes; have you never read, ‘OUT OF THE MOUTH OF INFANTS AND NURSING BABIES YOU HAVE PREPARED PRAISE FOR YOURSELF’?”

[John 12:19](#)

¹⁹So the Pharisees said to one another, “You see that you are not doing any good; look, the world has gone after Him.”

[Matthew 21:17](#)

¹⁷And He left them and went out of the city to Bethany, and spent the night there.

[Mark 11:11b](#)

^{11b}and after looking around at everything, He left for Bethany with the twelve, since it was already late.

C. The Authority of the King,

§ 133–134, Matthew 21:18–19a, 12–13; Mark 11:12–18; Luke 19:45–48

1. The Cursing of the Fig Tree,

§ 133, Matthew 21:18–19a; Mark 11:12–14

Matthew 21:18–19a

¹⁸Now in the morning, when He was returning to the city, He became hungry. ¹⁹Seeing a lone fig tree by the road, He came to it and found nothing on it except leaves only; and He *said to it, “No longer shall there ever be *any* fruit from you.”

Mark 11:12–14

¹²On the next day, when they had left Bethany, He became hungry. ¹³Seeing at a distance a fig tree in leaf, He went *to see* if perhaps He would find anything on it; and when He came to it, He found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs. ¹⁴He said to it, “May no one ever eat fruit from you again!” And His disciples were listening.

2. Possession of the Temple,

§ 134, Matthew 21:12–13; Mark 11:15–18; Luke 19:45–48

Matthew 21:12–13

¹²And Jesus entered the temple and drove out all those who were buying and selling in the temple, and overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who were selling doves.

¹³And He *said to them, “It is written, ‘MY HOUSE SHALL BE CALLED A HOUSE OF PRAYER’; but you are making it a ROBBERS’ DEN.”

Mark 11:15–18

¹⁵Then they *came to Jerusalem. And He entered the temple and began to drive out those who were buying and selling in the temple, and overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who were selling doves; ¹⁶and He would not permit anyone to carry merchandise through the temple.

¹⁷And He *began* to teach and say to them, “Is it not written, ‘MY HOUSE SHALL BE CALLED A HOUSE OF PRAYER FOR ALL THE NATIONS’? But you have made it a ROBBERS’ DEN.”

¹⁸The chief priests and the scribes heard *this*, and *began* seeking how to destroy Him; for they were afraid of Him, for the whole crowd was astonished at His teaching.

Luke 19:45–48

⁴⁵Jesus entered the temple and began to drive out those who were selling,

⁴⁶saying to them, “It is written, ‘AND MY HOUSE SHALL BE A HOUSE OF PRAYER,’ but you have made it a ROBBERS’ DEN.” ⁴⁷And He was teaching daily in the temple;

but the chief priests and the scribes and the leading men among the people were trying to destroy Him, ⁴⁸and they could not find anything that they might do, for all the people were hanging on to every word He said.

D. The Invitations by the King, § 135, John 12:20-50

1. The Invitation, John 12:20-36

John 12:20-36

²⁰Now there were some Greeks among those who were going up to worship at the feast; ²¹these then came to Philip, who was from Bethsaida of Galilee, and *began to* ask him, saying, "Sir, we wish to see Jesus." ²²Philip *came and *told Andrew; Andrew and Philip *came and *told Jesus.

²³And Jesus *answered them, saying, "The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified. ²⁴"Truly, truly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains alone; but if it dies, it bears much fruit. ²⁵"He who loves his life loses it, and he who hates his life in this world will keep it to life eternal. ²⁶"If anyone serves Me, he must follow Me; and where I am, there My servant will be also; if anyone serves Me, the Father will honor him.

²⁷"Now My soul has become troubled; and what shall I say, 'Father, save Me from this hour'? But for this purpose I came to this hour. ²⁸"Father, glorify Your name." Then a voice came out of heaven: "I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again." ²⁹So the crowd *of people* who stood by and heard it were saying that it had thundered; others were saying, "An angel has spoken to Him." ³⁰Jesus answered and said, "This voice has not come for My sake, but for your sakes.

³¹"Now judgment is upon this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out. ³²"And I, if I am lifted up from the earth, will draw all men to Myself." ³³But He was saying this to indicate the kind of death by which He was to die.

³⁴The crowd then answered Him, "We have heard out of the Law that the Christ is to remain forever; and how can You say, 'The Son of Man must be lifted up'? Who is this Son of Man?" ³⁵So Jesus said to them, "For a little while longer the Light is among you. Walk while you have the Light, so that darkness will not overtake you; he who walks in the darkness does not know where he goes. ³⁶"While you have the Light, believe in the Light, so that you may become sons of Light."

These things Jesus spoke, and He went away and hid Himself from them.

2. John's Summary of Messiah's Ministry, John 12:37-50

a. Summary of Israel, John 12:37-43

John 12:37-43

³⁷But though He had performed so many signs before them, *yet* they were not believing in Him. ³⁸*This was* to fulfill the word of Isaiah the prophet which he spoke: "LORD, WHO HAS BELIEVED OUR REPORT? AND TO WHOM HAS THE ARM OF THE LORD BEEN REVEALED?" ³⁹For this reason they could not believe, for Isaiah said again, ⁴⁰"HE HAS BLINDED THEIR EYES AND HE HARDENED THEIR HEART, SO THAT THEY WOULD NOT SEE WITH THEIR EYES AND PERCEIVE WITH THEIR HEART, AND BE CONVERTED AND I HEAL THEM." ⁴¹These things Isaiah said because he saw His glory, and he spoke of Him.

⁴²Nevertheless many even of the rulers believed in Him, but because of the Pharisees they were not confessing *Him*, for fear that they would be put out of the synagogue; ⁴³for they loved the approval of men rather than the approval of God.

b. Summary of Jesus, John 12:44-50

[John 12:44–50](#)

⁴⁴And Jesus cried out and said, “He who believes in Me, does not believe in Me but in Him who sent Me. ⁴⁵“He who sees Me sees the One who sent Me.

⁴⁶“I have come as Light into the world, so that everyone who believes in Me will not remain in darkness.

⁴⁷“If anyone hears My sayings and does not keep them, I do not judge him; for I did not come to judge the world, but to save the world. ⁴⁸“He who rejects Me and does not receive My sayings, has one who judges him; the word I spoke is what will judge him at the last day.

⁴⁹“For I did not speak on My own initiative, but the Father Himself who sent Me has given Me a commandment as to what to say and what to speak. ⁵⁰“I know that His commandment is eternal life; therefore the things I speak, I speak just as the Father has told Me.”

E. The Proof of Authority, § 136, Matthew 21:19b–22; Mark 11:19–25

[Mark 11:19](#)

¹⁹When evening came, they would go out of the city.

[Matthew 21:19b–22](#)

^{19b}And at once the fig tree withered. ²⁰Seeing *this*, the disciples were amazed and asked, “How did the fig tree wither *all* at once?”

²¹And Jesus answered and said to them, “Truly I say to you, if you have faith and do not doubt, you will not only do what was done to the fig tree, but even if you say to this mountain, ‘Be taken up and cast into the sea,’ it will happen. ²²“And all things you ask in prayer, believing, you will receive.”

[Mark 11:20–25](#)

²⁰As they were passing by in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered from the roots *up*. ²¹Being reminded, Peter *said to Him, “Rabbi, look, the fig tree which You cursed has withered.”

²²And Jesus *answered saying to them, “Have faith in God. ²³“Truly I say to you, whoever says to this mountain, ‘Be taken up and cast into the sea,’ and does not doubt in his heart, but believes that what he says is going to happen, it will be *granted* him. ²⁴“Therefore I say to you, all things for which you pray and ask, believe that you have received them, and they will be *granted* you.

²⁵“Whenever you stand praying, forgive, if you have anything against anyone, so that your Father who is in heaven will also forgive you your transgressions.

F. The Authority of the King Challenged: The Testing of the Lamb, § 137, -140

1. By Priests and Elders,

§ 137, Matthew 21:23-22:14; Mark 11:27-12:12; Luke 20:1-19

a. The Attack, Matthew 21:23; Mark 11:27-28; Luke 20:1-2

Matthew 21:23

²³When He entered the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came to Him while He was teaching, and said, “By what authority are You doing these things, and who gave You this authority?”

Mark 11:27-28

²⁷They *came again to Jerusalem. And as He was walking in the temple, the chief priests and the scribes and the elders *came to Him, ²⁸and *began* saying to Him, “By what authority are You doing these things, or who gave You this authority to do these things?”

Luke 20:1-2

¹On one of the days while He was teaching the people in the temple and preaching the gospel, the chief priests and the scribes with the elders confronted *Him*, ²and they spoke, saying to Him, “Tell us by what authority You are doing these things, or who is the one who gave You this authority?”

b. The Answer, Matthew 21:24-27; Mark 11:29-33; Luke 20:3-8

Matthew 21: 24-27

²⁴Jesus said to them, “I will also ask you one thing, which if you tell Me, I will also tell you by what authority I do these things. ²⁵“The baptism of John was from what *source*, from heaven or from men?”

Mark 11: 29-33

²⁹And Jesus said to them, “I will ask you one question, and you answer Me, and *then* I will tell you by what authority I do these things. ³⁰“Was the baptism of John from heaven, or from men? Answer Me.”

Luke 20: 3-8

³Jesus answered and said to them, “I will also ask you a question, and you tell Me: ⁴“Was the baptism of John from heaven or from men?”

And they *began* reasoning among themselves, saying, “If we say, ‘From heaven,’ He will say to us, ‘Then why did you not believe him?’ ²⁶“But if we say, ‘From men,’ we fear the people; for they all regard John as a prophet.” ²⁷And answering Jesus, they said, “We do not know.”

³¹They *began* reasoning among themselves, saying, “If we say, ‘From heaven,’ He will say, ‘Then why did you not believe him?’ ³²“But shall we say, ‘From men?’”—they were afraid of the people, for everyone considered John to have been a real prophet. ³³Answering Jesus, they *said, “We do not know.”

⁵They reasoned among themselves, saying, “If we say, ‘From heaven,’ He will say, ‘Why did you not believe him?’ ⁶“But if we say, ‘From men,’ all the people will stone us to death, for they are convinced that John was a prophet.” ⁷So they answered that they did not know where *it came* from.

He also said to them, “Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things.

And Jesus *said to them, “Nor will I tell you by what authority I do these things.”

⁸And Jesus said to them, “Nor will I tell you by what authority I do these things.”

(1) The Parable of the Two Sons, Matthew 21:28–32

[Matthew 21:28–32](#)

²⁸“But what do you think? A man had two sons, and he came to the first and said, ‘Son, go work today in the vineyard.’ ²⁹“And he answered, ‘I will not’; but afterward he regretted it and went. ³⁰“The man came to the second and said the same thing; and he answered, ‘I will, sir’; but he did not go. ³¹“Which of the two did the will of his father?” They *said, “The first.”

Jesus *said to them, “Truly I say to you that the tax collectors and prostitutes will get into the kingdom of God before you. ³²“For John came to you in the way of righteousness and you did not believe him; but the tax collectors and prostitutes did believe him; and you, seeing *this*, did not even feel remorse afterward so as to believe him.

(2) The Parable of the Landowner, Matthew 21:33–46; Mark 12:1–12; Luke 20:9–19

[Matthew 21:33–39](#)

³³“Listen to another parable. There was a landowner who PLANTED A VINEYARD AND PUT A WALL AROUND IT AND DUG A WINE PRESS IN IT, AND BUILT A TOWER, and rented it out to vine-growers and went on a journey.

³⁴“When the harvest time approached, he sent his slaves to the vine-growers to receive his produce. ³⁵“The vine-growers took his slaves and beat one, and killed another, and stoned a third. ³⁶“Again he sent another group of slaves larger than the first; and they did the same thing to them.

³⁷“But afterward he sent his son to them, saying, ‘They will respect my son.’ ³⁸“But when the vine-growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir; come, let us kill him and seize his inheritance.’ ³⁹“They took him, and threw him out of the vineyard and killed him.

[Mark 12:1–8](#)

¹And He began to speak to them in parables: “A man PLANTED A VINEYARD AND PUT A WALL AROUND IT, AND DUG A VAT UNDER THE WINE PRESS AND BUILT A TOWER, and rented it out to vine-growers and went on a journey.

²“At the *harvest* time he sent a slave to the vine-growers, in order to receive *some* of the produce of the vineyard from the vine-growers. ³“They took him, and beat him and sent him away empty-handed. ⁴“Again he sent them another slave, and they wounded him in the head, and treated him shamefully. ⁵“And he sent another, and that one they killed; and *so with* many others, beating some and killing others.

⁶“He had one more *to send*, a beloved son; he sent him last *of all* to them, saying, ‘They will respect my son.’ ⁷“But those vine-growers said to one another, ‘This is the heir; come, let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours!’ ⁸“They took him, and killed him and threw him out of the vineyard.

[Luke 20:9–15a](#)

⁹And He began to tell the people this parable: “A man planted a vineyard and rented it out to vine-growers, and went on a journey for a long time.

¹⁰“At the *harvest* time he sent a slave to the vine-growers, so that they would give him *some* of the produce of the vineyard; but the vine-growers beat him and sent him away empty-handed. ¹¹“And he proceeded to send another slave; and they beat him also and treated him shamefully and sent him away empty-handed. ¹²“And he proceeded to send a third; and this one also they wounded and cast out.

¹³“The owner of the vineyard said, ‘What shall I do? I will send my beloved son; perhaps they will respect him.’ ¹⁴“But when the vine-growers saw him, they reasoned with one another, saying, ‘This is the heir; let us kill him so that the inheritance will be ours.’ ¹⁵“So they threw him out of the vineyard and killed him.

[Matthew 21:40–46](#)

⁴⁰“Therefore when the owner of the vineyard comes, what will he do to those vine-growers?” ⁴¹They *said to Him, “He will bring those wretches to a wretched end, and will rent out the vineyard to other vine-growers who will pay him the proceeds at the *proper* seasons.”

⁴²Jesus *said to them, “Did you never read in the Scriptures, ‘THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE CHIEF CORNER *stone*; THIS CAME ABOUT FROM THE LORD, AND IT IS MARVELOUS IN OUR EYES’?”

⁴³“Therefore I say to you, the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and given to a people, producing the fruit of it.

⁴⁴“And he who falls on this stone will be broken to pieces; but on whomever it falls, it will scatter him like dust.”

⁴⁵When the chief priests and the Pharisees heard His parables, they understood that He was speaking about them. ⁴⁶When they sought to seize Him, they feared the people, because they considered Him to be a prophet.

[Mark 12:9–12](#)

⁹“What will the owner of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the vine-growers, and will give the vineyard to others.

¹⁰“Have you not even read this Scripture: ‘THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE CHIEF CORNER *stone*; ¹¹THIS CAME ABOUT FROM THE LORD, AND IT IS MARVELOUS IN OUR EYES’?”

¹²And they were seeking to seize Him, and yet they feared the people, for they understood that He spoke the parable against them. And so they left Him and went away.

[Luke 20:15b–19](#)

What, then, will the owner of the vineyard do to them? ¹⁶“He will come and destroy these vine-growers and will give the vineyard to others.” When they heard it, they said, “May it never be!”

¹⁷But Jesus looked at them and said, “What then is this that is written: ‘THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE CHIEF CORNER *stone*’?”

¹⁸“Everyone who falls on that stone will be broken to pieces; but on whomever it falls, it will scatter him like dust.”

¹⁹The scribes and the chief priests tried to lay hands on Him that very hour, and they feared the people; for they understood that He spoke this parable against them.

(3) The Parable of the Wedding Feast, Matthew 22:1-14

[Matthew 22:1-14](#)

¹Jesus spoke to them again in parables, saying, ²“The kingdom of heaven may be compared to a king who gave a wedding feast for his son.

³And he sent out his slaves to call those who had been invited to the wedding feast, and they were unwilling to come. ⁴Again he sent out other slaves saying, ‘Tell those who have been invited, “Behold, I have prepared my dinner; my oxen and my fattened livestock are *all* butchered and everything is ready; come to the wedding feast.”’ ⁵But they paid no attention and went their way, one to his own farm, another to his business, ⁶and the rest seized his slaves and mistreated them and killed them.

⁷But the king was enraged, and he sent his armies and destroyed those murderers and set their city on fire.

⁸Then he ^{*}said to his slaves, ‘The wedding is ready, but those who were invited were not worthy. ⁹Go therefore to the main highways, and as many as you find *there*, invite to the wedding feast.’ ¹⁰Those slaves went out into the streets and gathered together all they found, both evil and good; and the wedding hall was filled with dinner guests.

¹¹“But when the king came in to look over the dinner guests, he saw a man there who was not dressed in wedding clothes, ¹²and he ^{*}said to him, ‘Friend, how did you come in here without wedding clothes?’ And the man was speechless. ¹³Then the king said to the servants, ‘Bind him hand and foot, and throw him into the outer darkness; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.’ ¹⁴For many are called, but few *are* chosen.”

2. By Pharisees and Herodians,

§ 138, Matthew 22:15-22; Mark 12:13-17; Luke 20:20-26

a. The Attack, Matthew 22:15-17; Mark 12:13-15a; Luke 20:20-22

[Matthew 22:15-17](#)

¹⁵Then the Pharisees went and plotted together how they might trap Him in what He said. ¹⁶And they ^{*}sent their disciples to Him, along with the Herodians, saying, “Teacher, we know that You are truthful and teach the way of God in truth, and defer to no one; for You are not partial to any. ¹⁷Tell us then, what do You think? Is it lawful to give a poll-tax to Caesar, or not?”

[Mark 12:13-15a](#)

¹³Then they ^{*}sent some of the Pharisees and Herodians to Him in order to trap Him in a statement. ¹⁴They ^{*}came and ^{*}said to Him, “Teacher, we know that You are truthful and defer to no one; for You are not partial to any, but teach the way of God in truth. Is it lawful to pay a poll-tax to Caesar, or not? ¹⁵Shall we pay or shall we not pay?”

[Luke 20:20-22](#)

²⁰So they watched Him, and sent spies who pretended to be righteous, in order that they might catch Him in some statement, so that they *could* deliver Him to the rule and the authority of the governor. ²¹They questioned Him, saying, “Teacher, we know that You speak and teach correctly, and You are not partial to any, but teach the way of God in truth. ²²Is it lawful for us to pay taxes to Caesar, or not?”

b. The Answer, Matthew 22:18–22; Mark 12:15b–17; Luke 20:23–26

[Matthew 22:18–22](#)

¹⁸But Jesus perceived their malice, and said, “Why are you testing Me, you hypocrites? ¹⁹“Show Me the coin *used* for the poll-tax.” And they brought Him a denarius. ²⁰And He ^{*}said to them, “Whose likeness and inscription is this?” ²¹They ^{*}said to Him, “Caesar’s.” Then He ^{*}said to them, “Then render to Caesar the things that are Caesar’s; and to God the things that are God’s.”

²²And hearing this, they were amazed, and leaving Him, they went away.

[Mark 12:15b–17](#)

^{15b}But He, knowing their hypocrisy, said to them, “Why are you testing Me? Bring Me a denarius to look at.” ¹⁶They brought *one*. And He ^{*}said to them, “Whose likeness and inscription is this?” And they said to Him, “Caesar’s.” ¹⁷And Jesus said to them, “Render to Caesar the things that are Caesar’s, and to God the things that are God’s.”

And they were amazed at Him.

[Luke 20:23–26](#)

²³But He detected their trickery and said to them, ²⁴“Show Me a denarius. Whose likeness and inscription does it have?” They said, “Caesar’s.” ²⁵And He said to them, “Then render to Caesar the things that are Caesar’s, and to God the things that are God’s.”

²⁶And they were unable to catch Him in a saying in the presence of the people; and being amazed at His answer, they became silent.

3. By Sadducees,

§ 139, Matthew 22:23–33; Mark 12:18–27; Luke 20:27–40

a. The Attack, Matthew 22:23–28; Mark 12:18–23; Luke 20:27–33

[Matthew 22:23–28](#)

²³On that day *some* Sadducees (who say there is no resurrection) came to Jesus and questioned Him, ²⁴asking, “Teacher, Moses said, ‘IF A MAN DIES HAVING NO CHILDREN, HIS BROTHER AS NEXT OF KIN SHALL MARRY HIS WIFE, AND RAISE UP CHILDREN FOR HIS BROTHER.’ ²⁵“Now there were seven brothers with us; and the first married and died, and having no children left his wife to his brother; ²⁶so also the second, and the third, down to the seventh. ²⁷“Last of all, the woman died. ²⁸“In the resurrection, therefore, whose wife of the seven will she be? For they all had *married* her.”

[Mark 12:18–23](#)

¹⁸*Some* Sadducees (who say that there is no resurrection) ^{*}came to Jesus, and *began* questioning Him, saying, ¹⁹“Teacher, Moses wrote for us that IF A MAN’S BROTHER DIES and leaves behind a wife AND LEAVES NO CHILD, HIS BROTHER SHOULD MARRY THE WIFE AND RAISE UP CHILDREN TO HIS BROTHER. ²⁰“There were seven brothers; and the first took a wife, and died leaving no children. ²¹“The second one married her, and died leaving behind no children; and the third likewise; ²²and so all seven left no children. Last of all the woman died also. ²³“In the resurrection, when they rise again, which one’s wife will she be? For all seven had *married* her.”

[Luke 20:27–33](#)

²⁷Now there came to Him some of the Sadducees (who say that there is no resurrection), ²⁸and they questioned Him, saying, “Teacher, Moses wrote for us that IF A MAN’S BROTHER DIES, having a wife, AND HE IS CHILDLESS, HIS BROTHER SHOULD MARRY THE WIFE AND RAISE UP CHILDREN TO HIS BROTHER. ²⁹“Now there were seven brothers; and the first took a wife and died childless; ³⁰and the second ³¹and the third married her; and in the same way all seven died, leaving no children. ³²“Finally the woman died also. ³³“In the resurrection therefore, which one’s wife will she be? For all seven had *married* her.”

b. The Answer, Matthew 22:29–33; Mark 12:24–27; Luke 20:34–40

Matthew 22:29–33

²⁹But Jesus answered and said to them, “You are mistaken, not understanding the Scriptures nor the power of God.

³⁰“For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven.

³¹“But regarding the resurrection of the dead, have you not read what was spoken to you by God: ³²I AM THE GOD OF ABRAHAM, AND THE GOD OF ISAAC, AND THE GOD OF JACOB’?

“He is not the God of the dead but of the living.”

³³When the crowds heard *this*, they were astonished at His teaching.

Mark 12:24–27

²⁴Jesus said to them, “Is this not the reason you are mistaken, that you do not understand the Scriptures or the power of God?

²⁵“For when they rise from the dead, they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven.

²⁶“But regarding the fact that the dead rise again, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the *passage* about *the burning* bush, how God spoke to him, saying, ‘I AM THE GOD OF ABRAHAM, AND THE GOD OF ISAAC, and the God of Jacob’?

²⁷“He is not the God of the dead, but of the living; you are greatly mistaken.”

Luke 20:34–40

³⁴Jesus said to them,

“The sons of this age marry and are given in marriage, ³⁵but those who are considered worthy to attain to that age and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry nor are given in marriage; ³⁶for they cannot even die anymore, because they are like angels, and are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection.

³⁷“But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the *passage about the burning* bush, where he calls the Lord THE GOD OF ABRAHAM, AND THE GOD OF ISAAC, AND THE GOD OF JACOB.

³⁸“Now He is not the God of the dead but of the living; for all live to Him.”

³⁹Some of the scribes answered and said, “Teacher, You have spoken well.” ⁴⁰For they did not have courage to question Him any longer about anything.

4. By Pharisees,
§ 140, Matthew 22:34–40; Mark 12:28–34

a. *The Attack, Matthew 22:34–36; Mark 12:28*

[Matthew 22:34–36](#)

³⁴But when the Pharisees heard that Jesus had silenced the Sadducees, they gathered themselves together. ³⁵One of them, a lawyer, asked Him *a question*, testing Him, ³⁶“Teacher, which is the great commandment in the Law?”

[Mark 12:28](#)

²⁸One of the scribes came and heard them arguing, and recognizing that He had answered them well, asked Him, “What commandment is the foremost of all?”

b. *The Answer, Matthew 22:37–40; Mark 12:29–34*

[Matthew 22:37–40](#)

³⁷And He said to him, “You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind.” ³⁸This is the great and foremost commandment. ³⁹The second is like it, ‘You shall love your neighbor as yourself.’ ⁴⁰On these two commandments depend the whole Law and the Prophets.”

[Mark 12:29–34](#)

²⁹Jesus answered, “The foremost is, ‘HEAR, O ISRAEL! THE LORD OUR GOD IS ONE LORD; ³⁰AND YOU SHALL LOVE THE LORD YOUR GOD WITH ALL YOUR HEART, AND WITH ALL YOUR SOUL, AND WITH ALL YOUR MIND, AND WITH ALL YOUR STRENGTH.’ ³¹The second is this, ‘YOU SHALL LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR AS YOURSELF.’ There is no other commandment greater than these.”

³²The scribe said to Him, “Right, Teacher; You have truly stated that HE IS ONE, AND THERE IS NO ONE ELSE BESIDES HIM; ³³AND TO LOVE HIM WITH ALL THE HEART AND WITH ALL THE UNDERSTANDING AND WITH ALL THE STRENGTH, AND TO LOVE ONE’S NEIGHBOR AS HIMSELF, is much more than all burnt offerings and sacrifices.” ³⁴When Jesus saw that he had answered intelligently, He said to him, “You are not far from the kingdom of God.”

After that, no one would venture to ask Him any more questions.

G. The Challenge by the King, § 141, Matthew 22:41–46; Mark 12:35–37; Luke 20:41–44

Matthew 22:41–42

⁴¹Now while the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them a question:
⁴²“What do you think about the Christ, whose son is He?”
They *said to Him, “*The son of David.*”

Matthew 22:43–46

⁴³He *said to them, “Then how does David in the Spirit call Him ‘Lord,’ saying, ⁴⁴THE LORD SAID TO MY LORD, “SIT AT MY RIGHT HAND, UNTIL I PUT YOUR ENEMIES BENEATH YOUR FEET” ’? ⁴⁵If David then calls Him ‘Lord,’ how is He his son?”

⁴⁶No one was able to answer Him a word, nor did anyone dare from that day on to ask Him another question.

Mark 12:35–37

³⁵And Jesus *began* to say, as He taught in the temple, “How *is it that* the scribes say that the Christ is the son of David? ³⁶David himself said in the Holy Spirit, ‘THE LORD SAID TO MY LORD, “SIT AT MY RIGHT HAND, UNTIL I PUT YOUR ENEMIES BENEATH YOUR FEET.” ’ ³⁷David himself calls Him ‘Lord’; so in what sense is He his son?”

And the large crowd enjoyed listening to Him.

Luke 20:41–44

⁴¹Then He said to them, “How *is it that* they say the Christ is David’s son? ⁴²For David himself says in the book of Psalms, ‘THE LORD SAID TO MY LORD, “SIT AT MY RIGHT HAND, ⁴³UNTIL I MAKE YOUR ENEMIES A FOOTSTOOL FOR YOUR FEET.” ’ ⁴⁴Therefore David calls Him ‘Lord,’ and how is He his son?”

H. The Judgment by the King, § 142, Matthew 23:1–39; Mark 12:38–40; Luke 20:45–47

1. To the Disciples and Multitudes, Matthew 23:1–12; Mark 12:38–40; Luke 20:45–47

Matthew 23:1–12

¹Then Jesus spoke to the crowds and to His disciples, ²saying: “The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the chair of Moses; ³therefore all that they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds; for they say *things* and do not do *them*.

⁴They tie up heavy burdens and lay them on men’s shoulders, but they themselves are unwilling to move them with *so much as* a finger.

⁵But they do all their deeds to be noticed by men; for they broaden their phylacteries and lengthen the tassels *of their garments*. ⁶They love the place of honor at banquets and the chief seats in the synagogues, ⁷and respectful greetings in the market places, and being called Rabbi by men.

⁸But do not be called Rabbi; for One is your Teacher, and you are all brothers. ⁹Do not call *anyone* on earth your father; for One is your Father, He who is in heaven. ¹⁰Do not be called leaders; for One is your Leader, *that is*, Christ. ¹¹But the greatest among you shall be your servant. ¹²Whoever exalts himself shall be humbled; and whoever humbles himself shall be exalted.

Mark 12:38–40

³⁸In His teaching He was saying: “Beware of the scribes

who like to walk around in long robes, and *like* respectful greetings in the market places, ³⁹and chief seats in the synagogues and places of honor at banquets,

⁴⁰who devour widows’ houses, and for appearance’s sake offer long prayers; these will receive greater condemnation.”

Luke 20:45–47

⁴⁵And while all the people were listening, He said to the disciples, ⁴⁶“Beware of the scribes,

who like to walk around in long robes, and love respectful greetings in the market places, and chief seats in the synagogues and places of honor at banquets,

⁴⁷who devour widows’ houses, and for appearance’s sake offer long prayers. These will receive greater condemnation.”

2. To the Pharisees, Matthew 23:13–36

[Matthew 23:13–36](#)

¹³“But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites, because you shut off the kingdom of heaven from people; for you do not enter in yourselves, nor do you allow those who are entering to go in.

¹⁵“Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites, because you travel around on sea and land to make one proselyte; and when he becomes one, you make him twice as much a son of hell as yourselves.

¹⁶“Woe to you, blind guides, who say, ‘Whoever swears by the temple, *that* is nothing; but whoever swears by the gold of the temple is obligated.’ ¹⁷You fools and blind men! Which is more important, the gold or the temple that sanctified the gold? ¹⁸And, ‘Whoever swears by the altar, *that* is nothing, but whoever swears by the offering on it, he is obligated.’ ¹⁹You blind men, which is more important, the offering, or the altar that sanctifies the offering? ²⁰Therefore, whoever swears by the altar, swears *both* by the altar and by everything on it. ²¹And whoever swears by the temple, swears *both* by the temple and by Him who dwells within it. ²²And whoever swears by heaven, swears *both* by the throne of God and by Him who sits upon it.

²³“Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you tithe mint and dill and cummin, and have neglected the weightier provisions of the law: justice and mercy and faithfulness; but these are the things you should have done without neglecting the others. ²⁴You blind guides, who strain out a gnat and swallow a camel!

²⁵“Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you clean the outside of the cup and of the dish, but inside they are full of robbery and self-indulgence. ²⁶You blind Pharisee, first clean the inside of the cup and of the dish, so that the outside of it may become clean also.

²⁷“Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you are like whitewashed tombs which on the outside appear beautiful, but inside they are full of dead men’s bones and all uncleanness. ²⁸So you, too, outwardly appear righteous to men, but inwardly you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness.

²⁹“Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets and adorn the monuments of the righteous, ³⁰and say, ‘If we had been *living* in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partners with them in *shedding* the blood of the prophets.’ ³¹So you testify against yourselves, that you are sons of those who murdered the prophets. ³²Fill up, then, the measure *of the guilt* of your fathers. ³³You serpents, you brood of vipers, how will you escape the sentence of hell? ³⁴Therefore, behold, I am sending you prophets and wise men and scribes; some of them you will kill and crucify, and some of them you will scourge in your synagogues, and persecute from city to city, ³⁵so that upon you may fall *the guilt* of all the righteous blood shed on earth, from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood of Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, whom you murdered between the temple and the altar. ³⁶Truly I say to you, all these things will come upon this generation.

3. The Lament, Matthew 23:37–39

[Matthew 23:37–39](#)

³⁷“Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those who are sent to her! How often I wanted to gather your children together, the way a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, and you were unwilling.

³⁸“Behold, your house is being left to you desolate! ³⁹“For I say to you, from now on you will not see Me until you say, ‘BLESSED IS HE WHO COMES IN THE NAME OF THE LORD!’ ”

I. Instruction at the Treasury, § 143, Mark 12:41–44; Luke 21:1–4

[Mark 12:41–44](#)

⁴¹And He sat down opposite the treasury, and *began* observing how the people were putting money into the treasury; and many rich people were putting in large sums. ⁴²A poor widow came and put in two small copper coins, which amount to a cent. ⁴³Calling His disciples to Him, He said to them, “Truly I say to you, this poor widow put in more than all the contributors to the treasury; ⁴⁴for they all put in out of their surplus, but she, out of her poverty, put in all she owned, all she had to live on.”

[Luke 21:1–4](#)

¹And He looked up and saw the rich putting their gifts into the treasury. ²And He saw a poor widow putting in two small copper coins. ³And He said, “Truly I say to you, this poor widow put in more than all *of them*; ⁴for they all out of their surplus put into the offering; but she out of her poverty put in all that she had to live on.”

VIII THE PREPARATION FOR THE DEATH OF THE KING, § 144-163

A. The Prophecies of the King, § 144, Matthew 24-25; Mark 13:1-37; Luke 21:5-38

1. The Historical Setting, Matthew 24:1-2; Mark 13:1-2; Luke 21:5-6

[Matthew 24:1-2](#)

¹Jesus came out from the temple and was going away when His disciples came up to point out the temple buildings to Him.

²And He said to them, "Do you not see all these things? Truly I say to you, not one stone here will be left upon another, which will not be torn down."

[Mark 13:1-2](#)

¹As He was going out of the temple, one of His disciples *said to Him, "Teacher, behold what wonderful stones and what wonderful buildings!"

²And Jesus said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left upon another which will not be torn down."

[Luke 21:5-6](#)

⁵And while some were talking about the temple, that it was adorned with beautiful stones and votive gifts,

He said, ⁶"As for these things which you are looking at, the days will come in which there will not be left one stone upon another which will not be torn down."

2. The Three Questions, Matthew 24:3; Mark 13:3-4; Luke 21:7

[Matthew 24:3](#)

³As He was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately, saying,

"Tell us, when will these things happen, and what *will be* the sign of Your coming, and of the end of the age?"

[Mark 13:3-4](#)

³As He was sitting on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter and James and John and Andrew were questioning Him privately,

⁴"Tell us, when will these things be, and what *will be* the sign when all these things are going to be fulfilled?"

[Luke 21:7](#)

⁷They questioned Him, saying,

"Teacher, when therefore will these things happen? And what *will be* the sign when these things are about to take place?"

3. The General Characteristics of the Church Age, Matthew 24:4-6; Mark 13:5-7; Luke 21:8-9

[Matthew 24:4-6](#)

⁴And Jesus answered and said to them, “See to it that no one misleads you.

⁵“For many will come in My name, saying, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will mislead many.

⁶“You will be hearing of wars and rumors of wars. See that you are not frightened, for *those things* must take place, but *that* is not yet the end.

[Mark 13:5-7](#)

⁵And Jesus began to say to them, “See to it that no one misleads you.

⁶“Many will come in My name, saying, ‘I am *He!*’ and will mislead many.

⁷“When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not be frightened; *those things* must take place; but *that is* not yet the end.

[Luke 21:8-9](#)

⁸And He said, “See to it that you are not misled;

for many will come in My name, saying, ‘I am *He,*’ and, ‘The time is near.’ Do not go after them.

⁹“When you hear of wars and disturbances, do not be terrified; for these things must take place first, but the end *does* not *follow* immediately.”

4. The Sign of the End of the Age, Matthew 24:7-8; Mark 13:8; Luke 21:10-11

[Matthew 24:7-8](#)

⁷“For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, and in various places there will be famines and earthquakes.

⁸“But all these things are *merely* the beginning of birth pangs.

[Mark 13:8](#)

⁸“For nation will rise up against nation, and kingdom against kingdom; there will be earthquakes in various places; there will *also* be famines.

These things are *merely* the beginning of birth pangs.

[Luke 21:10-11](#)

¹⁰Then He continued by saying to them, “Nation will rise against nation and kingdom against kingdom, ¹¹and there will be great earthquakes, and in various places plagues and famines; and there will be terrors and great signs from heaven.

5. The Personal Experiences of the Apostles, Mark 13:9-13a; Luke 21:12-19

Mark 13:9-13a

⁹“But be on your guard; for they will deliver you to *the* courts, and you will be flogged in *the* synagogues, and you will stand before governors and kings for My sake, as a testimony to them.

¹⁰“The gospel must first be preached to all the nations.

¹¹“When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry beforehand about what you are to say, but say whatever is given you in that hour; for it is not you who speak, but *it is* the Holy Spirit.

¹²“Brother will betray brother to death, and a father *his* child; and children will rise up against parents and have them put to death.

¹³“You will be hated by all because of My name,

Luke 21:12-19

¹²“But before all these things, they will lay their hands on you and will persecute you, delivering you to the synagogues and prisons, bringing you before kings and governors for My name’s sake.

¹³“It will lead to an opportunity for your testimony.

¹⁴“So make up your minds not to prepare beforehand to defend yourselves; ¹⁵for I will give you utterance and wisdom which none of your opponents will be able to resist or refute.

¹⁶“But you will be betrayed even by parents and brothers and relatives and friends, and they will put *some* of you to death,

¹⁷and you will be hated by all because of My name.

¹⁸“Yet not a hair of your head will perish. ¹⁹“By your endurance you will gain your lives.

6. The Sign of the Fall of Jerusalem, Luke 21:20-24

Luke 21:20-24

²⁰“But when you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then recognize that her desolation is near.

²¹“Then those who are in Judea must flee to the mountains, and those who are in the midst of the city must leave, and those who are in the country must not enter the city; ²²because these are days of vengeance, so that all things which are written will be fulfilled.

²³“Woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing babies in those days; for there will be great distress upon the land and wrath to this people; ²⁴and they will fall by the edge of the sword, and will be led captive into all the nations; and Jerusalem will be trampled under foot by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

7. The Great Tribulation, Matthew 24:9-28; Mark 13:13b-23

a. The First Half, Matthew 24:9-14; Mark 13:13b

Matthew 24:9-14

Mark 13:13b

⁹“Then they will deliver you to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations because of My name. ¹⁰“At that time many will fall away and will betray one another and hate one another.

¹¹“Many false prophets will arise and will mislead many.

¹²“Because lawlessness is increased, most people’s love will grow cold.

¹³“But the one who endures to the end, he will be saved.

^{13b}but the one who endures to the end, he will be saved.

¹⁴“This gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all the nations, and then the end will come.

b. The Second Half, Matthew 24:15-28; Mark 13:14-23

Matthew 24:15-28

¹⁵“Therefore when you see the ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION which was spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place [see Daniel 9:27; 11:31; 12:11]

(let the reader understand),

¹⁶then those who are in Judea must flee to the mountains. ¹⁷“Whoever is on the housetop must not go down to get the things out that are in his house. ¹⁸“Whoever is in the field must not turn back to get his cloak. ¹⁹“But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing babies in those days! ²⁰“But pray that your flight will not be in the winter, or on a Sabbath.

²¹“For then there will be a great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, nor ever will. [see Dan. 12:1]

²²“Unless those days had been cut short, no life would have been saved; but for the sake of the elect those days will be cut short.

²³“Then if anyone says to you, ‘Behold, here is the Christ,’ or ‘There *He is*,’ do not believe *him*. ²⁴“For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will show great signs and wonders, so as to mislead, if possible, even the elect.

²⁵“Behold, I have told you in advance.

²⁶“So if they say to you, ‘Behold, He is in the wilderness,’ do not go out, *or*, ‘Behold, He is in the inner rooms,’ do not believe *them*.

²⁷“For just as the lightning comes from the east and flashes even to the west, so will the coming of the Son of Man be.

²⁸“Wherever the corpse is, there the vultures will gather.

Mark 13:14-23

¹⁴“But when you see the ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION standing where it should not be

(let the reader understand),

then those who are in Judea must flee to the mountains. ¹⁵“The one who is on the housetop must not go down, or go in to get anything out of his house; ¹⁶and the one who is in the field must not turn back to get his coat. ¹⁷“But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing babies in those days! ¹⁸“But pray that it may not happen in the winter.

¹⁹“For those days will be a *time of* tribulation such as has not occurred since the beginning of the creation which God created until now, and never will.

²⁰“Unless the Lord had shortened *those* days, no life would have been saved; but for the sake of the elect, whom He chose, He shortened the days.

²¹“And then if anyone says to you, ‘Behold, here is the Christ’; or, ‘Behold, *He is there*’; do not believe *him*; ²²for false Christs and false prophets will arise, and will show signs and wonders, in order to lead astray, if possible, the elect.

²³“But take heed; behold, I have told you everything in advance.

8. The Second Coming, Matthew 24:29-30; Mark 13:24-26; Luke 21:25-27

[Matthew 24:29-30](#)

²⁹“But immediately after the tribulation of those days

THE SUN WILL BE DARKENED, AND THE MOON WILL NOT GIVE ITS LIGHT, AND THE STARS WILL FALL from the sky,

and the powers of the heavens will be shaken.

³⁰“And then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn [see Zechariah 12:10-12], and they will see the SON OF MAN COMING ON THE CLOUDS OF THE SKY with power and great glory.

[Mark 13:24-26](#)

²⁴“But in those days, after that tribulation,

THE SUN WILL BE DARKENED AND THE MOON WILL NOT GIVE ITS LIGHT, ²⁵AND THE STARS WILL BE FALLING from heaven,

and the powers that are in the heavens will be shaken.

²⁶“Then they will see THE SON OF MAN COMING IN CLOUDS with great power and glory.

[Luke 21:25-27](#)

²⁵“There will be signs in sun and moon and stars,

and on the earth dismay among nations, in perplexity at the roaring of the sea and the waves, ²⁶men fainting from fear and the expectation of the things which are coming upon the world;

for the powers of the heavens will be shaken. [see Isaiah 13:9-10; Ezekiel 32:7-8; Joel 2:1-2, 10-11, 30-31; Amos 8:9; Zephaniah. 1:14-16]

²⁷“Then they will see THE SON OF MAN COMING IN A CLOUD with power and great glory.

9. The Regathering of Israel, Matthew 24:31; Mark 13:27

[Matthew 24:31](#)

³¹“And He will send forth His angels with A GREAT TRUMPET and THEY WILL GATHER TOGETHER His elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.

[Mark 13:27](#)

²⁷“And then He will send forth the angels, and will gather together His elect from the four winds, from the farthest end of the earth to the farthest end of heaven.

10. The Exhortation, Luke 21:28

[Luke 21:28](#)

²⁸“But when these things begin to take place, straighten up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is drawing near.”

11. The Parable of the Fig Tree, Matthew 24:32-35; Mark 13:28-31; Luke 21:29-33

[Matthew 24:32-35](#)

³²“Now learn the parable from the fig tree: when its branch has already become tender and puts forth its leaves, you know that summer is near;

³³so, you too, when you see all these things, recognize that He is near, *right* at the door.

³⁴“Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place.

³⁵“Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will not pass away.

[Mark 13:28-32](#)

²⁸“Now learn the parable from the fig tree: when its branch has already become tender and puts forth its leaves, you know that summer is near.

²⁹“Even so, you too, when you see these things happening, recognize that He is near, *right* at the door.

³⁰“Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place.

³¹“Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will not pass away.

[Luke 21:29-33](#)

²⁹Then He told them a parable: “Behold the fig tree and all the trees; ³⁰as soon as they put forth *leaves*, you see it and know for yourselves that summer is now near.

³¹“So you also, when you see these things happening, recognize that the kingdom of God is near.

³²“Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all things take place.

³³“Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will not pass away.

12. The Rapture, Matthew 24:36-42; Mark 13:32; Luke 21:34-36

[Matthew 24:36-42](#)

³⁶“But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but the Father alone.

³⁷“For the coming of the Son of Man will be just like the days of Noah. ³⁸“For as in those days before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered the ark, ³⁹and they did not understand until the flood came and took them all away; so will the coming of the Son of Man be.

⁴⁰“Then there will be two men in the field; one will be taken and one will be left.

⁴¹“Two women *will be* grinding at the mill; one will be taken and one will be left.

⁴²“Therefore be on the alert, for you do not know which day your Lord is coming.

[Mark 13:32](#)

³²“But of that day or hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father *alone*.

[Luke 21:34-36](#)

³⁴“Be on guard, so that your hearts will not be weighted down with dissipation and drunkenness and the worries of life, and that day will not come on you suddenly like a trap;

³⁵for it will come upon all those who dwell on the face of all the earth.

³⁶“But keep on the alert at all times, praying that you may have strength to escape all these things that are about to take place, and to stand before the Son of Man.”

13. Parables Urging Watchfulness, Readiness and Labour, Matthew 24:43 - 25:30; Mark 13:33-37

a. *The Parable of the Porter, Mark 13:33-37*

[Mark 13:33-37](#)

³³“Take heed, keep on the alert; for you do not know when the *appointed* time will come. ³⁴“*It is* like a man away on a journey, *who* upon leaving his house and putting his slaves in charge, *assigning* to each one his task, also commanded the doorkeeper to stay on the alert. ³⁵“Therefore, be on the alert—for you do not know when the master of the house is coming, whether in the evening, at midnight, or when the rooster crows, or in the morning— ³⁶in case he should come suddenly and find you asleep. ³⁷“What I say to you I say to all, ‘Be on the alert!’ ”

b. *The Parable of the Master of the House, Matthew 24:43-44*

[Matthew 24:43-44](#)

⁴³“But be sure of this, that if the head of the house had known at what time of the night the thief was coming, he would have been on the alert and would not have allowed his house to be broken into. ⁴⁴“For this reason you also must be ready; for the Son of Man is coming at an hour when you do not think *He will*.

c. *The Parable of the Faithful Servant and the Evil Servant, Matthew 24:45-51*

[Matthew 24:45-51](#)

⁴⁵“Who then is the faithful and sensible slave whom his master put in charge of his household to give them their food at the proper time? ⁴⁶“Blessed is that slave whom his master finds so doing when he comes. ⁴⁷“Truly I say to you that he will put him in charge of all his possessions. ⁴⁸“But if that evil slave says in his heart, ‘My master is not coming for a long time,’ ⁴⁹and begins to beat his fellow slaves and eat and drink with drunkards; ⁵⁰the master of that slave will come on a day when he does not expect *him* and at an hour which he does not know, ⁵¹and will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

d. *The Parable of the Ten Virgins, Matthew 25:1-13*

[Matthew 25:1-13](#)

^{25:1}“Then the kingdom of heaven will be comparable to ten virgins, who took their lamps and went out to meet the bridegroom. ²“Five of them were foolish, and five were prudent. ³“For when the foolish took their lamps, they took no oil with them, ⁴but the prudent took oil in flasks along with their lamps. ⁵“Now while the bridegroom was delaying, they all got drowsy and *began* to sleep. ⁶“But at midnight there was a shout, ‘Behold, the bridegroom! Come out to meet *him*.’ ⁷“Then all those virgins rose and trimmed their lamps. ⁸“The foolish said to the prudent, ‘Give us some of your oil, for our lamps are going out.’ ⁹“But the prudent answered, ‘No, there will not be enough for us and you *too*; go instead to the dealers and buy *some* for yourselves.’ ¹⁰“And while they were going away to make the purchase, the bridegroom came, and those who were ready went in with him to the wedding feast; and the door was shut. ¹¹“Later the other virgins also came, saying, ‘Lord, lord, open up for us.’ ¹²“But he answered, ‘Truly I say to you, I do not know you.’ ¹³“Be on the alert then, for you do not know the day nor the hour.

e. The Parable of the Talents, Matthew 25:14-30

[Matthew 25:14-30](#)

¹⁴“For *it is* just like a man *about* to go on a journey, who called his own slaves and entrusted his possessions to them. ¹⁵“To one he gave five talents, to another, two, and to another, one, each according to his own ability; and he went on his journey. ¹⁶“Immediately the one who had received the five talents went and traded with them, and gained five more talents. ¹⁷“In the same manner the one who *had received* the two *talents* gained two more. ¹⁸“But he who received the one *talent* went away, and dug *a hole* in the ground and hid his master’s money. ¹⁹“Now after a long time the master of those slaves *came and *settled accounts with them. ²⁰“The one who had received the five talents came up and brought five more talents, saying, ‘Master, you entrusted five talents to me. See, I have gained five more talents.’ ²¹“His master said to him, ‘Well done, good and faithful slave. You were faithful with a few things, I will put you in charge of many things; enter into the joy of your master.’ ²²“Also the one who *had received* the two talents came up and said, ‘Master, you entrusted two talents to me. See, I have gained two more talents.’ ²³“His master said to him, ‘Well done, good and faithful slave. You were faithful with a few things, I will put you in charge of many things; enter into the joy of your master.’ ²⁴“And the one also who had received the one talent came up and said, ‘Master, I knew you to be a hard man, reaping where you did not sow and gathering where you scattered no *seed*. ²⁵‘And I was afraid, and went away and hid your talent in the ground. See, you have what is yours.’ ²⁶“But his master answered and said to him, ‘You wicked, lazy slave, you knew that I reap where I did not sow and gather where I scattered no *seed*. ²⁷‘Then you ought to have put my money in the bank, and on my arrival I would have received my *money* back with interest. ²⁸‘Therefore take away the talent from him, and give it to the one who has the ten talents.’ ²⁹“For to everyone who has, *more* shall be given, and he will have an abundance; but from the one who does not have, even what he does have shall be taken away. ³⁰“Throw out the worthless slave into the outer darkness; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

14. The Judgment of the Gentiles, Matthew 25:31-46

[Matthew 25:31-46](#)

³¹“But when the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the angels with Him, then He will sit on His glorious throne. ³²“All the nations will be gathered before Him; and He will separate them from one another, as the shepherd separates the sheep from the goats; ³³and He will put the sheep on His right, and the goats on the left. ³⁴“Then the King will say to those on His right, ‘Come, you who are blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. ³⁵‘For I was hungry, and you gave Me *something* to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave Me *something* to drink; I was a stranger, and you invited Me in; ³⁶naked, and you clothed Me; I was sick, and you visited Me; I was in prison, and you came to Me.’ ³⁷“Then the righteous will answer Him, ‘Lord, when did we see You hungry, and feed You, or thirsty, and give You *something* to drink? ³⁸‘And when did we see You a stranger, and invite You in, or naked, and clothe You? ³⁹‘When did we see You sick, or in prison, and come to You?’ ⁴⁰“The King will answer and say to them, ‘Truly I say to you, to the extent that you did it to one of these brothers of Mine, *even* the least *of them*, you did it to Me.’ ⁴¹“Then He will also say to those on His left, ‘Depart from Me, accursed ones, into the eternal fire which has been prepared for the devil and his angels; ⁴²‘for I was hungry, and you gave Me *nothing* to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave Me nothing to drink; ⁴³I was a stranger, and you did not invite Me in; naked, and you did not clothe Me; sick, and in prison, and you did not visit Me.’ ⁴⁴“Then they themselves also will answer, ‘Lord, when did we see You hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not take care of You?’ ⁴⁵“Then He will answer them, ‘Truly I say to you, to the extent that you did not do it to one of the least of these, you did not do it to Me.’ ⁴⁶“These will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life.”

15. Luke Summary, Luke 21:37-38

[Luke 21:37-38](#)

³⁷Now during the day He was teaching in the temple, but at evening He would go out and spend the night on the mount that is called Olivet. ³⁸And all the people would get up early in the morning *to come* to Him in the temple to listen to Him.

B. The Preparation for Messiah's Death, § 145-159

1. The Prediction of His Death, § 145, Matthew 26:1-2

[Matthew 26:1-2](#)

¹When Jesus had finished all these words, He said to His disciples, ²“You know that after two days the Passover is coming, and the Son of Man is *to be* handed over for crucifixion.”

2. The Conspiracy of the Rulers, § 146, Matthew 26:3-5; Mark 14:1-2; Luke 22:1-2

[Mark 14:1a](#)

¹Now the Passover and Unleavened Bread were two days away;

[Luke 22:1](#)

¹Now the Feast of Unleavened Bread, which is called the Passover, was approaching.

[Matthew 26:3-5](#)

³Then the chief priests and the elders of the people were gathered together in the court of the high priest, named Caiaphas; ⁴and they plotted together to seize Jesus by stealth and kill Him.

[Mark 14:1b-2](#)

and the chief priests and the scribes were seeking how to seize Him by stealth and kill *Him*;

[Luke 22:2](#)

²The chief priests and the scribes were seeking how they might put Him to death;

⁵But they were saying, “Not during the festival, otherwise a riot might occur among the people.”

²for they were saying, “Not during the festival, otherwise there might be a riot of the people.”

for they were afraid of the people.

3. The Pouring of Ointment, § 147, Matthew 26:6–13; Mark 14:3–9; John 12:2–8

[Matthew 26:6–13](#)

⁶Now when Jesus was in Bethany, at the home of Simon the leper, ⁷a woman came to Him with an alabaster vial of very costly perfume, and she poured it on His head as He reclined *at the table*.

⁸But the disciples were indignant when they saw *this*, and said, “Why this waste? ⁹“For this *perfume* might have been sold for a high price and *the money* given to the poor.”

¹⁰But Jesus, aware of this, said to them, “Why do you bother the woman? For she has done a good deed to Me. ¹¹“For you always have the poor with you; but you do not always have Me.

¹²“For when she poured this perfume on My body, she did it to prepare Me for burial. ¹³“Truly I say to you, wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her.”

[Mark 14:3–9](#)

³While He was in Bethany at the home of Simon the leper, and reclining *at the table*, there came a woman with an alabaster vial of very costly perfume of pure nard; *and* she broke the vial and poured it over His head.

⁴But some were indignantly *remarking* to one another, “Why has this perfume been wasted? ⁵“For this perfume might have been sold for over three hundred denarii, and *the money* given to the poor.” And they were scolding her.

⁶But Jesus said, “Let her alone; why do you bother her? She has done a good deed to Me. ⁷“For you always have the poor with you, and whenever you wish you can do good to them; but you do not always have Me.

⁸“She has done what she could; she has anointed My body beforehand for the burial. ⁹“Truly I say to you, wherever the gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her.”

[John 12:2–8](#)

²So they made Him a supper there, and Martha was serving; but Lazarus was one of those reclining *at the table* with Him. ³Mary then took a pound of very costly perfume of pure nard, and anointed the feet of Jesus and wiped His feet with her hair; and the house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume.

⁴But Judas Iscariot, one of His disciples, who was intending to betray Him, ⁵said, “Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and given to poor *people*?” ⁶Now he said this, not because he was concerned about the poor, but because he was a thief, and as he had the money box, he used to pilfer what was put into it.

⁷Therefore Jesus said, “Let her alone, so that she may keep it for the day of My burial. ⁸“For you always have the poor with you, but you do not always have Me.”

**4. The Promise to Betray,
§ 148, Matthew 26:14–16; Mark 14:10–11; Luke 22:3–6**

[Matthew 26:14–16](#)

¹⁴Then one of the twelve, named Judas Iscariot,

went to the chief priests ¹⁵and said, “What are you willing to give me to betray Him to you?”.

And they weighed out thirty pieces of silver to him.

¹⁶From then on he *began* looking for a good opportunity to betray Jesus.

[Mark 14:10–11](#)

¹⁰Then Judas Iscariot, who was one of the twelve,

went off to the chief priests in order to betray Him to them.

¹¹They were glad when they heard *this*, and promised to give him money.

And he *began* seeking how to betray Him at an opportune time.

[Luke 22:3–6](#)

³And Satan entered into Judas who was called Iscariot, belonging to the number of the twelve.

⁴And he went away and discussed with the chief priests and officers how he might betray Him to them.

⁵They were glad and agreed to give him money.

⁶So he consented and *began* seeking a good opportunity to betray Him to them apart from the crowd.

5. The Last Passover and the First Lord's Supper, § 149-159

a. The Preparation for the Seder, § 149, Matthew 26:17-19; Mark 14:12-16; Luke 22:7-13

Matthew 26:17-19

¹⁷Now on the first *day* of Unleavened Bread

the disciples came to Jesus and asked, "Where do You want us to prepare for You to eat the Passover?"

¹⁸And He said, "Go into the city to a certain man,

and say to him, 'The Teacher says, "My time is near; I *am* to keep the Passover at your house with My disciples." ' "

¹⁹The disciples did as Jesus had directed them; and they prepared the Passover.

Mark 14:12-16

¹²On the first day of Unleavened Bread, when the Passover *lamb* was being sacrificed,

His disciples *said to Him, "Where do You want us to go and prepare for You to eat the Passover?"

¹³And He *sent two of His disciples and *said to them, "Go into the city, and a man will meet you carrying a pitcher of water; follow him; ¹⁴and wherever he enters,

say to the owner of the house, 'The Teacher says, "Where is My guest room in which I may eat the Passover with My disciples?" ' "

¹⁵"And he himself will show you a large upper room furnished *and* ready; prepare for us there."

¹⁶The disciples went out and came to the city, and found *it* just as He had told them; and they prepared the Passover.

Luke 22:7-13

⁷Then came the *first* day of Unleavened Bread on which the Passover *lamb* had to be sacrificed.

⁸And Jesus sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and prepare the Passover for us, so that we may eat it."

⁹They said to Him, "Where do You want us to prepare it?"

¹⁰And He said to them, "When you have entered the city, a man will meet you carrying a pitcher of water; follow him into the house that he enters.

¹¹"And you shall say to the owner of the house, 'The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room in which I may eat the Passover with My disciples?" ' "

¹²"And he will show you a large, furnished upper room; prepare it there."

¹³And they left and found *everything* just as He had told them; and they prepared the Passover.

*b. The start of the Passover Observance,
§ 150, Matthew 26:20; Mark 14:17; Luke 22:14-16*

[Matthew 26:20](#)

²⁰Now when evening came, Jesus was reclining *at the table* with the twelve disciples.

[Mark 14:17](#)

¹⁷When it was evening He *came with the twelve.

[Luke 22:14-16](#)

¹⁴When the hour had come, He reclined *at the table*, and the apostles with Him.

¹⁵And He said to them, "I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer; ¹⁶for I say to you, I shall never again eat it until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God."

*c. The First Cup,
§ 151, Luke 22:17-18*

[Luke 22:17-18](#)

¹⁷And when He had taken a cup *and* given thanks, He said, "Take this and share it among yourselves; ¹⁸for I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine from now on until the kingdom of God comes."

*d. The Washing of the Feet and the First Prediction of Judas' Betrayal,
§ 152, John 13:1-20*

[John 13:1-20](#)

¹Now before the Feast of the Passover, Jesus knowing that His hour had come that He would depart out of this world to the Father, having loved His own who were in the world, He loved them to the end. ²During supper, the devil having already put into the heart of Judas Iscariot, *the son* of Simon, to betray Him, ³Jesus, knowing that the Father had given all things into His hands, and that He had come forth from God and was going back to God,

⁴*got up from supper, and *laid aside His garments; and taking a towel, He girded Himself. ⁵Then He *poured water into the basin, and began to wash the disciples' feet and to wipe them with the towel with which He was girded.

⁶So He *came to Simon Peter. He *said to Him, "Lord, do You wash my feet?" ⁷Jesus answered and said to him, "What I do you do not realize now, but you will understand hereafter." ⁸Peter *said to Him, "Never shall You wash my feet!" Jesus answered him, "If I do not wash you, you have no part with Me." ⁹Simon Peter *said to Him, "Lord, *then wash* not only my feet, but also my hands and my head." ¹⁰Jesus *said to him, "He who has bathed needs only to wash his feet, but is completely clean; and you are clean, but not all *of you*." ¹¹For He knew the one who was betraying Him; for this reason He said, "Not all of you are clean."

¹²So when He had washed their feet, and taken His garments and reclined *at the table* again, He said to them, "Do you know what I have done to you? ¹³"You call Me Teacher and Lord; and you are right, for so I am. ¹⁴"If I then, the Lord and the Teacher, washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another's feet. ¹⁵"For I gave you an example that you also should do as I did to you. ¹⁶"Truly, truly, I say to you, a slave is not greater than his master, nor *is* one who is sent greater than the one who sent him. ¹⁷"If you know these things, you are blessed if you do them.

¹⁸"I do not speak of all of you. I know the ones I have chosen; but *it is* that the Scripture may be fulfilled, 'HE WHO EATS MY BREAD HAS LIFTED UP HIS HEEL AGAINST ME.'

¹⁹"From now on I am telling you before *it* comes to pass, so that when it does occur, you may believe that I am *He*. ²⁰"Truly, truly, I say to you, he who receives whomever I send receives Me; and he who receives Me receives Him who sent Me."

*e. Carpas: The Second Prediction of Judas' Betrayal,
§ 153, Matthew 26:21-25; Mark 14:18-21; Luke 22:21-23*

[Matthew 26:21–25](#)

²¹As they were eating, He said, “Truly I say to you that one of you will betray Me.”

²²Being deeply grieved, they each one began to say to Him, “Surely not I, Lord?”

²³And He answered, “He who dipped his hand with Me in the bowl is the one who will betray Me.

²⁴“The Son of Man *is to go*, just as it is written of Him; but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been good for that man if he had not been born.” ²⁵And Judas, who was betraying Him, said, “Surely it is not I, Rabbi?” Jesus *said to him, “You have said *it yourself*.”

[Mark 14:18–21](#)

¹⁸As they were reclining *at the table* and eating, Jesus said, “Truly I say to you that one of you will betray Me—one who is eating with Me.”

¹⁹They began to be grieved and to say to Him one by one, “Surely not I?”

²⁰And He said to them, “*It is one of the twelve, one who dips with Me in the bowl.*”

²¹“For the Son of Man *is to go* just as it is written of Him; but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! *It would have been good for that man if he had not been born.*”

[Luke 22:21–23](#)

²¹“But behold, the hand of the one betraying Me is with Mine on the table. ²²“For indeed, the Son of Man is going as it has been determined; but woe to that man by whom He is betrayed!”

²³And they began to discuss among themselves which one of them it might be who was going to do this thing.

*f. The Breaking of the Middle Matzah,
§ 154, Matthew 26:26; Mark 14:22; Luke 22:19; 1 Corinthians 11:23-24*

[Matthew 26:26](#)

²⁶While they were eating, Jesus took *some* bread, and after a blessing, He broke *it* and gave *it* to the disciples, and said, “Take, eat; this is My body.”

[Mark 14:22](#)

²²While they were eating, He took *some* bread, and after a blessing He broke *it*, and gave *it* to them, and said, “Take *it*; this is My body.”

[Luke 22:19](#)

¹⁹And when He had taken *some* bread *and* given thanks, He broke it and gave it to them, saying, “This is My body which is given for you; do this in remembrance of Me.”

[1 Corinthians 11:23–24](#)

²³For I received from the Lord that which I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus in the night in which He was betrayed took bread; ²⁴and when He had given thanks, He broke it and said, “This is My body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of Me.”

**g. The Sop: The Third Prediction of Judas' Betrayal,
§ 155, John 13:21-30**

[John 13:21–30](#)

²¹When Jesus had said this, He became troubled in spirit, and testified and said, “Truly, truly, I say to you, that one of you will betray Me.”

²²The disciples *began* looking at one another, at a loss *to know* of which one He was speaking. ²³There was reclining on Jesus' bosom one of His disciples, whom Jesus loved. ²⁴So Simon Peter *gestured to him, and *said to him, “Tell us who it is of whom He is speaking.” ²⁵He, leaning back thus on Jesus' bosom, *said to Him, “Lord, who is it?”

²⁶Jesus then *answered, “That is the one for whom I shall dip the morsel and give it to him.” So when He had dipped the morsel, He *took and *gave it to Judas, *the son* of Simon Iscariot. ²⁷After the morsel, Satan then entered into him. Therefore Jesus *said to him, “What you do, do quickly.”

²⁸Now no one of those reclining *at the table* knew for what purpose He had said this to him. ²⁹For some were supposing, because Judas had the money box, that Jesus was saying to him, “Buy the things we have need of for the feast”; or else, that he should give something to the poor.

³⁰So after receiving the morsel he went out immediately; and it was night.

**h. The Third Cup,
§ 156, Matthew 26:27-29; Mark 14:23-25; Luke 22:20; 1 Corinthians 11:25-26**

[Matthew 26:27–29](#)

²⁷And when He had taken a cup and given thanks, He gave *it* to them, saying, “Drink from it, all of you; ²⁸for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins.

²⁹“But I say to you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it new with you in My Father's kingdom.”

[Mark 14:23–25](#)

²³And when He had taken a cup *and* given thanks, He gave *it* to them, and they all drank from it. ²⁴And He said to them, “This is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many.

²⁵“Truly I say to you, I will never again drink of the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God.”

[Luke 22:20](#)

²⁰And in the same way *He took* the cup after they had eaten, saying, “This cup which is poured out for you is the new covenant in My blood.

[1 Corinthians 11:25–26](#)

²⁵In the same way *He took* the cup also after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink *it*, in remembrance of Me.”

²⁶For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes.

**i. A Lesson in Greatness,
§ 157, Luke 22:24-30**

[Luke 22:24–30](#)

²⁴And there arose also a dispute among them *as to* which one of them was regarded to be greatest. ²⁵And He said to them, “The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them; and those who have authority over them are called ‘Benefactors.’ ²⁶“But *it is* not this way with you, but the one who is the greatest among you must become like the youngest, and the leader like the servant. ²⁷“For who is greater, the one who reclines *at the table* or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines *at the table*? But I am among you as the one who serves. ²⁸“You are those who have stood by Me in My trials; ²⁹and just as My Father has granted Me a kingdom, I grant you ³⁰that you may eat and drink at My table in My kingdom, and you will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

*j. The Prediction of Peter's Denial,
§ 158, Matthew 26:31-35; Mark 14:27-31; Luke 22:31-38; John 13:31-38*

[John 13:31-35](#)

³¹Therefore when he had gone out, Jesus *said, "Now is the Son of Man glorified, and God is glorified in Him;
³²if God is glorified in Him, God will also glorify Him in Himself, and will glorify Him immediately.

³³"Little children, I am with you a little while longer. You will seek Me; and as I said to the Jews, now I also say to you, 'Where I am going, you cannot come.'

³⁴"A new commandment I give to you, that you love one another, even as I have loved you, that you also love one another. ³⁵"By this all men will know that you are My disciples, if you have love for one another."

[Matthew 26:31-32](#)

³¹Then Jesus *said to them, "You will all fall away because of Me this night, for it is written, 'I will strike down the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered.'

³²"But after I have been raised, I will go ahead of you to Galilee."

[Mark 14:27-28](#)

²⁷And Jesus *said to them, "You will all fall away, because it is written, 'I will strike down the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered.'

²⁸"But after I have been raised, I will go ahead of you to Galilee."

[John 13:36-37a](#)

³⁶Simon Peter *said to Him, "Lord, where are You going?" Jesus answered, "Where I go, you cannot follow Me now; but you will follow later." ³⁷Peter *said to Him, "Lord, why can I not follow You right now?"

[Luke 22:31-32](#)

³¹"Simon, Simon, behold, Satan has demanded *permission* to sift you like wheat; ³²but I have prayed for you, that your faith may not fail; and you, when once you have turned again, strengthen your brothers."

[Matthew 26:33-35](#)

³³But Peter said to Him, "Even though all may fall away because of You, I will never fall away."

³⁴Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you that this very night, before a rooster crows, you will deny Me three times."

[Mark 14:29-31](#)

²⁹But Peter said to Him, "Even though all may fall away, yet I will not."

³⁰And Jesus *said to him, "Truly I say to you, that this very night, before a rooster crows twice, you yourself will deny Me

[Luke 22:33-34](#)

³³But he said to Him, "Lord, with You I am ready to go both to prison and to death!"

³⁴And He said, "I say to you, Peter, the rooster will not crow today until you have denied three times that you know Me."

[John 13:37b-38](#)

I will lay down my life for You."

³⁸Jesus *answered, "Will you lay down your life for Me? Truly, truly, I say to you, a rooster will not crow until you deny Me

three times.”

three times.

³⁵Peter *said to Him, “Even if I have to die with You, I will not deny You.” All the disciples said the same thing too. ³¹But *Peter* kept saying insistently, “*Even* if I have to die with You, I will not deny You!” And they all were saying the same thing also.

[Luke 22:35-38](#)

³⁵And He said to them, “When I sent you out without money belt and bag and sandals, you did not lack anything, did you?” They said, “*No*, nothing.” ³⁶And He said to them, “But now, whoever has a money belt is to take it along, likewise also a bag, and whoever has no sword is to sell his coat and buy one.

³⁷“For I tell you that this which is written must be fulfilled in Me, ‘And He was numbered with transgressors’; for that which refers to Me has *its* fulfillment.” ³⁸They said, “Lord, look, here are two swords.” And He said to them, “It is enough.”

k. The Hallel,
§ 159, *Matthew 26:30; Mark 14:26*

[Matthew 26:30](#)

³⁰After singing a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.

[Mark 14:26](#)

²⁶After singing a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.

C. The Promises and Admonitions by the King, § 160-161

1. In the Upper Room, § 160, John 14:1-31

John 14

¹“Do not let your heart be troubled; believe in God, believe also in Me. ²“In My Father’s house are many dwelling places; if it were not so, I would have told you; for I go to prepare a place for you. ³“If I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to Myself, that where I am, *there* you may be also. ⁴“And you know the way where I am going.”

⁵Thomas *said to Him, “Lord, we do not know where You are going, how do we know the way?” ⁶Jesus *said to him, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me. ⁷“If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also; from now on you know Him, and have seen Him.”

⁸Philip *said to Him, “Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for us.” ⁹Jesus *said to him, “Have I been so long with you, and *yet* you have not come to know Me, Philip? He who has seen Me has seen the Father; how *can* you say, ‘Show us the Father’? ¹⁰“Do you not believe that I am in the Father, and the Father is in Me? The words that I say to you I do not speak on My own initiative, but the Father abiding in Me does His works. ¹¹“Believe Me that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me; otherwise believe because of the works themselves.

¹²“Truly, truly, I say to you, he who believes in Me, the works that I do, he will do also; and greater *works* than these he will do; because I go to the Father.

¹³“Whatever you ask in My name, that will I do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. ¹⁴“If you ask Me anything in My name, I will do *it*.

¹⁵“If you love Me, you will keep My commandments.

¹⁶“I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Helper, that He may be with you forever; ¹⁷*that is* the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it does not see Him or know Him, *but* you know Him because He abides with you and will be in you.

¹⁸“I will not leave you as orphans; I will come to you. ¹⁹“After a little while the world will no longer see Me, but you *will* see Me; because I live, you will live also. ²⁰“In that day you will know that I am in My Father, and you in Me, and I in you. ²¹“He who has My commandments and keeps them is the one who loves Me; and he who loves Me will be loved by My Father, and I will love him and will disclose Myself to him.”

²²Judas (not Iscariot) *said to Him, “Lord, what then has happened that You are going to disclose Yourself to us and not to the world?” ²³Jesus answered and said to him, “If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word; and My Father will love him, and We will come to him and make Our abode with him. ²⁴“He who does not love Me does not keep My words; and the word which you hear is not Mine, but the Father’s who sent Me.

²⁵“These things I have spoken to you while abiding with you. ²⁶“But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all that I said to you.

²⁷“Peace I leave with you; My peace I give to you; not as the world gives do I give to you. Do not let your heart be troubled, nor let it be fearful. ²⁸“You heard that I said to you, ‘I go away, and I will come to you.’ If you loved Me, you would have rejoiced because I go to the Father, for the Father is greater than I.

²⁹“Now I have told you before it happens, so that when it happens, you may believe. ³⁰“I will not speak much more with you, for the ruler of the world is coming, and he has nothing in Me; ³¹but so that the world may know that I love the Father, I do exactly as the Father commanded Me. Get up, let us go from here.

2. On the Way to Gethsemane, § 161, John 15:1-27, 16:1-33

John 15–16

¹“I am the true vine, and My Father is the vinedresser. ²“Every branch in Me that does not bear fruit, He takes away; and every *branch* that bears fruit, He prunes it so that it may bear more fruit. ³“You are already clean because of the word which I have spoken to you. ⁴“Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself unless it abides in the vine, so neither *can* you unless you abide in Me. ⁵“I am the vine, you are the branches; he who abides in Me and I in him, he bears much fruit, for apart from Me you can do nothing. ⁶“If anyone does not abide in Me, he is thrown away as a branch and dries up; and they gather them, and cast them into the fire and they are burned. ⁷“If you abide in Me, and My words abide in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be done for you. ⁸“My Father is glorified by this, that you bear much fruit, and so prove to be My disciples. ⁹“Just as the Father has loved Me, I have also loved you; abide in My love. ¹⁰“If you keep My commandments, you will abide in My love; just as I have kept My Father’s commandments and abide in His love. ¹¹“These things I have spoken to you so that My joy may be in you, and *that* your joy may be made full.

¹²“This is My commandment, that you love one another, just as I have loved you. ¹³“Greater love has no one than this, that one lay down his life for his friends. ¹⁴“You are My friends if you do what I command you. ¹⁵“No longer do I call you slaves, for the slave does not know what his master is doing; but I have called you friends, for all things that I have heard from My Father I have made known to you. ¹⁶“You did not choose Me but I chose you, and appointed you that you would go and bear fruit, and *that* your fruit would remain, so that whatever you ask of the Father in My name He may give to you. ¹⁷“This I command you, that you love one another.

¹⁸“If the world hates you, you know that it has hated Me before *it hated* you. ¹⁹“If you were of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, because of this the world hates you.

²⁰“Remember the word that I said to you, ‘A slave is not greater than his master.’ If they persecuted Me, they will also persecute you; if they kept My word, they will keep yours also. ²¹“But all these things they will do to you for My name’s sake, because they do not know the One who sent Me. ²²“If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not have sin, but now they have no excuse for their sin. ²³“He who hates Me hates My Father also. ²⁴“If I had not done among them the works which no one else did, they would not have sin; but now they have both seen and hated Me and My Father as well. ²⁵“But *they have done this* to fulfill the word that is written in their Law, ‘THEY HATED ME WITHOUT A CAUSE.’

²⁶“When the Helper comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, *that is* the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father, He will testify about Me, ²⁷and you *will* testify also, because you have been with Me from the beginning.

^{16:1}“These things I have spoken to you so that you may be kept from stumbling. ²“They will make you outcasts from the synagogue, but an hour is coming for everyone who kills you to think that he is offering service to God. ³“These things they will do because they have not known the Father or Me. ⁴“But these things I have spoken to you, so that when their hour comes, you may remember that I told you of them. These things I did not say to you at the beginning, because I was with you.

⁵“But now I am going to Him who sent Me; and none of you asks Me, ‘Where are You going?’ ⁶“But because I have said these things to you, sorrow has filled your heart. ⁷“But I tell you the truth, it is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you; but if I go, I will send Him to you. ⁸“And He, when He comes, will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and judgment; ⁹concerning sin, because they do not believe in Me; ¹⁰and concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father and you no longer see Me; ¹¹and concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged.

¹²“I have many more things to say to you, but you cannot bear *them* now. ¹³“But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all the truth; for He will not speak on His own initiative, but whatever He hears, He will speak; and He will disclose to you what is to come. ¹⁴“He will glorify Me, for He will take of Mine and will disclose *it* to you. ¹⁵“All things that the Father has are Mine; therefore I said that He takes of Mine and will disclose *it* to you.

¹⁶“A little while, and you will no longer see Me; and again a little while, and you will see Me.” ¹⁷Some of His disciples then said to one another, “What is this thing He is telling us, ‘A little while, and you will not see Me; and again a little while, and you will see Me’; and, ‘because I go to the Father’?” ¹⁸So they were saying, “What is this that He says, ‘A little while’? We do not know what He is talking about.” ¹⁹Jesus knew that they wished to question Him, and He said to them, “Are you deliberating together about this, that I said, ‘A little while, and you will not see Me, and again a little while, and you will see Me’? ²⁰“Truly, truly, I say to you, that you will weep and lament, but the world will rejoice; you will grieve, but your grief will be turned into joy. ²¹“Whenever a woman is in labor she has pain, because her hour has come; but when she gives birth to the child, she no longer remembers the anguish because of the joy that a child has been born into the world. ²²“Therefore you too have grief now; but I will see you again, and your heart will rejoice, and no one *will* take your joy away from you.

²³“In that day you will not question Me about anything. Truly, truly, I say to you, if you ask the Father for anything in My name, He will give it to you. ²⁴“Until now you have asked for nothing in My name; ask and you will receive, so that your joy may be made full.

²⁵“These things I have spoken to you in figurative language; an hour is coming when I will no longer speak to you in figurative language, but will tell you plainly of the Father. ²⁶“In that day you will ask in My name, and I do not say to you that I will request of the Father on your behalf; ²⁷for the Father Himself loves you, because you have loved Me and have believed that I came forth from the Father. ²⁸“I came forth from the Father and have come into the world; I am leaving the world again and going to the Father.”

²⁹His disciples *said, “Lo, now You are speaking plainly and are not using a figure of speech. ³⁰“Now we know that You know all things, and have no need for anyone to question You; by this we believe that You came from God.” ³¹Jesus answered them, “Do you now believe? ³²“Behold, an hour is coming, and has *already* come, for you to be scattered, each to his own *home*, and to leave Me alone; and *yet* I am not alone, because the Father is with Me. ³³“These things I have spoken to you, so that in Me you may have peace. In the world you have tribulation, but take courage; I have overcome the world.”

D. The High Priestly Prayer, § 162, John 17:1-26

1. Concerning Himself, John 17:1-8

¹Jesus spoke these things; and lifting up His eyes to heaven, He said, “Father, the hour has come; glorify Your Son, that the Son may glorify You, ²even as You gave Him authority over all flesh, that to all whom You have given Him, He may give eternal life. ³“This is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent. ⁴“I glorified You on the earth, having accomplished the work which You have given Me to do. ⁵“Now, Father, glorify Me together with Yourself, with the glory which I had with You before the world was. ⁶“I have manifested Your name to the men whom You gave Me out of the world; they were Yours and You gave them to Me, and they have kept Your word. ⁷“Now they have come to know that everything You have given Me is from You; ⁸for the words which You gave Me I have given to them; and they received *them* and truly understood that I came forth from You, and they believed that You sent Me.

2. Concerning the Apostles, John 17:9-19

a. Preservation, John 17:9-14

⁹“I ask on their behalf; I do not ask on behalf of the world, but of those whom You have given Me; for they are Yours; ¹⁰and all things that are Mine are Yours, and Yours are Mine; and I have been glorified in them. ¹¹“I am no longer in the world; and yet they themselves are in the world, and I come to You. Holy Father, keep them in Your name, *the name* which You have given Me, that they may be one even as *We are*. ¹²“While I was with them, I was keeping them in Your name which You have given Me; and I guarded them and not one of them perished but the son of perdition, so that the Scripture would be fulfilled. ¹³“But now I come to You; and these things I speak in the world so that they may have My joy made full in themselves. ¹⁴“I have given them Your word; and the world has hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.

b. Protection, John 17:15-16

¹⁵“I do not ask You to take them out of the world, but to keep them from the evil *one*. ¹⁶“They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.

c. Sanctification, John 17:17-19

¹⁷“Sanctify them in the truth; Your word is truth. ¹⁸“As You sent Me into the world, I also have sent them into the world. ¹⁹“For their sakes I sanctify Myself, that they themselves also may be sanctified in truth.

3. Concerning All Believers, John 17:20-26

a. Unity, John 17:20-23

²⁰“I do not ask on behalf of these alone, but for those also who believe in Me through their word; ²¹that they may all be one; even as You, Father, *are* in Me and I in You, that they also may be in Us, so that the world may believe that You sent Me. ²²“The glory which You have given Me I have given to them, that they may be one, just as *We are one*; ²³I in them and You in Me, that they may be perfected in unity, so that the world may know that You sent Me, and loved them, even as You have loved Me.

b. Glorification, John 17:24

²⁴“Father, I desire that they also, whom You have given Me, be with Me where I am, so that they may see My glory which You have given Me, for You loved Me before the foundation of the world.

4. Concerning His continued work, John 17:25-26

²⁵“O righteous Father, although the world has not known You, yet I have known You; and these have known that You sent Me; ²⁶and I have made Your name known to them, and will make it known, so that the love with which You loved Me may be in them, and I in them.”

E. The Agony of Gethsemane,

§ 163, Matthew 26:36-46; Mark 14:32-42; Luke 22:39-46; John 18:1

[Matthew 26:36a](#)

³⁶Then Jesus *came with them to a place called Gethsemane,

[Mark 14:32a](#)

³²They *came to a place named Gethsemane;

[Luke 22:39](#)

³⁹And He came out and proceeded as was His custom to the Mount of Olives; and the disciples also followed Him.

[John 18:1](#)

¹When Jesus had spoken these words, He went forth with His disciples over the ravine of the Kidron, where there was a garden, in which He entered with His disciples.

[Matthew 26:36b-46](#)

and *said to His disciples, "Sit here while I go over there and pray."

³⁷And He took with Him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be grieved and distressed. ³⁸Then He *said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved, to the point of death; remain here and keep watch with Me."

³⁹And He went a little beyond *them*, and fell on His face and prayed, saying, "My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass from Me; yet not as I will, but as You will."

[Mark 14:32b-42](#)

and He *said to His disciples, "Sit here until I have prayed." ³³And He *took with Him Peter and James and John, and began to be very distressed and troubled. ³⁴And He *said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved to the point of death; remain here and keep watch."

³⁵And He went a little beyond *them*, and fell to the ground and *began* to pray that if it were possible, the hour might pass Him by. ³⁶And He was saying, "Abba! Father! All things are possible for You; remove this cup from Me; yet not what I will, but what You will."

[Luke 22:40-46](#)

⁴⁰When He arrived at the place, He said to them, "Pray that you may not enter into temptation."

⁴¹And He withdrew from them about a stone's throw, and He knelt down and *began* to pray, ⁴²saying, "Father, if You are willing, remove this cup from Me; yet not My will, but Yours be done."

⁴³Now an angel from heaven appeared to Him, strengthening Him. ⁴⁴And being in agony He was praying very fervently; and His sweat became like drops of blood, falling down upon the ground.

⁴⁰And He *came to the disciples and *found them sleeping, and *said to Peter, “So, you *men* could not keep watch with Me for one hour? ⁴¹“Keep watching and praying that you may not enter into temptation; the spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.”

³⁷And He *came and *found them sleeping, and *said to Peter, “Simon, are you asleep? Could you not keep watch for one hour? ³⁸“Keep watching and praying that you may not come into temptation; the spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.”

⁴⁵When He rose from prayer, He came to the disciples and found them sleeping from sorrow, ⁴⁶and said to them, “Why are you sleeping? Get up and pray that you may not enter into temptation.”

⁴²He went away again a second time and prayed, saying, “My Father, if this cannot pass away unless I drink it, Your will be done.”

³⁹Again He went away and prayed, saying the same words.

⁴³Again He came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy.

⁴⁰And again He came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were very heavy; and they did not know what to answer Him.

⁴⁴And He left them again, and went away and prayed a third time, saying the same thing once more.

⁴⁵Then He *came to the disciples and *said to them, “Are you still sleeping and resting?”

⁴¹And He *came the third time, and *said to them, “Are you still sleeping and resting?”

Behold, the hour is at hand and the Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners. ⁴⁶Get up, let us be going; behold, the one who betrays Me is at hand!”

It is enough; the hour has come; behold, the Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners. ⁴²Get up, let us be going; behold, the one who betrays Me is at hand!”

IX THE REJECTION OF THE KING: THE TRIAL AND THE DEATH OF THE MESSIAH, § 164-180

A. The Arrest,

§ 164, Matthew 26:47-56; Mark 14:43-52; Luke 22:47-53; John 18:2-12

[John 18:2](#)

²Now Judas also, who was betraying Him, knew the place, for Jesus had often met there with His disciples.

[Matthew 26:47](#)

⁴⁷While He was still speaking, behold, Judas, one of the twelve, came up accompanied by a large crowd with swords and clubs, *who came* from the chief priests and elders of the people.

[Mark 14:43](#)

⁴³Immediately while He was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, *came up accompanied by a crowd with swords and clubs, *who were* from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders.

[Luke 22:47a](#)

^{47a}While He was still speaking, behold, a crowd *came*, and the one called Judas, one of the twelve, was preceding them;

[John 18:3](#)

³Judas then, having received the *Roman* cohort and officers from the chief priests and the Pharisees, *came there with lanterns and torches and weapons.

[John 18:4-9](#)

⁴So Jesus, knowing all the things that were coming upon Him, went forth and *said to them, "Whom do you seek?" ⁵They answered Him, "Jesus the Nazarene." He *said to them, "I am *He*." And Judas also, who was betraying Him, was standing with them. ⁶So when He said to them, "I am *He*," they drew back and fell to the ground.

⁷Therefore He again asked them, "Whom do you seek?" And they said, "Jesus the Nazarene." ⁸Jesus answered, "I told you that I am *He*; so if you seek Me, let these go their way," ⁹to fulfill the word which He spoke, "Of those whom You have given Me I lost not one."

[Matthew 26:48–56](#)

⁴⁸Now he who was betraying Him gave them a sign, saying, “Whomever I kiss, He is the one; seize Him.”

⁴⁹Immediately Judas went to Jesus and said, “Hail, Rabbi!” and kissed Him.

⁵⁰And Jesus said to him, “Friend, *do* what you have come for.”

Then they came and laid hands on Jesus and seized Him. ⁵¹And behold, one of those who were with Jesus reached and drew out his sword, and struck the slave of the high priest and cut off his ear.

⁵²Then Jesus *said to him, “Put your sword back into its place; for all those who take up the sword shall perish by the sword. ⁵³“Or do you think that I cannot appeal to My Father, and He will at once put at My disposal more than twelve legions of angels? ⁵⁴“How then will the Scriptures be fulfilled, *which say* that it must happen this way?”

[Mark 14:44–52](#)

⁴⁴Now he who was betraying Him had given them a signal, saying, “Whomever I kiss, He is the one; seize Him and lead Him away under guard.”

⁴⁵After coming, Judas immediately went to Him, saying, “Rabbi!” and kissed Him.

⁴⁶They laid hands on Him and seized Him. ⁴⁷But one of those who stood by drew his sword, and struck the slave of the high priest and cut off his ear.

[Luke 22:47b–53](#)

^{47b}and he approached Jesus to kiss Him.

⁴⁸But Jesus said to him, “Judas, are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?”

⁴⁹When those who were around Him saw what was going to happen, they said, “Lord, shall we strike with the sword?” ⁵⁰And one of them struck the slave of the high priest and cut off his right ear.

⁵¹But Jesus answered and said, “Stop! No more of this.”

And He touched his ear and healed him.

[John 18:10–12](#)

¹⁰Simon Peter then, having a sword, drew it and struck the high priest’s slave, and cut off his right ear; and the slave’s name was Malchus.

¹¹So Jesus said to Peter, “Put the sword into the sheath; the cup which the Father has given Me, shall I not drink it?”

[Matthew 26:48–56 \(cont.\)](#)

⁵⁵At that time Jesus said to the crowds, “Have you come out with swords and clubs to arrest Me as *you would* against a robber? Every day I used to sit in the temple teaching and you did not seize Me. ⁵⁶“But all this has taken place to fulfill the Scriptures of the prophets.”

Then all the disciples left Him and fled.

[Mark 14:44–52 \(cont.\)](#)

⁴⁸And Jesus said to them, “Have you come out with swords and clubs to arrest Me, as *you would* against a robber? ⁴⁹“Every day I was with you in the temple teaching, and you did not seize Me; but *this has taken place* to fulfill the Scriptures.”

⁵⁰And they all left Him and fled.

⁵¹A young man was following Him, wearing *nothing but* a linen sheet over *his* naked *body*; and they *seized him. ⁵²But he pulled free of the linen sheet and escaped naked.

[Luke 22:47–53 \(cont.\)](#)

⁵²Then Jesus said to the chief priests and officers of the temple and elders who had come against Him, “Have you come out with swords and clubs as you would against a robber? ⁵³“While I was with you daily in the temple, you did not lay hands on Me; but this hour and the power of darkness are yours.”

[John 18:10–12 \(cont.\)](#)

¹²So the *Roman* cohort and the commander and the officers of the Jews, arrested Jesus and bound Him,

B. The Religious Trial, § 165-170

1. The Trial Before Annas, § 165, John 18:12-14, 19-23

[John 18:12-14, 19-23](#)

¹²So the *Roman* cohort and the commander and the officers of the Jews, arrested Jesus and bound Him, ¹³and led Him to Annas first; for he was father-in-law of Caiaphas, who was high priest that year. ¹⁴Now Caiaphas was the one who had advised the Jews that it was expedient for one man to die on behalf of the people.

¹⁹The high priest then questioned Jesus about His disciples, and about His teaching. ²⁰Jesus answered him, "I have spoken openly to the world; I always taught in synagogues and in the temple, where all the Jews come together; and I spoke nothing in secret. ²¹"Why do you question Me? Question those who have heard what I spoke to them; they know what I said." ²²When He had said this, one of the officers standing nearby struck Jesus, saying, "Is that the way You answer the high priest?" ²³Jesus answered him, "If I have spoken wrongly, testify of the wrong; but if rightly, why do you strike Me?"

2. The Trial Before Caiaphas, § 166, Matthew 26:59-68; Mark 14:53, 55-65; Luke 22:54a; John 18:24

[Matthew 26:57](#)

⁵⁷Those who had seized Jesus led Him away to Caiaphas, the high priest, where the scribes and the elders were gathered together.

[Mark 14:53](#)

⁵³They led Jesus away to the high priest; and all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes *gathered together.

[Luke 22:54a](#)

⁵⁴Having arrested Him, they led Him *away* and brought Him to the house of the high priest;

[John 18:24](#)

²⁴So Annas sent Him bound to Caiaphas the high priest.

[Matthew 26:59-68](#)

⁵⁹Now the chief priests and the whole Council kept trying to obtain false testimony against Jesus, so that they might put Him to death. ⁶⁰They did not find *any*, even though many false witnesses came forward. But later on two came forward, ⁶¹and said, "This man stated, 'I am able to destroy the temple of God and to rebuild it in three days.' "

⁶²The high priest stood up and said to Him, "Do You not answer? What is it that these men are testifying against You?" ⁶³But Jesus kept silent.

And the high priest said to Him, "I adjure You by the living God, that You tell us whether You are the Christ, the Son of God." ⁶⁴Jesus *said to him, "You have said it *yourself*; nevertheless I tell you, hereafter you will see THE SON OF MAN SITTING AT THE RIGHT HAND OF POWER, and COMING ON THE CLOUDS OF HEAVEN."

⁶⁵Then the high priest tore his robes and said, "He has blasphemed! What further need do we have of witnesses? Behold, you have now heard the blasphemy; ⁶⁶what do you think?" They answered, "He deserves death!"

⁶⁷Then they spat in His face and beat Him with their fists; and others slapped Him, ⁶⁸and said, "Prophecy to us, You Christ; who is the one who hit You?"

[Mark 14:55-65](#)

⁵⁵Now the chief priests and the whole Council kept trying to obtain testimony against Jesus to put Him to death, and they were not finding any. ⁵⁶For many were giving false testimony against Him, but their testimony was not consistent. ⁵⁷Some stood up and *began* to give false testimony against Him, saying, ⁵⁸"We heard Him say, 'I will destroy this temple made with hands, and in three days I will build another made without hands.' " ⁵⁹Not even in this respect was their testimony consistent.

⁶⁰The high priest stood up *and came* forward and questioned Jesus, saying, "Do You not answer? What is it that these men are testifying against You?" ⁶¹But He kept silent and did not answer.

Again the high priest was questioning Him, and saying to Him, "Are You the Christ, the Son of the Blessed *One*?" ⁶²And Jesus said, "I am; and you shall see THE SON OF MAN SITTING AT THE RIGHT HAND OF POWER, and COMING WITH THE CLOUDS OF HEAVEN."

⁶³Tearing his clothes, the high priest *said, "What further need do we have of witnesses? ⁶⁴"You have heard the blasphemy; how does it seem to you?" And they all condemned Him to be deserving of death.

⁶⁵Some began to spit at Him, and to blindfold Him, and to beat Him with their fists, and to say to Him, "Prophecy!" And the officers received Him with slaps *in the face*.

3. The Denial by Peter,

§ 167, Matthew 26:58, 69-75; Mark 14:54, 66-72; Luke 22:54b-62; John 18:15-18, 25-27

[Matthew 26:58, 69-75](#)

⁵⁸But Peter was following Him at a distance as far as the courtyard of the high priest, and entered in, and sat down with the officers to see the outcome.

[Mark 14:54, 66-72](#)

⁵⁴Peter had followed Him at a distance, right into the courtyard of the high priest; and he was sitting with the officers and warming himself at the fire.

[Luke 22:54b-62](#)

^{54b}but Peter was following at a distance.

[John 18:15-18, 25-27](#)

¹⁵Simon Peter was following Jesus, and *so was* another disciple. Now that disciple was known to the high priest, and entered with Jesus into the court of the high priest, ¹⁶but Peter was standing at the door outside. So the other disciple, who was known to the high priest, went out and spoke to the doorkeeper, and brought Peter in.

⁶⁹Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard, and a servant-girl came to him and said, "You too were with Jesus the Galilean." ⁷⁰But he denied *it* before them all, saying, "I do not know what you are talking about."

⁶⁶As Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant-girls of the high priest ⁶⁷came, and seeing Peter warming himself, she looked at him and ⁶⁸said, "You also were with Jesus the Nazarene." ⁶⁸But he denied *it*, saying, "I neither know nor understand what you are talking about." And he went out onto the porch. [Later manuscripts add, *and a rooster crowed.*]

⁵⁵After they had kindled a fire in the middle of the courtyard and had sat down together, Peter was sitting among them. ⁵⁶And a servant-girl, seeing him as he sat in the firelight and looking intently at him, said, "This man was with Him too." ⁵⁷But he denied *it*, saying, "Woman, I do not know Him."

¹⁷Then the slave-girl who kept the door ¹⁸said to Peter, "You are not also *one* of this man's disciples, are you?" He ¹⁸said, "I am not." ¹⁸Now the slaves and the officers were standing *there*, having made a charcoal fire, for it was cold and they were warming themselves; and Peter was also with them, standing and warming himself.

⁷¹When he had gone out to the gateway, another *servant-girl* saw him and ⁷²said to those who were there, "This man was with Jesus of Nazareth."

⁷²And again he denied *it* with an oath, "I do not know the man."

⁶⁹The servant-girl saw him, and began once more to say to the bystanders, "This is *one* of them!" ⁷⁰But again he denied it.

⁵⁸A little later, another saw him and said, "You are *one* of them too!" But Peter said, "Man, I am not!"

²⁵Now Simon Peter was standing and warming himself. So they said to him, "You are not also *one* of His disciples, are you?" He denied *it*, and said, "I am not."

[Matthew 26:58, 69–75 \(cont.\)](#)

⁷³A little later the bystanders came up and said to Peter, “Surely you too are *one* of them; for even the way you talk gives you away.” ⁷⁴Then he began to curse and swear, “I do not know the man!”

And immediately a rooster crowed. ⁷⁵And Peter remembered the word which Jesus had said, “Before a rooster crows, you will deny Me three times.” And he went out and wept bitterly.

[Mark 14:54, 66–72 \(cont.\)](#)

And after a little while the bystanders were again saying to Peter, “Surely you are *one* of them, for you are a Galilean too.” ⁷¹But he began to curse and swear, “I do not know this man you are talking about!”

⁷²Immediately a rooster crowed a second time. And Peter remembered how Jesus had made the remark to him, “Before a rooster crows twice, you will deny Me three times.” And he began to weep.

[Luke 22:54–62 \(cont.\)](#)

⁵⁹After about an hour had passed, another man *began* to insist, saying, “Certainly this man also was with Him, for he is a Galilean too.” ⁶⁰But Peter said, “Man, I do not know what you are talking about.”

Immediately, while he was still speaking, a rooster crowed. ⁶¹The Lord turned and looked at Peter. And Peter remembered the word of the Lord, how He had told him, “Before a rooster crows today, you will deny Me three times.” ⁶²And he went out and wept bitterly.

[John 18:15–18, 25–27 \(cont.\)](#)

²⁶One of the slaves of the high priest, being a relative of the one whose ear Peter cut off, ^{*}said, “Did I not see you in the garden with Him?” ²⁷Peter then denied *it* again,

and immediately a rooster crowed.

4. The Mockery and Beating, § 168, Luke 22:63-65

[Luke 22:63-65](#)

⁶³Now the men who were holding Jesus in custody were mocking Him and beating Him, ⁶⁴and they blindfolded Him and were asking Him, saying, “Prophesy, who is the one who hit You?” ⁶⁵And they were saying many other things against Him, blaspheming.

**5. The Condemnation by the Sanhedrin,
§ 169,
Matthew 27:1; Luke 22:66-71; Mark 15:1a**

[Matthew 27:1](#)

¹Now when morning came, all the chief priests and the elders of the people conferred together against Jesus to put Him to death;

[Mark 15:1a](#)

¹Early in the morning the chief priests with the elders and scribes and the whole Council, immediately held a consultation;

[Luke 22:66a](#)

^{66a}When it was day, the Council of elders of the people assembled, both chief priests and scribes,

[Luke 22:66b-71](#)

^{66b}and they led Him away to their council *chamber*, saying,

⁶⁷“If You are the Christ, tell us.” But He said to them, “If I tell you, you will not believe; ⁶⁸and if I ask a question, you will not answer. ⁶⁹“But from now ON THE SON OF MAN WILL BE SEATED AT THE RIGHT HAND OF THE power OF GOD.”

⁷⁰And they all said, “Are You the Son of God, then?” And He said to them, “Yes, I am.” ⁷¹Then they said, “What further need do we have of testimony? For we have heard it ourselves from His own mouth.”

**6. The Death of Judas,
§ 170, Matthew 27:3-10; Acts 1:18-19**

[Matthew 27:3–10](#)

³Then when Judas, who had betrayed Him, saw that He had been condemned, he felt remorse and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders, ⁴saying, “I have sinned by betraying innocent blood.” But they said, “What is that to us? See *to that yourself!*” ⁵And he threw the pieces of silver into the temple sanctuary and departed; and he went away and hanged himself.

⁶The chief priests took the pieces of silver and said, “It is not lawful to put them into the temple treasury, since it is the price of blood.”

⁷And they conferred together and with the money bought the Potter’s Field as a burial place for strangers.

⁸For this reason that field has been called the Field of Blood to this day.

⁹Then that which was spoken through Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled: “AND THEY TOOK THE THIRTY PIECES OF SILVER, THE PRICE OF THE ONE WHOSE PRICE HAD BEEN SET by the sons of Israel; ¹⁰AND THEY GAVE THEM FOR THE POTTER’S FIELD, AS THE LORD DIRECTED ME.”

[Acts 1:18–19](#)

¹⁸(Now this man acquired a field with the price of his wickedness, and falling headlong, he burst open in the middle and all his intestines gushed out. ¹⁹And it became known to all who were living in Jerusalem;

so that in their own language that field was called Hakeldama, that is, Field of Blood.)

C. The Civil Trial, § 171-174

1. The First Trial before Pilate, § 171,

Matthew 27:2, 11-14; Mark 15:1b-5; Luke 23:1-5; John 18:28-38

[Matthew 27:2, 11a](#)

[Mark 15:1b-2a](#)

[Luke 23:1-3a](#)

[John 18:28-33](#)

²and they bound Him, and led Him away and delivered Him to Pilate the governor.

and binding Jesus, they led Him away and delivered Him to Pilate.

¹Then the whole body of them got up and brought Him before Pilate.

²⁸Then they *led Jesus from Caiaphas into the Praetorium, and it was early; and they themselves did not enter into the Praetorium so that they would not be defiled, but might eat the Passover.

²⁹Therefore Pilate went out to them and *said, "What accusation do you bring against this Man?" ³⁰They answered and said to him, "If this Man were not an evildoer, we would not have delivered Him to you."

³¹So Pilate said to them, "Take Him yourselves, and judge Him according to your law." The Jews said to him, "We are not permitted to put anyone to death," ³²to fulfill the word of Jesus which He spoke, signifying by what kind of death He was about to die.

²And they began to accuse Him, saying, "We found this man misleading our nation and forbidding to pay taxes to Caesar, and saying that He Himself is Christ, a King."

^{11a}Now Jesus stood before the governor, and the governor questioned Him, saying, "Are You the King of the Jews?"

²Pilate questioned Him, "Are You the King of the Jews?"

³So Pilate asked Him, saying, "Are You the King of the Jews?"

³³Therefore Pilate entered again into the Praetorium, and summoned Jesus and said to Him, "Are You the King of the Jews?"

[John 18:34-37a](#)

³⁴Jesus answered, "Are you saying this on your own initiative, or did others tell you about Me?"

³⁵Pilate answered, "I am not a Jew, am I? Your own nation and the chief priests delivered You to me; what have You done?"

³⁶Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of this world. If My kingdom were of this world, then My servants would be fighting so that I would not be handed over to the Jews; but as it is, My kingdom is not of this realm."

^{37a}Therefore Pilate said to Him, "So You are a king?"

[Matthew 27:11b – 14](#)

^{11b} And Jesus said to him, "It is as you say."

[Mark 15:2b – 5](#)

^{2b} And He *answered him, "It is as you say."

[Luke 23:3b – 5](#)

^{3b} And He answered him and said, "It is as you say."

[John 18:37b – 38](#)

^{37b} Jesus answered, "You say *correctly* that I am a king.

^{37c} For this I have been born, and for this I have come into the world, to testify to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice."

^{38a} Pilate *said to Him, "What is truth?"

⁴ Then Pilate said to the chief priests and the crowds, "I find no guilt in this man."

^{38b} And when he had said this, he went out again to the Jews and *said to them, "I find no guilt in Him.

¹² And while He was being accused by the chief priests and elders, He did not answer.

³ The chief priests *began* to accuse Him harshly.

⁵ But they kept on insisting, saying, "He stirs up the people, teaching all over Judea, starting from Galilee even as far as this place."

¹³ Then Pilate *said to Him, "Do You not hear how many things they testify against You?" ¹⁴ And He did not answer him with regard to even a *single* charge, so the governor was quite amazed.

⁴ Then Pilate questioned Him again, saying, "Do You not answer? See how many charges they bring against You!" ⁵ But Jesus made no further answer; so Pilate was amazed.

**2. The Trial before Herod,
§ 172, Luke 23:6-12**

[Luke 23:6–12](#)

⁶When Pilate heard it, he asked whether the man was a Galilean. ⁷And when he learned that He belonged to Herod's jurisdiction, he sent Him to Herod, who himself also was in Jerusalem at that time.

⁸Now Herod was very glad when he saw Jesus; for he had wanted to see Him for a long time, because he had been hearing about Him and was hoping to see some sign performed by Him. ⁹And he questioned Him at some length; but He answered him nothing. ¹⁰And the chief priests and the scribes were standing there, accusing Him vehemently. ¹¹And Herod with his soldiers, after treating Him with contempt and mocking Him, dressed Him in a gorgeous robe and sent Him back to Pilate. ¹²Now Herod and Pilate became friends with one another that very day; for before they had been enemies with each other.

3. The Second Trial before Pilate, § 173,

Matthew 27:15-26; Mark 15:6-15; Luke 23:13-25; John 18:39-40; 19:1-16

a. First attempt to release Him

Luke 23:13-16

¹³Pilate summoned the chief priests and the rulers and the people, ¹⁴and said to them, “You brought this man to me as one who incites the people to rebellion, and behold, having examined Him before you, I have found no guilt in this man regarding the charges which you make against Him. ¹⁵“No, nor has Herod, for he sent Him back to us; and behold, nothing deserving death has been done by Him.

¹⁶“Therefore I will punish Him and release Him.”

b. Second attempt to release Him

Matthew 27:15-18

¹⁵Now at *the* feast the governor was accustomed to release for the people *any* one prisoner whom they wanted.

¹⁶At that time they were holding a notorious prisoner, called Barabbas.

¹⁷So when the people gathered together, Pilate said to them, “Whom do you want me to release for you? Barabbas, or Jesus who is called Christ?” ¹⁸For he knew that because of envy they had handed Him over.

Mark 15:6-10

⁶Now at *the* feast he used to release for them *any* one prisoner whom they requested.

⁷The man named Barabbas had been imprisoned with the insurrectionists who had committed murder in the insurrection.

⁸The crowd went up and began asking him *to do* as he had been accustomed to do for them.

⁹Pilate answered them, saying, “Do you want me to release for you the King of the Jews?” ¹⁰For he was aware that the chief priests had handed Him over because of envy.

Luke 23:17,19

¹⁷[Now he was obliged to release to them at the feast one prisoner.]

¹⁹(He was one who had been thrown into prison for an insurrection made in the city, and for murder.)

John 18:39

^{39a}“But you have a custom that I release someone for you at the Passover;

^{39b}do you wish then that I release for you the King of the Jews?”

[Matthew 27:19–22](#)

¹⁹While he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent him *a message*, saying, “Have nothing to do with that righteous Man; for last night I suffered greatly in a dream because of Him.”

[Mark 15:11–13](#)

²⁰But the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowds to ask for Barabbas and to put Jesus to death.

¹¹But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to *ask* him to release Barabbas for them instead.

[Luke 23:18, 20–21](#)

²¹But the governor said to them, “Which of the two do you want me to release for you?” And they said, “Barabbas.”

¹⁸But they cried out all together, saying, “Away with this man, and release for us Barabbas!”

[John 18:40](#)

⁴⁰So they cried out again, saying, “Not this Man, but Barabbas.” Now Barabbas was a robber.

²²Pilate ^{*}said to them, “Then what shall I do with Jesus who is called Christ?” They all ^{*}said, “Crucify Him!”

¹²Answering again, Pilate said to them, “Then what shall I do with Him whom you call the King of the Jews?” ¹³They shouted back, “Crucify Him!”

²⁰Pilate, wanting to release Jesus, addressed them again, ²¹but they kept on calling out, saying, “Crucify, crucify Him!”

c. *Third attempt to release Him*

[Matthew 27:23a](#)

^{23a}And he said, “Why, what evil has He done?”

[Mark 15:14a](#)

^{14a}But Pilate said to them, “Why, what evil has He done?”

[Luke 23:22](#)

²²And he said to them the third time, “Why, what evil has this man done?”

[John 18:19:1](#)

I have found in Him no guilt demanding death; therefore I will punish Him and release Him.”

^{19:1}Pilate then took Jesus and scourged Him.

[John 19:2-6a](#)

²And the soldiers twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on His head, and put a purple robe on Him;
³and they *began* to come up to Him and say, “Hail, King of the Jews!” and to give Him slaps *in the face*.

⁴Pilate came out again and *said to them, “Behold, I am bringing Him out to you so that you may know that I find no guilt in Him.”

⁵Jesus then came out, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe. *Pilate* *said to them, “Behold, the Man!”

^{6a}So when the chief priests and the officers saw Him, they cried out saying, “Crucify, crucify!”

d. Fourth attempt to release Him[John 19:6b-11](#)

^{6b}Pilate *said to them, “Take Him yourselves and crucify Him, for I find no guilt in Him.”

⁷The Jews answered him, “We have a law, and by that law He ought to die because He made Himself out *to be* the Son of God.”

⁸Therefore when Pilate heard this statement, he was *even* more afraid; ⁹and he entered into the Praetorium again and *said to Jesus, “Where are You from?” But Jesus gave him no answer. ¹⁰So Pilate *said to Him, “You do not speak to me? Do You not know that I have authority to release You, and I have authority to crucify You?” ¹¹Jesus answered, “You would have no authority over Me, unless it had been given you from above; for this reason he who delivered Me to you has *the* greater sin.”

e. Fifth attempt to release Him[John 19:12](#)

¹²As a result of this Pilate made efforts to release Him, but the Jews cried out saying, “If you release this Man, you are no friend of Caesar; everyone who makes himself out *to be* a king opposes Caesar.”

f. Sixth attempt to release Him[John 19:13-14](#)

¹³Therefore when Pilate heard these words, he brought Jesus out, and sat down on the judgment seat at a place called The Pavement, but in Hebrew, Gabbatha. ¹⁴Now it was the day of preparation for the Passover; it was about the sixth hour.

And he *said to the Jews, “Behold, your King!”

g. Sentence pronounced

[Matthew 27:23b-26](#)

^{23b}But they kept shouting all the more, saying, "Crucify Him!"

²⁴ When Pilate saw that he was accomplishing nothing, but rather that a riot was starting,

he took water and washed his hands in front of the crowd, saying, "I am innocent of this Man's blood; see to that yourselves."

²⁵And all the people said, "His blood shall be on us and on our children!"

²⁶Then he released Barabbas for them;

but after having Jesus scourged, he handed Him over to be crucified.

[Mark 15:14b-15](#)

^{14b}But they shouted all the more, "Crucify Him!"

¹⁵ Wishing to satisfy the crowd,

Pilate released Barabbas for them,

and after having Jesus scourged, he handed Him over to be crucified.

[Luke 23:23-25](#)

²³ But they were insistent, with loud voices asking that He be crucified.

²³ And their voices began to prevail.

²⁴And Pilate pronounced sentence that their demand be granted.

²⁵And he released the man they were asking for who had been thrown into prison for insurrection and murder,

but he delivered Jesus to their will.

[John 19:15-16](#)

¹⁵So they cried out, "Away with Him, away with Him, crucify Him!" Pilate *said to them, "Shall I crucify your King?" The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Caesar."

¹⁶So he then handed Him over to them to be crucified.

4. The Mockery,
§ 174, Matthew 27:27-30 ; Mark 15:16-19

[Matthew 27:27–30](#)

²⁷Then the soldiers of the governor took Jesus into the Praetorium and gathered the whole *Roman* cohort around Him. ²⁸They stripped Him and put a scarlet robe on Him. ²⁹And after twisting together a crown of thorns, they put it on His head, and a reed in His right hand; and they knelt down before Him and mocked Him, saying, “Hail, King of the Jews!” ³⁰They spat on Him, and took the reed and *began* to beat Him on the head.

[Mark 15:16–19](#)

¹⁶The soldiers took Him away into the palace (that is, the Praetorium), and they *called together the whole *Roman* cohort. ¹⁷They *dressed Him up in purple, and after twisting a crown of thorns, they put it on Him; ¹⁸and they began to acclaim Him, “Hail, King of the Jews!” ¹⁹They kept beating His head with a reed, and spitting on Him, and kneeling and bowing before Him.

D. The Procession to Calvary,

§ 175,

Matthew 27:31-34; Mark 15:20-23; Luke 23:26-33a; John 19:17

1) *He carries His own cross*

[Matthew 27:31-32](#)

³¹After they had mocked Him, they took the *scarlet* robe off Him and put His *own* garments back on Him, and led Him away to crucify Him.

[Mark 15:20-21](#)

²⁰After they had mocked Him, they took the purple robe off Him and put His *own* garments on Him. And they *led Him out to crucify Him.

[John 19: 17a](#)

¹⁷They took Jesus, therefore, and He went out, bearing His own cross,

2) *Simon of Cyrene carries His cross*

[Matthew 27:32](#)

³²As they were coming out, they found a man of Cyrene named Simon, whom they pressed into service to bear His cross.

[Mark 15:21](#)

²¹They *pressed into service a passer-by coming from the country, Simon of Cyrene (the father of Alexander and Rufus), to bear His cross.

[Luke 23:26](#)

²⁶When they led Him away, they seized a man, Simon of Cyrene, coming in from the country, and placed on him the cross to carry behind Jesus.

3) *The Lament over Jerusalem*

[Luke 23:27-31](#)

²⁷And following Him was a large crowd of the people, and of women who were mourning and lamenting Him. ²⁸But Jesus turning to them said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, stop weeping for Me, but weep for yourselves and for your children. ²⁹"For behold, the days are coming when they will say, 'Blessed are the barren, and the wombs that never bore, and the breasts that never nursed.' ³⁰"Then they will begin TO SAY TO THE MOUNTAINS, 'FALL ON US,' AND TO THE HILLS, 'COVER US.' ³¹"For if they do these things when the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?"

4) *The arrival at Golgotha*

[Matthew 27:33](#)

³³And when they came to a place called Golgotha, which means Place of a Skull,

[Mark 15:22](#)

²²Then they *brought Him to the place Golgotha, which is translated, Place of a Skull.

[Luke 23:32-33a](#)

³²Two others also, who were criminals, were being led away to be put to death with Him. ³³When they came to the place called The Skull,

[John 19:17b](#)

^{17b}to the place called the Place of a Skull, which is called in Hebrew, Golgotha.

5) *The refusal to drink a mixture*

[Matthew 27:34](#)

³⁴they gave Him wine to drink mixed with gall; and after tasting *it*, He was unwilling to drink.

[Mark 15:23](#)

²³They tried to give Him wine mixed with myrrh; but He did not take it.

E. The Crucifixion, § 176-178

1. The First Three Hours: The Wrath of Men, § 176,

[Matthew 27:35-44, 55-56; Mark 15:24-32, 40-41; Luke 23:33b-43; John 19:18-27](#)

6) *The crucifixion*

[Matthew 27:35](#)

³⁵And when they had crucified Him,

[Mark 15:24a, 25](#)

^{24a}And they *crucified Him, ...

²⁵It was the third hour when they crucified Him.

[Luke 23:33b](#)

^{23b} there they crucified Him and the criminals, one on the right and the other on the left.

[John 19:18](#)

¹⁸There they crucified Him, and with Him two other men, one on either side, and Jesus in between.

7) *The first statement from the cross*

[Luke 23:34a](#)

^{34a}But Jesus was saying, "Father, forgive them; for they do not know what they are doing."

8) *The dividing of the garments*

[Matthew 27:35b](#)

^{35b} they divided up His garments among themselves by casting lots.

[Mark 15:24b](#)

^{24b} and *divided up His garments among themselves, casting lots for them *to decide* what each man should take.

[Luke 23:34b](#)

^{34b} And they cast lots, dividing up His garments among themselves.

[John 19:23-24](#)

²³Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took His outer garments and made four parts, a part to every soldier and *also* the tunic; now the tunic was seamless, woven in one piece. ²⁴So they said to one another, "Let us not tear it, but cast lots for it, *to decide* whose it shall be"; *this was* to fulfill the Scripture: "THEY DIVIDED MY OUTER GARMENTS AMONG THEM, AND FOR MY CLOTHING

9) *The erection of the superscription*

[Matthew 27:36-37](#)

³⁶And sitting down, they *began* to keep watch over Him there. ³⁷And above His head they put up the charge against Him which read, “THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS.”

[Mark 15:26](#)

²⁶The inscription of the charge against Him read, “THE KING OF THE JEWS.”

[Luke 23:38](#)

³⁸Now there was also an inscription above Him, “THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS.”

[John 19:19-22](#)

¹⁹Pilate also wrote an inscription and put it on the cross. It was written, “JESUS THE NAZARENE, THE KING OF THE JEWS.”

²⁰Therefore many of the Jews read this inscription, for the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city; and it was written in Hebrew, Latin *and* in Greek. ²¹So the chief priests of the Jews were saying to Pilate, “Do not write, ‘The King of the Jews’; but that He said, ‘I am King of the Jews.’ ” ²²Pilate answered, “What I have written I have written.”

10) *The co-crucifixion of two other men*

[Matthew 27:38](#)

³⁸At that time two robbers *were crucified with Him, one on the right and one on the left.

[Mark 15:27-28](#)

²⁷They *crucified two robbers with Him, one on His right and one on His left. ²⁸[And the Scripture was fulfilled which says, “And He was numbered with transgressors.”]

11) *The fifth mockery – by passers by*

[Matthew 27:39-40](#)

³⁹And those passing by were hurling abuse at Him, wagging their heads ⁴⁰and saying, “You who *are going to* destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, save Yourself! If You are the Son of God, come down from the cross.”

[Mark 15:29-30](#)

²⁹Those passing by were hurling abuse at Him, wagging their heads, and saying, “Ha! You who *are going to* destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, ³⁰save Yourself, and come down from the cross!”

12) *The sixth mockery – by Jewish leaders*

[Matthew 27:41-43](#)

⁴¹In the same way the chief priests also, along with the scribes and elders, were mocking *Him* and saying, ⁴²“He saved others; He cannot save Himself. He is the King of Israel; let Him now come down from the cross, and we will believe in Him. ⁴³“HE TRUSTS IN GOD; LET GOD RESCUE *Him* now, IF HE DELIGHTS IN HIM; for He said, ‘I am the Son of God.’”

[Mark 15:31-32a](#)

³¹In the same way the chief priests also, along with the scribes, were mocking *Him* among themselves and saying, “He saved others; He cannot save Himself. ³²“Let *this* Christ, the King of Israel, now come down from the cross, so that we may see and believe!”

[Luke 23:35](#)

³⁵And the people stood by, looking on. And even the rulers were sneering at Him, saying, “He saved others; let Him save Himself if this is the Christ of God, His Chosen One.”

13) *The seventh mockery – by Roman soldiers*

[Luke 23:36-37](#)

³⁶The soldiers also mocked Him, coming up to Him, offering Him sour wine, ³⁷and saying, “If You are the King of the Jews, save Yourself!”

14) *The eighth mockery – by the co-crucified robbers*

[Matthew 27:44](#)

⁴⁴The robbers who had been crucified with Him were also insulting Him with the same words.

[Mark 15:32b](#)

^{32b} Those who were crucified with Him were also insulting Him.

[Luke 23:39](#)

³⁹One of the criminals who were hanged *there* was hurling abuse at Him, saying, “Are You not the Christ? Save Yourself and us!”

15) *Conversion of the man co-crucified with Him*

[Luke 23: 40-42](#)

⁴⁰But the other answered, and rebuking him said, “Do you not even fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation? ⁴¹“And we indeed *are suffering* justly, for we are receiving what we deserve for our deeds; but this man has done nothing wrong.” ⁴²And he was saying, “Jesus, remember me when You come in Your kingdom!”

16) *The second statement from the cross*

[Luke 23:43](#)

⁴³And He said to him, “Truly I say to you, today you shall be with Me in Paradise.”

17) *The third statement from the cross*

[Matthew 27:55-56](#)

⁵⁵Many women were there looking on from a distance, who had followed Jesus from Galilee while ministering to Him. ⁵⁶Among them was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James and Joseph, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee.

[Mark 15:40-41](#)

⁴⁰There were also *some* women looking on from a distance, among whom *were* Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James the Less and Joses, and Salome. ⁴¹When He was in Galilee, they used to follow Him and minister to Him; and *there were* many other women who came up with Him to Jerusalem.

[John 19:25-27](#)

²⁵Therefore the soldiers did these things. **But** standing by the cross of Jesus were His mother, and His mother's sister, Mary the *wife* of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene.

²⁶When Jesus then saw His mother, and the disciple whom He loved standing nearby, He ^{*}said to His mother, "Woman, behold, your son!" ²⁷Then He ^{*}said to the disciple, "Behold, your mother!" From that hour the disciple took her into his own *household*.

2. The Second Three Hours: The Wrath of God, § 177,

[Matthew 27:45-50](#); [Mark 15:33-37](#); [Luke 23:44-46](#); [John 19:28-30](#)

18) *Darkness covered the whole land*

[Matthew 27:45](#)

⁴⁵Now from the sixth hour darkness fell upon all the land until the ninth hour.

[Mark 15:33](#)

³³When the sixth hour came, darkness fell over the whole land until the ninth hour.

[Luke 23:44-45a](#)

⁴⁴It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness fell over the whole land until the ninth hour, ^{45a}because the sun was obscured;

19) *The fourth statement from the cross - Eli, Eli, Lama Sabachthani*

[Matthew 27:46](#)

⁴⁶About the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, saying, "ELI, ELI, LAMA SABACHTHANI?" that is, "MY GOD, MY GOD, WHY HAVE YOU FORSAKEN ME?"

[Mark 15:34](#)

³⁴At the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, "ELOI, ELOI, LAMA SABACHTHANI?" which is translated, "MY GOD, MY GOD, WHY HAVE YOU FORSAKEN ME?"

20) *The response of those standing by*

[Matthew 27:47-49](#)

⁴⁷And some of those who were standing there, when they heard it, *began* saying, "This man is calling for Elijah." ⁴⁸Immediately one of them ran, and taking a sponge, he filled it with sour wine and put it on a reed, and gave Him a drink. ⁴⁹But the rest of *them* said, "Let us see whether Elijah will come to save Him."

[Mark 15:35-36](#)

³⁵When some of the bystanders heard it, they *began* saying, "Behold, He is calling for Elijah." ³⁶Someone ran and filled a sponge with sour wine, put it on a reed, and gave Him a drink, saying, "Let us see whether Elijah will come to take Him down."

21) *Fifth statement from the cross – I thirst*

[John 19:28](#)

²⁸After this, Jesus, knowing that all things had already been accomplished, to fulfill the Scripture, *said, “I am thirsty.”

22) *He partakes of the vinegar*

[John 19:29](#)

²⁹A jar full of sour wine was standing there; so they put a sponge full of the sour wine upon *a branch of hyssop* and brought it up to His mouth.

23) *The sixth statement from the cross – It is finished*

[John 19:30a](#)

³⁰Therefore when Jesus had received the sour wine, He said, “It is finished!”

24) *The seventh statement from the cross - Father, INTO YOUR HANDS I COMMIT MY SPIRIT*

[Matthew 27:50a](#)

[Mark 15:37a](#)

[Luke 23:46a](#)

⁵⁰And Jesus cried out again with a loud voice,

³⁷And Jesus uttered a loud cry,

⁴⁶And Jesus, crying out with a loud voice, said, “Father, INTO YOUR HANDS I COMMIT MY SPIRIT.”

25) *His physical death*

[Matthew 27:50b](#)

[Mark 15:37b](#)

[Luke 23:46b](#)

[John 19:30b](#)

and yielded up His spirit.

and breathed His last.

Having said this, He breathed His last.

And He bowed His head and gave up His spirit.

**3. The Accompanying Signs,
§ 178,
Matthew 27:51-54; Mark 15:38-39; Luke 23:45b, 47-49**

26) The Accompanying Signs

Matthew 27:51–54

⁵¹And behold, the veil of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom;

and the earth shook and the rocks were split.

⁵²The tombs were opened, and many bodies of the saints who had fallen asleep were raised; ⁵³and coming out of the tombs after His resurrection they entered the holy city and appeared to many.

⁵⁴Now the centurion, and those who were with him keeping guard over Jesus, when they saw the earthquake and the things that were happening, became very frightened and said, “Truly this was the Son of God!”

Mark 15:38–39

³⁸And the veil of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom.

³⁹When the centurion, who was standing right in front of Him, saw the way He breathed His last, he said, “Truly this man was the Son of God!”

Luke 23:45b, 47–49

^{45b} and the veil of the temple was torn in two.

⁴⁷Now when the centurion saw what had happened, he *began* praising God, saying, “Certainly this man was innocent.”

⁴⁸And all the crowds who came together for this spectacle, when they observed what had happened, *began* to return, beating their breasts.

⁴⁹And all His acquaintances and the women who accompanied Him from Galilee were standing at a distance, seeing these things.

F. The Burial of the Messiah,

§ 179,

Matthew 27:57-60; Mark 15:42-46; Luke 23:50-54; John 19:31-42

27) *The piercing of Jesus*

[John 19:31–37](#)

³¹Then the Jews, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies would not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and *that* they might be taken away. ³²So the soldiers came, and broke the legs of the first man and of the other who was crucified with Him; ³³but coming to Jesus, when they saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs. ³⁴But one of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out. ³⁵And he who has seen has testified, and his testimony is true; and he knows that he is telling the truth, so that you also may believe. ³⁶For these things came to pass to fulfill the Scripture, “NOT A BONE OF HIM SHALL BE BROKEN.” ³⁷And again another Scripture says, “THEY SHALL LOOK ON HIM WHOM THEY PIERCED.”

28) *The request for the body of Jesus*

[Matthew 27:57–58](#)

⁵⁷When it was evening, there came a rich man from Arimathea, named Joseph, who himself had also become a disciple of Jesus. ⁵⁸This man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus.

Then Pilate ordered it to be given *to him*.

[Mark 15:42–45](#)

⁴²When evening had already come, because it was the preparation day, that is, the day before the Sabbath, ⁴³Joseph of Arimathea came, a prominent member of the Council, who himself was waiting for the kingdom of God; and he gathered up courage and went in before Pilate, and asked for the body of Jesus.

⁴⁴Pilate wondered if He was dead by this time, and summoning the centurion, he questioned him as to whether He was already dead. ⁴⁵And ascertaining this from the centurion, he granted the body to Joseph.

[Luke 23:50–52](#)

⁵⁰And a man named Joseph, who was a member of the Council, a good and righteous man ⁵¹(he had not consented to their plan and action), *a man* from Arimathea, a city of the Jews, who was waiting for the kingdom of God; ⁵²this man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus.

[John 19:38](#)

³⁸After these things Joseph of Arimathea, being a disciple of Jesus, but a secret *one* for fear of the Jews, asked Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus;

and Pilate granted permission.

29) *The removal of the body from the cross*

[Matthew 27:59](#)

⁵⁹And Joseph took the body and wrapped it in a clean linen cloth,

[Mark 15:46a](#)

⁴⁶Joseph bought a linen cloth, took Him down, wrapped Him in the linen cloth

[Luke 23:53a](#)

^{53a}And he took it down and wrapped it in a linen cloth,

[John 19:38b-40](#)

So he came and took away His body. ³⁹Nicodemus, who had first come to Him by night, also came, bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred pounds *weight*. ⁴⁰So they took the body of Jesus and bound it in linen wrappings with the spices, as is the burial custom of the Jews.

30) *His actual burial*

[Matthew 27:60](#)

⁶⁰and laid it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock; and he rolled a large stone against the entrance of the tomb and went away.

[Mark 15:46b](#)

and laid Him in a tomb which had been hewn out in the rock; and he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb.

[Luke 23:53b-54](#)

and laid Him in a tomb cut into the rock, where no one had ever lain. ⁵⁴It was the preparation day, and the Sabbath was about to begin.

[John 19:41-42](#)

⁴¹Now in the place where He was crucified there was a garden, and in the garden a new tomb in which no one had yet been laid. ⁴²Therefore because of the Jewish day of preparation, since the tomb was nearby, they laid Jesus there.

G. The Sealing of the Tomb, § 180, Matthew 27:61-66; Mark 15:47; Luke 23:55-56

31) The Preparation for embalming

[Matthew 27:61](#)

⁶¹And Mary Magdalene was there, and the other Mary, sitting opposite the grave.

[Mark 15:47](#)

⁴⁷Mary Magdalene and Mary the *mother* of Joses were looking on to see where He was laid.

[Luke 23:55-56](#)

⁵⁵Now the women who had come with Him out of Galilee followed, and saw the tomb and how His body was laid. ⁵⁶Then they returned and prepared spices and perfumes. And on the Sabbath they rested according to the commandment.

32) The sealing of the tomb

[Matthew 27:62-66](#)

⁶²Now on the next day, the day after the preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered together with Pilate, ⁶³and said, "Sir, we remember that when He was still alive that deceiver said, 'After three days I *am* to rise again.' ⁶⁴"Therefore, give orders for the grave to be made secure until the third day, otherwise His disciples may come and steal Him away and say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and the last deception will be worse than the first." ⁶⁵Pilate said to them, "You have a guard; go, make it *as* secure as you know how." ⁶⁶And they went and made the grave secure, and along with the guard they set a seal on the stone.

X THE RESURRECTION AND THE ASCENSION OF THE KING, § 181-198

A. The Dawning of Resurrection Day, § 181, Matthew 28:1; Mark 16:1

[Matthew 28:1](#)

¹Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first *day* of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to look at the grave.

[Mark 16:1](#)

¹When the Sabbath was over, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the *mother* of James, and Salome, bought spices, so that they might come and anoint Him.

B. The Opening of the Tomb, § 182, Matthew 28:2-4

[Matthew 28:2-4](#)

²And behold, a severe earthquake had occurred, for an angel of the Lord descended from heaven and came and rolled away the stone and sat upon it. ³And his appearance was like lightning, and his clothing as white as snow. ⁴The guards shook for fear of him and became like dead men.

C. The Visit of Mary Magdalene, § 183, John 20:1

[John 20:1](#)

¹Now on the first *day* of the week Mary Magdalene *came early to the tomb, while it *was still dark, and *saw the stone *already* taken away from the tomb.

D. Mary's Report to the Apostles, § 184, Luke 24:12; John 20:2-10

[Luke 24:12](#)

¹²But Peter got up and ran to the tomb;

stooping and looking in, he *saw the linen wrappings only;

and he went away to his home, marveling at what had happened.

[John 20:2-10](#)

²So she *ran and *came to Simon Peter and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and *said to them, "They have taken away the Lord out of the tomb, and we do not know where they have laid Him."

³So Peter and the other disciple went forth, and they were going to the tomb. ⁴The two were running together;

and the other disciple ran ahead faster than Peter and came to the tomb first; ⁵and stooping and looking in, he *saw the linen wrappings lying *there*; but he did not go in.

⁶And so Simon Peter also *came, following him, and entered the tomb; and he *saw the linen wrappings lying *there*, ⁷and the face-cloth which had been on His head, not lying with the linen wrappings, but rolled up in a place by itself.

⁸So the other disciple who had first come to the tomb then also entered, and he saw and believed. ⁹For as yet they did not understand the Scripture, that He must rise again from the dead. ¹⁰So the disciples went away again to their own homes.

E. The First Appearance: Mary Magdalene, § 185, Mark 16:9-11; John 20:11-18

Mark 16:9–11

⁹[Now after He had risen early on the first day of the week, He first appeared to Mary Magdalene, from whom He had cast out seven demons.

¹⁰She went and reported to those who had been with Him, while they were mourning and weeping. ¹¹When they heard that He was alive and had been seen by her, they refused to believe it.

John 20:11–18

¹¹But Mary was standing outside the tomb weeping; and so, as she wept, she stooped and looked into the tomb; ¹²and she *saw two angels in white sitting, one at the head and one at the feet, where the body of Jesus had been lying. ¹³And they *said to her, “Woman, why are you weeping?” She *said to them, “Because they have taken away my Lord, and I do not know where they have laid Him.” ¹⁴When she had said this, she turned around and *saw Jesus standing *there*, and did not know that it was Jesus. ¹⁵Jesus *said to her, “Woman, why are you weeping? Whom are you seeking?” Supposing Him to be the gardener, she *said to Him, “Sir, if you have carried Him away, tell me where you have laid Him, and I will take Him away.” ¹⁶Jesus *said to her, “Mary!” She turned and *said to Him in Hebrew, “Rabboni!” (which means, Teacher). ¹⁷Jesus *said to her, “Stop clinging to Me, for I have not yet ascended to the Father; but go to My brethren and say to them, ‘I ascend to My Father and your Father, and My God and your God.’ ”

¹⁸Mary Magdalene *came, announcing to the disciples, “I have seen the Lord,” and *that* He had said these things to her.

F. The Visit of the Women,

§ 186, Matthew 28:5-8; Mark 16:2-8; Luke 24:1-9a;

[Mark 16:2-5](#)

²Very early on the first day of the week, they *came to the tomb when the sun had risen. ³They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance of the tomb?" ⁴Looking up, they *saw that the stone had been rolled away, although it was extremely large.

⁵Entering the tomb, they saw a young man sitting at the right, wearing a white robe; and they were amazed.

[Matthew 28:5-8](#)

⁵The angel said to the women, "Do not be afraid; for I know that you are looking for Jesus who has been crucified. ⁶"He is not here, for He has risen, just as He said. Come, see the place where He was lying.

⁷"Go quickly and tell His disciples that He has risen from the dead; and behold, He is going ahead of you into Galilee, there you will see Him; behold, I have told you."

⁸And they left the tomb quickly with fear and great joy and ran to report it to His disciples.

[Mark 16:6-8](#)

⁶And he *said to them, "Do not be amazed; you are looking for Jesus the Nazarene, who has been crucified. He has risen; He is not here; behold, *here is* the place where they laid Him.

⁷"But go, tell His disciples and Peter, 'He is going ahead of you to Galilee; there you will see Him, just as He told you.'"

⁸They went out and fled from the tomb, for trembling and astonishment had gripped them; and they said nothing to anyone, for they were afraid.

[Luke 24:1-4](#)

¹But on the first day of the week, at early dawn, they came to the tomb bringing the spices which they had prepared. ²And they found the stone rolled away from the tomb,

³but when they entered, they did not find the body of the Lord Jesus. ⁴While they were perplexed about this, behold, two men suddenly stood near them in dazzling clothing;

[Luke 24:5-9a](#)

⁵and as *the women* were terrified and bowed their faces to the ground, *the men* said to them, "Why do you seek the living One among the dead? ⁶"He is not here, but He has risen. Remember how He spoke to you while He was still in Galilee, ⁷saying that the Son of Man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day rise again."

⁸And they remembered His words, ⁹and returned from the tomb ...

G. The Second Appearance: The Women, § 187, Matthew 28:9-10

[Matthew 28:9-10](#)

⁹And behold, Jesus met them and greeted them. And they came up and took hold of His feet and worshiped Him. ¹⁰Then Jesus *said to them, “Do not be afraid; go and take word to My brethren to leave for Galilee, and there they will see Me.”

H. The Women’s Report to the Apostles, § 188, Luke 24:9b-11

[Luke 24:9b-12](#)

^{9b} ... and reported all these things to the eleven and to all the rest. ¹⁰Now they were Mary Magdalene and Joanna and Mary the *mother* of James; also the other women with them were telling these things to the apostles. ¹¹But these words appeared to them as nonsense, and they would not believe them.

I. The Report of the Guard: The Rejection of the Second Sign of Jonah, § 189, Matthew 28:11-15

[Matthew 28:11-15](#)

¹¹Now while they were on their way, some of the guard came into the city and reported to the chief priests all that had happened. ¹²And when they had assembled with the elders and consulted together, they gave a large sum of money to the soldiers, ¹³and said, “You are to say, ‘His disciples came by night and stole Him away while we were asleep.’ ¹⁴“And if this should come to the governor’s ears, we will win him over and keep you out of trouble.” ¹⁵And they took the money and did as they had been instructed; and this story was widely spread among the Jews, *and is to this day*.

J. The Third Appearance: To the Two on the Emmaus Road, § 190, Mark 16:12-13; Luke 24:13-32

[Mark 16:12](#)

¹²After that, He appeared in a different form to two of them while they were walking along on their way to the country.

[Luke 24:13–15](#)

¹³And behold, two of them were going that very day to a village named Emmaus, which was about seven miles from Jerusalem. ¹⁴And they were talking with each other about all these things which had taken place. ¹⁵While they were talking and discussing, Jesus Himself approached and *began* traveling with them.

[Luke 24:16-32](#)

¹⁶But their eyes were prevented from recognizing Him. ¹⁷And He said to them, “What are these words that you are exchanging with one another as you are walking?” And they stood still, looking sad. ¹⁸One *of them*, named Cleopas, answered and said to Him, “Are You the only one visiting Jerusalem and unaware of the things which have happened here in these days?”

¹⁹And He said to them, “What things?” And they said to Him, “The things about Jesus the Nazarene, who was a prophet mighty in deed and word in the sight of God and all the people, ²⁰and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered Him to the sentence of death, and crucified Him. ²¹“But we were hoping that it was He who was going to redeem Israel. Indeed, besides all this, it is the third day since these things happened.

²²“But also some women among us amazed us. When they were at the tomb early in the morning, ²³and did not find His body, they came, saying that they had also seen a vision of angels who said that He was alive. ²⁴“Some of those who were with us went to the tomb and found it just exactly as the women also had said; but Him they did not see.”

²⁵And He said to them, “O foolish men and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken! ²⁶“Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things and to enter into His glory?” ²⁷Then beginning with Moses and with all the prophets, He explained to them the things concerning Himself in all the Scriptures.

²⁸And they approached the village where they were going, and He acted as though He were going farther. ²⁹But they urged Him, saying, “Stay with us, for it is *getting* toward evening, and the day is now nearly over.” So He went in to stay with them. ³⁰When He had reclined *at the table* with them, He took the bread and blessed *it*, and breaking *it*, He *began* giving *it* to them. ³¹Then their eyes were opened and they recognized Him; and He vanished from their sight. ³²They said to one another, “Were not our hearts burning within us while He was speaking to us on the road, while He was explaining the Scriptures to us?”

[Mark 16:13](#)

¹³They went away and reported it to the others, but they did not believe them either.

K. The Fourth Appearance: Peter, § 191, Luke 24:33-35; 1 Corinthians 15:5

Luke 24:33–35

³³And they got up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem, and found gathered together the eleven and those who were with them, ³⁴saying, “The Lord has really risen and has appeared to Simon.” ³⁵They *began* to relate their experiences on the road and how He was recognized by them in the breaking of the bread.

1 Corinthians 15:5

⁵and that He appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve.

L. The Fifth Appearance: The Ten, § 192, Mark 16:14; Luke 24:36-43; John 20:19-25

Mark 16:14

¹⁴Afterward He appeared to the eleven themselves as they were reclining *at the table*;

and He reproached them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they had not believed those who had seen Him after He had risen.

Luke 24:36-43

³⁶While they were telling these things, He Himself stood in their midst and *said to them, "Peace be to you." ³⁷But they were startled and frightened and thought that they were seeing a spirit.

³⁸And He said to them, "Why are you troubled, and why do doubts arise in your hearts?"

³⁹"See My hands and My feet, that it is I Myself; touch Me and see, for a spirit does not have flesh and bones as you see that I have." ⁴⁰And when He had said this, He showed them His hands and His feet.

⁴¹While they still could not believe *it* because of their joy and amazement, He said to them, "Have you anything here to eat?" ⁴²They gave Him a piece of a broiled fish; ⁴³and He took it and ate *it* before them.

John 20:19-25

¹⁹So when it was evening on that day, the first *day* of the week, and when the doors were shut where the disciples were, for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in their midst and *said to them, "Peace *be* with you."

²⁰And when He had said this, He showed them both His hands and His side. The disciples then rejoiced when they saw the Lord.

John 20:21-25

²¹So Jesus said to them again, "Peace *be* with you; as the Father has sent Me, I also send you."

²²And when He had said this, He breathed on them and *said to them, "Receive the Holy Spirit.

²³"If you forgive the sins of any, *their sins* have been forgiven them; if you retain the *sins* of any, they have been retained."

²⁴But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. ²⁵So the other disciples were saying to him, "We have seen the Lord!" But he said to them, "Unless I see in His hands the imprint of the nails, and put my finger into the place of the nails, and put my hand into His side, I will not believe."

M. The Sixth Appearance: The Eleven, § 193, John 20:26-31; 1 Corinthians 15:5

[John 20:26-31](#)

²⁶After eight days His disciples were again inside, and Thomas with them. Jesus *came, the doors having been shut, and stood in their midst and said, “Peace *be* with you.” ²⁷Then He *said to Thomas, “Reach here with your finger, and see My hands; and reach here your hand and put it into My side; and do not be unbelieving, but believing.” ²⁸Thomas answered and said to Him, “My Lord and my God!” ²⁹Jesus *said to him, “Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed *are* they who did not see, and *yet* believed.”

³⁰Therefore many other signs Jesus also performed in the presence of the disciples, which are not written in this book; ³¹but these have been written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you may have life in His name.

[1 Corinthians 15:5](#)

⁵and that He appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve.

N. The Seventh Appearance: The Seven, § 194, John 21:1-25

John 21

¹After these things Jesus manifested Himself again to the disciples at the Sea of Tiberias, and He manifested *Himself* in this way. ²Simon Peter, and Thomas called Didymus, and Nathanael of Cana in Galilee, and the *sons* of Zebedee, and two others of His disciples were together. ³Simon Peter *said to them, "I am going fishing." They *said to him, "We will also come with you." They went out and got into the boat; and that night they caught nothing.

⁴But when the day was now breaking, Jesus stood on the beach; yet the disciples did not know that it was Jesus. ⁵So Jesus *said to them, "Children, you do not have any fish, do you?" They answered Him, "No." ⁶And He said to them, "Cast the net on the right-hand side of the boat and you will find *a catch*." So they cast, and then they were not able to haul it in because of the great number of fish.

⁷Therefore that disciple whom Jesus loved *said to Peter, "It is the Lord." So when Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he put his outer garment on (for he was stripped *for work*), and threw himself into the sea. ⁸But the other disciples came in the little boat, for they were not far from the land, but about one hundred yards away, dragging the net *full* of fish.

⁹So when they got out on the land, they *saw a charcoal fire *already* laid and fish placed on it, and bread. ¹⁰Jesus *said to them, "Bring some of the fish which you have now caught." ¹¹Simon Peter went up and drew the net to land, full of large fish, a hundred and fifty-three; and although there were so many, the net was not torn. ¹²Jesus *said to them, "Come *and* have breakfast." None of the disciples ventured to question Him, "Who are You?" knowing that it was the Lord. ¹³Jesus *came and *took the bread and *gave *it* to them, and the fish likewise.

¹⁴This is now the third time that Jesus was manifested to the disciples, after He was raised from the dead.

¹⁵So when they had finished breakfast, Jesus *said to Simon Peter, "Simon, *son* of John, do you love Me more than these?" He *said to Him, "Yes, Lord; You know that I love You." He *said to him, "Tend My lambs."

¹⁶He *said to him again a second time, "Simon, *son* of John, do you love Me?" He *said to Him, "Yes, Lord; You know that I love You." He *said to him, "Shepherd My sheep."

¹⁷He *said to him the third time, "Simon, *son* of John, do you love Me?" Peter was grieved because He said to him the third time, "Do you love Me?" And he said to Him, "Lord, You know all things; You know that I love You." Jesus *said to him, "Tend My sheep.

¹⁸"Truly, truly, I say to you, when you were younger, you used to gird yourself and walk wherever you wished; but when you grow old, you will stretch out your hands and someone else will gird you, and bring you where you do not wish to *go*." ¹⁹Now this He said, signifying by what kind of death he would glorify God. And when He had spoken this, He *said to him, "Follow Me!"

²⁰Peter, turning around, *saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following *them*; the one who also had leaned back on His bosom at the supper and said, "Lord, who is the one who betrays You?" ²¹So Peter seeing him *said to Jesus, "Lord, and what about this man?" ²²Jesus *said to him, "If I want him to remain until I come, what *is that* to you? You follow Me!" ²³Therefore this saying went out among the brethren that that disciple would not die; yet Jesus did not say to him that he would not die, but *only*, "If I want him to remain until I come, what *is that* to you?"

²⁴This is the disciple who is testifying to these things and wrote these things, and we know that his testimony is true. ²⁵And there are also many other things which Jesus did, which if they *were written in detail, I suppose that even the world itself *would not contain the books that *would be written.

O. The Eighth Appearance: The Five Hundred, § 195, Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:15-18; 1 Corinthians 15:6

[Matthew 28:16–20](#)

¹⁶But the eleven disciples proceeded to Galilee, to the mountain which Jesus had designated. ¹⁷When they saw Him, they worshiped *Him*; but some were doubtful.

¹⁸And Jesus came up and spoke to them, saying, “All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. ¹⁹“Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, ²⁰teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”

[Mark 16:15–18](#)

¹⁵And He said to them, “Go into all the world and preach the gospel to all creation. ¹⁶“He who has believed and has been baptized shall be saved; but he who has disbelieved shall be condemned. ¹⁷“These signs will accompany those who have believed: in My name they will cast out demons, they will speak with new tongues; ¹⁸they will pick up serpents, and if they drink any deadly *poison*, it will not hurt them; they will lay hands on the sick, and they will recover.”

[1 Corinthians 15:6](#)

⁶After that He appeared to more than five hundred brethren at one time, most of whom remain until now, but some have fallen asleep;

P. The Ninth Appearance: James, § 196, 1 Corinthians 15:7

[1 Corinthians 15:7](#)

⁷then He appeared to James, then to all the apostles;

Q. The Tenth Appearance: The Eleven, § 197, Luke 24:44-49; Acts 1:3-8

Luke 24:44-49

⁴⁴Now He said to them, “These are My words which I spoke to you while I was still with you, that all things which are written about Me in the Law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled.”

⁴⁵Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures,

⁴⁶and He said to them, “Thus it is written, that the Christ would suffer and rise again from the dead the third day, ⁴⁷and that repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in His name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem.

⁴⁸“You are witnesses of these things. ⁴⁹“And behold, I am sending forth the promise of My Father upon you; but you are to stay in the city until you are clothed with power from on high.”

Acts 1:3-8

³To these He also presented Himself alive after His suffering, by many convincing proofs, appearing to them over *a period of* forty days and speaking of the things concerning the kingdom of God.

⁴Gathering them together, He commanded them not to leave Jerusalem, but to wait for what the Father had promised, “Which,” *He said*, “you heard of from Me; ⁵for John baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days from now.”

⁶So when they had come together, they were asking Him, saying, “Lord, is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom to Israel?” ⁷He said to them, “It is not for you to know times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority;

⁸but you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be My witnesses both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and even to the remotest part of the earth.”

R. The Ascension of the King, § 198, Mark 16:19-20; Luke 24:50-53; Acts 1:9-12

Mark 16:19-20

¹⁹So then, when the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, He was received up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.

²⁰And they went out and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them, and confirmed the word by the signs that followed.]

Luke 24:50-53

⁵⁰And He led them out as far as Bethany, and He lifted up His hands and blessed them. ⁵¹While He was blessing them, He parted from them and was carried up into heaven.

⁵²And they, after worshiping Him, returned to Jerusalem with great joy, ⁵³and were continually in the temple praising God.

Acts 1:9-12

⁹And after He had said these things, He was lifted up while they were looking on, and a cloud received Him out of their sight.

¹⁰And as they were gazing intently into the sky while He was going, behold, two men in white clothing stood beside them. ¹¹They also said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into the sky? This Jesus, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will come in just the same way as you have watched Him go into heaven."

¹²Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet, which is near Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's journey away.

Sequel to the Life of Christ

A. The Elements of Signs, 1 Corinthians 1:21-24

[1 Corinthians 1:21-24](#)

²¹For since in the wisdom of God the world through its wisdom did not come to know God, God was well-pleased through the foolishness of the message preached to save those who believe. ²²For indeed Jews ask for signs and Greeks search for wisdom; ²³ but we preach Christ crucified, to Jews a stumbling block and to Gentiles foolishness, ²⁴ but to those who are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God.

B. The Relationship of the Life of Christ to the Book of Acts, Acts 6 – 8; 1 Peter 3:20-22

[Acts 2:36–41](#)

³⁶ “Therefore let all the house of Israel know for certain that God has made Him both Lord and Christ—this Jesus whom you crucified.” ³⁷ Now when they heard this, they were pierced to the heart, and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, “Brethren, what shall we do?” ³⁸ Peter said to them, “Repent, and each of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. ³⁹ “For the promise is for you and your children and for all who are far off, as many as the Lord our God will call to Himself.” ⁴⁰ And with many other words he solemnly testified and kept on exhorting them, saying, “Be saved from this perverse generation!” ⁴¹ So then, those who had received his word were baptized; and that day there were added about three thousand souls.

[Acts 22:16](#)

¹⁶ ‘Now why do you delay? Get up and be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on His name.’

[1 Peter 3:20-22](#)

²⁰ *who once were disobedient, when the patience of God kept waiting in the days of Noah, during the construction of the ark, in which a few, that is, eight persons, were brought safely through the water.* ²¹ Corresponding to that, baptism now saves you—not the removal of dirt from the flesh, but an appeal to God for a good conscience—through the resurrection of Jesus Christ, ²² who is at the right hand of God, having gone into heaven, after angels and authorities and powers had been subjected to Him.

C. The Relationship of the Life of Christ to the Book of Hebrews, Luke 21:20-24; Hebrews 13:11-14

[Luke 21:20-24](#)

²⁰“But when you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then recognize that her desolation is near. ²¹“Then those who are in Judea must flee to the mountains, and those who are in the midst of the city must leave, and those who are in the country must not enter the city; ²² because these are days of vengeance, so that all things which are written will be fulfilled. ²³ “Woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing babies in those days; for there will be great distress upon the land and wrath to this people; ²⁴ and they will fall by the edge of the sword, and will be led captive into all the nations; and Jerusalem will be trampled under foot by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

[Hebrews 13:11-14](#)

¹¹For the bodies of those animals whose blood is brought into the holy place by the high priest *as an offering* for sin, are burned outside the camp. ¹²Therefore Jesus also, that He might sanctify the people through His own blood, suffered outside the gate. ¹³So, let us go out to Him outside the camp, bearing His reproach. ¹⁴For here we do not have a lasting city, but we are seeking *the city* which is to come.

D. The Third Sign of Jonah, Zechariah 4:1-14; Revelation 11:3-13

Zechariah 4:1-14

¹Then the angel who was speaking with me returned and roused me, as a man who is awakened from his sleep. ²He said to me, "What do you see?" And I said, "I see, and behold, a lampstand all of gold with its bowl on the top of it, and its seven lamps on it with seven spouts belonging to each of the lamps which are on the top of it; ³also two olive trees by it, one on the right side of the bowl and the other on its left side." ⁴Then I said to the angel who was speaking with me saying, "What are these, my lord?" ⁵So the angel who was speaking with me answered and said to me, "Do you not know what these are?" And I said, "No, my lord." ⁶Then he said to me, "This is the word of the LORD to Zerubbabel saying, 'Not by might nor by power, but by My Spirit,' says the LORD of hosts. ⁷'What are you, O great mountain? Before Zerubbabel you will become a plain; and he will bring forth the top stone with shouts of "Grace, grace to it!" ' " ⁸Also the word of the LORD came to me, saying, ⁹"The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house, and his hands will finish it. Then you will know that the LORD of hosts has sent me to you. ¹⁰"For who has despised the day of small things? But these seven will be glad when they see the plumb line in the hand of Zerubbabel—*these are* the eyes of the LORD which range to and fro throughout the earth." ¹¹Then I said to him, "What are these two olive trees on the right of the lampstand and on its left?" ¹²And I answered the second time and said to him, "What are the two olive branches which are beside the two golden pipes, which empty the golden *oil* from themselves?" ¹³So he answered me, saying, "Do you not know what these are?" And I said, "No, my lord." ¹⁴Then he said, "These are the two anointed ones who are standing by the Lord of the whole earth."

Revelation 11:3-13

³"And I will grant *authority* to my two witnesses, and they will prophesy for twelve hundred and sixty days, clothed in sackcloth." ⁴These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth. ⁵And if anyone wants to harm them, fire flows out of their mouth and devours their enemies; so if anyone wants to harm them, he must be killed in this way. ⁶These have the power to shut up the sky, so that rain will not fall during the days of their prophesying; and they have power over the waters to turn them into blood, and to strike the earth with every plague, as often as they desire. ⁷When they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up out of the abyss will make war with them, and overcome them and kill them. ⁸And their dead bodies will lie in the street of the great city which mystically is called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Lord was crucified. ⁹Those from the peoples and tribes and tongues and nations will look at their dead bodies for three and a half days, and will not permit their dead bodies to be laid in a tomb. ¹⁰And those who dwell on the earth will rejoice over them and celebrate; and they will send gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented those who dwell on the earth. ¹¹But after the three and a half days, the breath of life from God came into them, and they stood on their feet; and great fear fell upon those who were watching them. ¹²And they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, "Come up here." Then they went up into heaven in the cloud, and their enemies watched them. ¹³And in that hour there was a great earthquake, and a tenth of the city fell; seven thousand people were killed in the earthquake, and the rest were terrified and gave glory to the God of heaven.

[Hosea 5:15–6:](#)

¹⁵I will go away *and* return to My place Until they acknowledge their guilt and seek My face; In their affliction they will earnestly seek Me. ¹“Come, let us return to the Lord. For He has torn *us*, but He will heal us; He has wounded *us*, but He will bandage us. ²“He will revive us after two days; He will raise us up on the third day, That we may live before Him. ³“So let us know, let us press on to know the Lord. His going forth is as certain as the dawn; And He will come to us like the rain, Like the spring rain watering the earth.”

[Isaiah 66:8](#)

⁸“Who has heard such a thing? Who has seen such things? Can a land be born in one day? Can a nation be brought forth all at once? As soon as Zion travailed, she also brought forth her sons.

[Zechariah 3:9](#)

⁹‘For behold, the stone that I have set before Joshua; on one stone are seven eyes. Behold, I will engrave an inscription on it,’ declares the Lord of hosts, ‘and I will remove the iniquity of that land in one day.

[Romans 11:25–27](#)

²⁵For I do not want you, brethren, to be uninformed of this mystery—so that you will not be wise in your own estimation—that a partial hardening has happened to Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in; ²⁶and so all Israel will be saved; just as it is written, “The Deliverer will come from Zion, He will remove ungodliness from Jacob.” ²⁷“This is My covenant with them, When I take away their sins.”

APPENDIX 1

Interpretation Rules for Understanding Prophecy and Scripture

1. The Golden Rule of Interpretation

When the plain sense of Scripture makes common sense, seek no other sense; therefore, take every word at its primary, ordinary, usual, literal meaning, unless the facts of the immediate context, studied in the light of related passages and axiomatic and fundamental truths, indicate clearly otherwise.

2. The Law of Double Reference

The Law of Double Reference is the principle of associating similar or related ideas, which are usually separated from one another by a long period of time, and which are blended into a single picture like the blending of pictures by a stereopticon.

A clear cut example of this law may be found in Isaiah 11:1-5. Verses 1 and 2 refer to the first coming of the Lord Jesus Christ, and verses 3 to 5 tell of the second time He comes to earth.

3. The Law of Recurrence

The Law of Recurrence involves the recording of an event and the repetition of the account which gives added details. This principle may be illustrated by the artist who “blocks out the portrait” of a person at the first sitting and adds details at subsequent sittings.

Example: Ezekiel 38:1-39:16

Chapter 38 gives a complete account of the coming invasion of Israel by Russia and the subsequent destruction of the Russian army in Israel. Chapter 39 then repeats the account from the beginning giving additional details.

4. The Law of the Context

A Text apart from its Context is a Pretext. A verse can only mean what it means in its context and must not be taken out of its context.

Example: Zechariah 13:6

This verse is often used to prophecy of the Messiah. Pulled out of its context, it does indeed sound like it refers to Jesus. But the context of vs2-6 is speaking of false prophets. Verse 6 cannot refer to Jesus unless Jesus is a false prophet. This is the danger of studying a verse by itself rather than in context. The common saying, “You can prove anything by the Bible,” is only true when this law is violated.

(These four rules were formulated by Dr David L Cooper, the late founder and director of the Biblical Research Society.)

APPENDIX 2

John's Seven's and the Three Messianic Miracles

Seven Signs

1. Changes water into wine	§29
2. Healing the nobleman's son	§38
3. Healing the paralytic	§49
4. Feeding of the 5,000	§72
5. Calming the storm	§74
6. Healing of the man born blind	§100
7. Resurrection of Lazarus	§121

Seven Discourses

1. The New Birth	§32
2. The Works of God	§49
3. The Bread of Life	§76
4. The Water of Life	§96
5. The Light of the World	§98-99
6. The Good Shepherd	§101
7. The Upper Room Discourse	§161-162

Seven I am's

1. The Bread of Life	§76
2. The Light of the World	§98
3. The Door of the Sheep	§101
4. The Good Shepherd	§101
5. The Resurrection and the Life	§121
6. The Way, The Truth and the Life	§161
7. The True Vine	§162

Three Messianic Miracles

1. The healing of the Jewish leper	§45
2. Casting out the dumb demon	§61
3. The healing of someone born blind	§100

APPENDIX 3

Personification of the WORD (Hebrew Davar, Aramaic Memra)

Davar, the WORD, is personified in the Old Testament and is often found carrying out a commission.

<p>Genesis 15: 1</p> <p><i>¹After these things the word of the Lord came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Do not fear, Abram, I am a shield to you; Your reward shall be very great."</i></p>	<p>The WORD is personified as revealer.</p>
<p>Psalm 33:4-6</p> <p><i>⁴For the word of the Lord is upright, And all His work is done in faithfulness. ⁵He loves righteousness and justice; The earth is full of the lovingkindness of the Lord. ⁶By the word of the Lord the heavens were made, And by the breath of His mouth all their host.</i></p>	<p>It is the agent of creation. God spoke the WORD, and what He spoke came into existence.</p>
<p>Psalm 147:15</p> <p><i>¹⁵He sends forth His command to the earth; His word runs very swiftly.</i></p>	<p>The WORD moves swiftly to carry out God's purpose.</p>
<p>Isaiah 9:8</p> <p><i>⁸The Lord sends a message [Davar] against Jacob, And it falls on Israel.</i></p>	<p>The Lord sent the WORD against Jacob to accomplish a specific mission and <i>it falls on Israel</i>.</p>
<p>Isaiah 55:10-11</p> <p><i>¹⁰ "For as the rain and the snow come down from heaven, And do not return there without watering the earth And making it bear and sprout, And furnishing seed to the sower and bread to the eater; ¹¹So will My word be which goes forth from My mouth; It will not return to Me empty, Without accomplishing what I desire, And without succeeding in the matter for which I sent it.</i></p>	<p>The WORD goes and returns. It accomplishes Gods desire. It succeeds. It is sent.</p>
<p>Isaiah 45:23</p> <p><i>²³ "I have sworn by Myself, The word has gone forth from My mouth in righteousness And will not turn back, That to Me every knee will bow, every tongue will swear allegiance.</i></p>	<p>The WORD goes out. It is able to turn back, but will not.</p>
<p>Ezekiel 1:3</p> <p><i>³ the word of the Lord came expressly to Ezekiel the priest, son of Buzi, in the land of the Chaldeans by the river Chebar; and there the hand of the Lord came upon him.</i></p>	<p>The WORD of the Lord came expressly to the prophet.</p>

APPENDIX 4

When was Jesus Born?

Known Historical Events	Year BC	Implications of events
Quirinius Issues the census decree	After 8 or 7	Mary and Joseph travel to Bethlehem sometime after this in response to the decree. Mary is with child at this stage.
Herod is away fighting a war	8	The wise men could not have met Herod in Jerusalem during this year.
	7	Most probable year of Jesus' birth
	6	
Herod leaves Jerusalem and goes to spend the last months of his life in Jericho	5	The wise men must have met with Herod in Jerusalem before this event. Jesus was two years old or less when the wise men arrived in Jerusalem.
Herod dies	4	

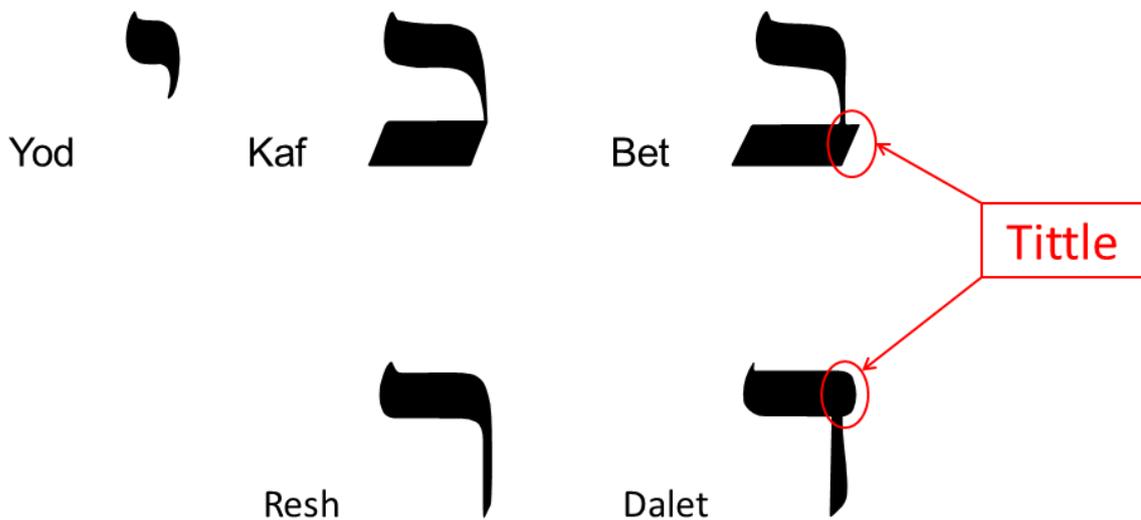
In Conclusion, Jesus must have been born sometime during 8 BC or 7 BC. This would allow time for Jesus to grow to nearly two years of age by the time the magi visited with Herod before he left Jerusalem in 5 BC.

APPENDIX 5

The Four Lists of the Apostles

Mark 3:16-19	Matthew 10:2-4	Luke 6:14-16	Acts 1:13
Simon Peter	Simon Peter	Simon Peter	Simon Peter
James	Andrew	Andrew	John
John	James	James	James
Andrew	John	John	Andrew
Philip	Philip	Philip	Philip
Bartholomew (Nathaniel)	Bartholomew (Nathaniel)	Bartholomew (Nathaniel)	Thomas
Matthew	Thomas	Matthew	Bartholomew (Nathaniel)
Thomas	Matthew	Thomas	Matthew
James the son of Alpheus	James the son of Alpheus	James the son of Alpheus	James the son of Alpheus
Thaddeus	Thaddeus	Simon the Zealot	Simon the Zealot
Simon the Zealot	Simon the Zealot	Judas the brother of James (Thaddeus)	Judas the brother of James (Thaddeus)
Judas Iscariot	Judas Iscariot	Judas Iscariot	

APPENDIX 6 Yod and Tittle



Matthew 5:18 *“For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass from the Law until all is accomplished.”*

Jesus will be the one who will fulfil every jot and tittle. What does that refer to?

The word jot actually refers to the tenth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, the letter yod. Yod is the smallest letter of the alphabet. It is about a quarter of the size of the other letters. The point of saying not one yod is that He will fulfil the Law down to the smallest letter of the Hebrew alphabet.

Now what is the tittle? Some Hebrew letters look very much the same, like the letter beth and the letter kaf. The only difference is a small thing protruding at one corner. That is the tittle. Another example is dalet and resh.

Tittle is the smallest part of a single Hebrew letter. And the point is: not only will He fulfil the Law down to the smallest letter of the Hebrew alphabet, He will also fulfil the Law down to the smallest part of a single Hebrew letter.

By using the letters in this way He points out that the Law He intends to fulfil is the written Law, the one Moses gave. He does not intend to fulfil the Mishnaic Law. And He will fulfil the Law of Moses perfectly down to every yod and tittle.

APPENDIX 7

Old Testament Prophecies about the Outpouring of the Holy Spirit

Excerpt from MBS066 - "The Ministries of the Holy Spirit."

A second major future work of the Holy Spirit will be Israel's national regeneration. The national regeneration of Israel is consistently connected with the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. This is seen in a number of passages in the Old Testament.

1. Isaiah 32:9-20.

The first passage can be divided into three segments. First, verses 9-14 describe the period of the Great Tribulation. The second segment, in verse 15, describes the outpouring of the Holy Spirit: *until the Spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness become a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be esteemed as a forest.* In this verse, Isaiah speaks of an outpouring of the Holy Spirit upon Israel following the Great Tribulation (vv. 9-14). In the third segment (vv. 16-20), he describes the Messianic Kingdom, which follows the national regeneration of Israel.

2. Isaiah 44:1-5.

In the second passage, verses 1-2 emphasize that Israel is the chosen people of God. In verses 3-5, he describes the outpouring of the Spirit upon the whole nation of Israel: *For I will pour water upon him that is thirsty, and streams upon the dry ground; I will pour my Spirit upon your seed, and my blessing upon your offspring: and they shall spring up among the grass, as willows by the watercourses. One shall say, I am Jehovah's; and another shall call himself by the name of Jacob; and another shall subscribe with his hand unto Jehovah, and surname himself by the name of Israel.*

3. Ezekiel 39:25-29.

In the third passage, verses 25-28 describe a world-wide regathering of the Jewish people for the Messianic Kingdom. The basis for Israel's world-wide regathering is given in verse 29: *neither will I hide my face any more from them; for I have poured out my Spirit upon the house of Israel, says the Lord Jehovah. This verse speaks of an outpouring of the Holy Spirit upon the whole nation of Israel. This outpouring will result in Israel's regeneration, which, in turn, will be the basis for Israel's final restoration and regathering.*

4. Joel 2:28-29.

In the fourth passage, Joel is speaking about the last days of the Great Tribulation, when the Holy Spirit will be poured out upon the whole nation of Israel. *And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: and also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my Spirit.*

Peter quoted this passage in Acts 2:16-21 only as an application to their experience, for there was a pouring out of the Spirit in a limited way, but only upon the Twelve Apostles or on the one hundred twenty at the most, not on the whole nation of Israel. The fulfilment of Joel 2:28-29 did not occur in Acts 2 nor is it occurring at the present time. It will occur only when the whole nation of Israel will be saved.

5. Zechariah 4:1-14.

The fifth passage also pictures Israel as a saved nation. The universal outpouring of the Holy Spirit will be on the nation of Israel only, and it is connected with the Holy Spirit in verse 6: *Then he answered and spoke unto me, saying, "This is the word of Jehovah unto Zerubbabel, saying, Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit, said Jehovah of hosts."*

6. Zechariah 12:10, 13:1.

The sixth passage is Zechariah 12:10, 13:1. Verse 10 reads: *And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplication; and they shall look unto me whom they have pierced; and they shall mourn for him, as one mourns for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his first-born.* In this passage, the outpouring of the Holy Spirit results in Israel's national regeneration, which, in turn, leads to the Second Coming of Jesus the Messiah.

In this second major work and ministry of the Holy Spirit in the future, the Holy Spirit will work in such a way that the whole nation of Israel will be saved by the regenerating work of the Holy Spirit. This will, in turn, bring about the Second Coming of the Messiah.

APPENDIX 8

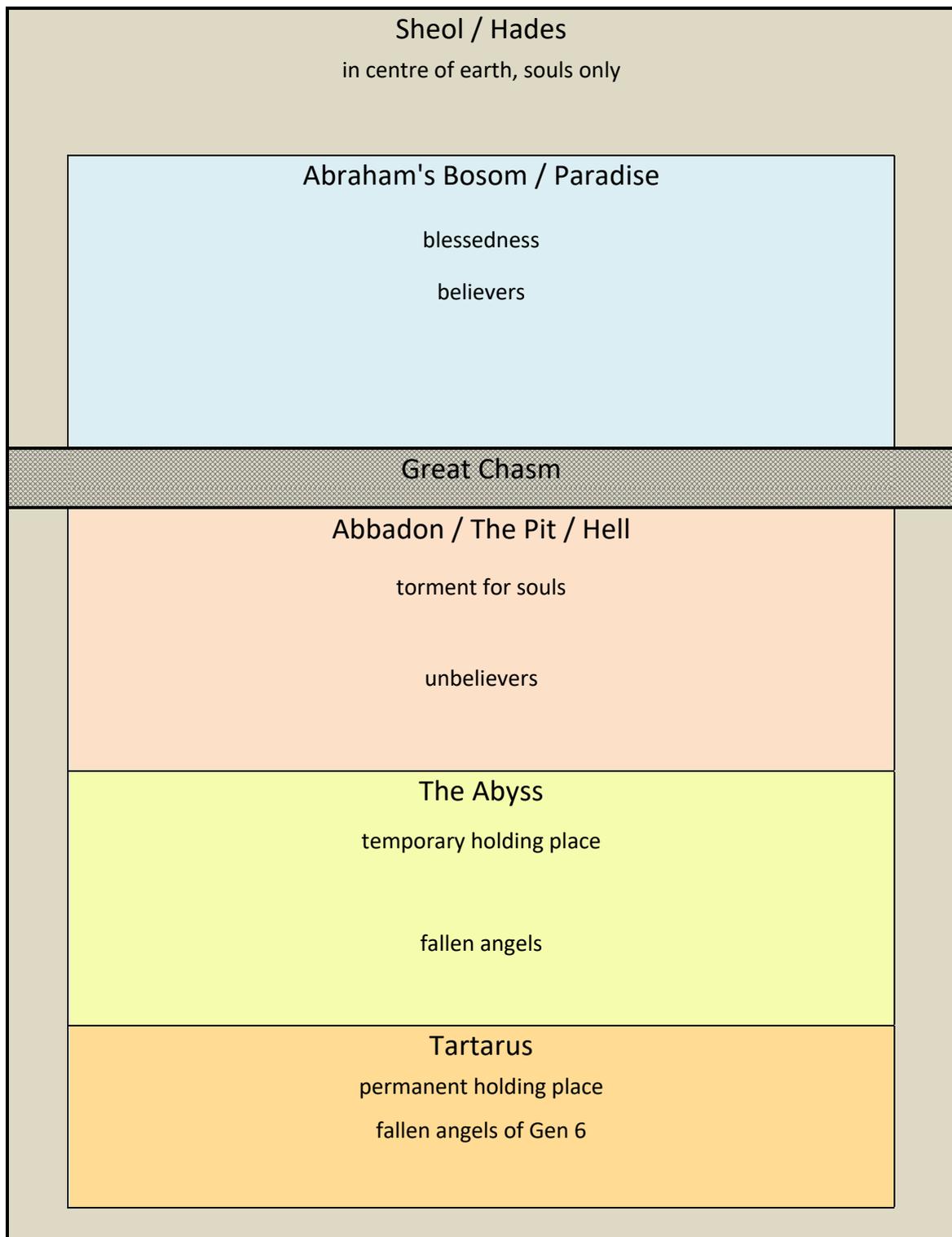
The Place of the Dead

From MBS107, "The Place of the Dead", we learn that there are 13 terms used to describe the unseen world.

1. Sheol - 64 times in the Old Testament. Psalm 86:13, Deuteronomy 32:22.
2. Hades - 10 times in the New Testament. Matthew 11:23, Revelation 1:18.
3. Abaddon - 6 times in the Old Testament, 1 time in the New. Prov. 15:11, Revelation 9:11.
4. The Pit - 23 times in the Old Testament. Job 33:18, Psalm 30:3.
5. The Abyss - 9 times in the New Testament. Luke 8:31, Revelation 20:3.
6. Tartarus - 1 time in the New Testament. 2 Peter 2:4.
7. Hell - the English translation of the Hebrew and Greek for the bad side of Sheol. The concept of Hell in common English usage is different in some ways from the biblical picture.
8. Gehenna - 12 times in the New Testament. Matthew 5:22, Luke 12:5.
9. Lake of Fire - 4 times in the New Testament. Revelation 20:10, 21:8.
10. Abraham's Bosom - 1 time in the New Testament. Luke 16:22-23.
11. Paradise - 3 times in the New Testament. Luke 23:43, Revelation 2:7.
12. Heaven - 39 times in both the Old and New Testaments. 2 Corinthians 12:1-4, Philippians 3:20.
There are three aspects of heaven, two are temporal (atmosphere & outer space), and the third is where God is.
13. New Jerusalem - 3 times in the New Testament. Galatians 4:26, Hebrews 12:22-24.

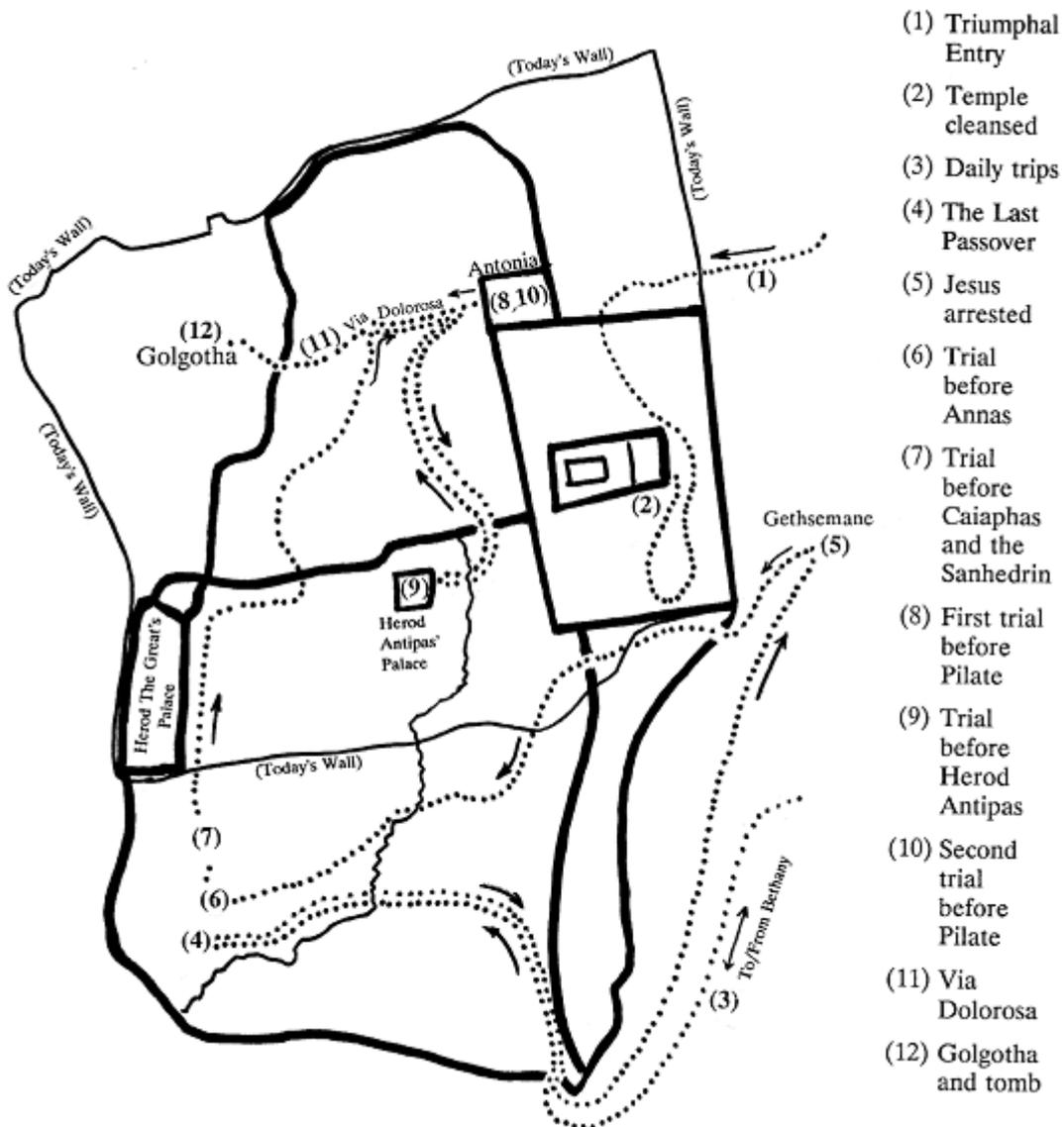
The Place of the Dead

as it was at the time of Christ



APPENDIX 9

Map – Messiah’s Last Week – A.D. 30



- (1) Triumphal Entry
- (2) Temple cleansed
- (3) Daily trips
- (4) The Last Passover
- (5) Jesus arrested
- (6) Trial before Annas
- (7) Trial before Caiaphas and the Sanhedrin
- (8) First trial before Pilate
- (9) Trial before Herod Antipas
- (10) Second trial before Pilate
- (11) Via Dolorosa
- (12) Golgotha and tomb

APPENDIX 10

22 Laws of the Sanhedrin Regarding Trials

1. There was to be no arrest by religious authorities that was effected by a bribe, Exodus 23:8.
2. There were to be no steps of criminal proceedings after sunset.
3. Judges or Sanhedrin members were not allowed to participate in the arrest.
4. There were to be no trials before the morning sacrifice.
5. There were to be no secret trials, only public.
6. Sanhedrin trials could only be conducted in the Hall of Judgment of the Temple Compound.
7. The procedure was to be first the defence and then the accusation.
8. All may argue in favour of acquittal, but all may not argue in favour of conviction.
9. There were to be two or three witnesses and their testimony had to agree in every detail, Deuteronomy 19:15.
10. There was to be no allowance for the accused to testify against himself.
11. The High Priest was forbidden to tear his garments, Leviticus 21:10.
12. Charges could not originate with the judges; they could only investigate charges brought to them.
13. The accusation of blasphemy was only valid if the name of God itself was pronounced.
14. A person could not be condemned on the basis of his own words alone.
15. The verdict could not be announced at night, only in the daytime.
16. In cases of capital punishment, the trial and guilty verdict could not occur at the same time but must be separated by at least 24 hours.
17. Voting for the death penalty had to be done by individual count beginning with the youngest so the young would not be influenced by the elders.
18. A unanimous decision for guilt shows innocence since it is impossible for 23-71 men to agree without plotting.
19. The sentence could only be pronounced three days after the guilty verdict.
20. Judges were to be humane and kind.
21. A person condemned to death was not to be scourged or beaten beforehand.
22. No trials are allowed on the eve of the Sabbath or on a feast day.

APPENDIX 11

Chronology of Jesus' last week

AD 30	Nisan	Section	
Friday	8	131	Jesus arrives at Bethany six days before Passover. Multitudes come to Jerusalem to prepare for the Passover. Large crowds went to Bethany to see Jesus and Lazarus. They are instructed to report Jesus' whereabouts so that He can be arrested.
Saturday	9		Sabbath at Bethany and supper at Martha's house?
Sunday	10	132	Triumphal Entry
Monday	11	133 134 135	Fig Tree Cursed Possession of Temple Request of the Greeks
Tuesday	12	136 137-140 141 142 143 144	Fig Tree withered, teaching in the temple and preaching the gospel Testing The challenge by the King Judgement Instruction Prophecies
Wednesday	13		
Thursday	14	145-148 149	Preparation for Messiah's death Preparation for the Passover seder
Between sunset on Thursday and sunrise on Friday		150-159 160-162 163 164 165-168	Passover seder Upper Room Discourse, High Priestly Prayer Agony in Gethsemane Arrest Trials before Annas & Caiaphas. Peter's denial. Mockery & Beating
Friday	15	169 171-173 175-178 179-180	Condemnation by the Sanhedrin Roman trial Crucifixion Burial and sealing of the tomb

APPENDIX 12

The Resurrection Appearances of the King

Friday	§180	<p>Women from Galilee</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Saw the tomb and how He was laid. • Mary Magdalene & Mary the mother of Joses were sitting opposite the grave, looking on to see where He was laid. • Returned and prepared spices and perfumes
Sunset Friday	§180	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Sabbath begins • Rested
Saturday	§180	Sabbath (the day after the preparation). The tomb was sealed.
Before Sunset Saturday	§181	<p>After the Sabbath, as it began to dawn (epiphosko) towards the first day of the week</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mary Magdalene & the other Mary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Came to look at the grave
After Sunset Saturday	§181	<p>When the Sabbath was over</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, & Salome <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bought spices
During the night	§182	<p>Earthquake</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An angel rolled the stone away & sat on it • The guards were scared stiff
Before Sunrise Sunday	§183 §184 §185	<p>While it was still dark</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mary Magdalene <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Came to the tomb ○ Saw the stone already rolled away ○ Ran to report it to Peter & John • Peter & John ran to the tomb <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ See the linen wrappings ○ John believes ○ Peter marvels ○ They return home • Mary follows Peter & John back to the tomb <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Stays outside the tomb, weeping ○ 2 angels appeared to her, sitting where the body had been lying ○ Jesus appeared¹ to her <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ “Don’t touch Me for I have not yet ascended to the Father”
After Sunrise Sunday	§186 §187 §188	<p>At early dawn (orthros) when the sun had risen</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Women came to the tomb with spices they had prepared <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Saw the stone rolled away ○ Saw a young man sitting at the right (inside the tomb) ○ Saw the body was not there ○ Saw 2 angels standing there near them <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tell His disciples <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ He is risen ◇ Go to Galilee ○ They ran to report to the disciples <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Jesus appeared² to them on the way <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ They touch Him • But the disciples didn’t believe them

Sunday	§190	He appears ³ to Cleopas & another on road to Emmaus
	§191	Jesus appears ⁴ to Peter
Sunday evening	§192	<p>Jesus appears⁵ to the ten</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Proves He is resurrected • 1st commission <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ With authority ○ Authority to discipline • Breathed on them & gave them the Holy Spirit for illumination
After 8 days	§193	He appears ⁶ to the eleven (including Thomas)
At the sea of Tiberias, so at least 3 days later	§194	<p>Jesus appears⁷ to the seven who are fishing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lesson – He will provide • Peter’s commission <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Feed My lambs - Feed new believers – 1st letter ○ Tend My sheep - Exercise authority - Acts ○ Feed My Sheep - Feed older believers – 2nd letter
	§195	<p>He appears⁸ to 500 & the eleven</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The 2nd commission <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Authority ○ Make disciples <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Going ▪ Baptising ▪ Teaching ○ Belief is what saves, unbelief condemns ○ Signs will follow them ○ He will be with them
	§196	He appears ⁹ to James
	§197	<p>He appears¹⁰ to the eleven</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Focus of post-resurrection teaching <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Messianic prophecy ○ The Kingdom of God • The 3rd commission <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Remain in Jerusalem until the Holy Spirit comes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The Father’s promise ▪ New ministry of Spirit baptism ▪ Power to fulfil commission ○ Preach the gospel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Jerusalem ▪ Judea ▪ Samaria ▪ The outermost parts of the earth – Gentiles
40 days after the resurrection	§198	Jesus ascends into heaven

APPENDIX 13

Summary of the Parables of the Mystery Kingdom

(See § 64)

1. The sower:	There will be the sowing of the gospel seed throughout this age.		
2. The seed growing of itself:	This seed which has been sown will have an inner energy so that it will spring to life and grow of its own accord.		
3. The Tares:	The true sowing will be imitated by false counter-sowing.		
Because of the false counter-sowing, two things follow:	4. The Mustard Seed:	The Mystery Kingdom will assume huge outer proportions until it becomes a monstrosity harboring the agents of Satan.	
	5. The Leaven:	It will be marked by inward doctrinal corruption.	
Nevertheless, because the seed is sown and grows of itself, two other things follow:	6. The Treasure:	God will gain a remnant from Israel.	
	7. The Pearl:	God will gain a people from among the Gentiles.	
Then:	8. The Net:	The Mystery Kingdom age will end with the judgement of the Gentiles;	the unrighteous will be excluded from the Messianic Kingdom,
			and the righteous will be taken in.
And finally:	9. The Householder:	The Mystery Kingdom has both similarities and dissimilarities with the other facets of God's Kingdom Program.	

APPENDIX 14

Three Days? Three nights? How does that work?

The questions come from a Bible verse, Yeshua said, "For just as JONAH WAS THREE DAYS AND THREE NIGHTS IN THE BELLY OF THE whale, so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth." (Matthew 12.40) And the question gets asked every Easter. When did Jesus really die? And when did he really rise from the dead?

This might help explain how this works. Clearly whatever day Yeshua died (and I believe it was a Friday), the exact 72 hours calculation will never work. He died in the afternoon, and rose before morning.

During an online debate with Christians about the above Scripture verse, an unlikely contributor to the debate showed us something that I'd heard before, but had never seen proven. Joe Zias, ex-curator of the Israel Museum in Jerusalem, an archaeologist with the Israel Antiquities Authority, and a Jewish man who does NOT believe that Jesus rose from the dead or is the Messiah, nevertheless weighed in with a post about the *idiomatic* use in Jewish circles of the phrase "three days and three nights." In brief, Zias said that the phrase is found elsewhere in the Bible and in Rabbinic literature, and that it did not usually refer to a literal 72 hour period of time. He said, "It's one example of many Hebrew idioms used for inclusive time reckoning."

(For those who may have forgotten, an idiom is a word or phrase that MUST NOT be understood to mean the sum total of its parts, or it will surely be misunderstood. Every language and culture has idioms. Some examples in English are, "She went ballistic," "I hit the ceiling," and "I'll be a monkey's uncle!")

A literal interpretation by some well-meaning Christians, of the phrase "three days and three nights" as representing an exact period of 72 hours, displays ignorance of the biblical and rabbinic evidence about the idiomatic use of the phrase "a day and a night," of which "three days and three nights" is merely an expansion. In truth, the idiom refers not to an exact number of hours or of minutes, but simply to a calendrical day, whether complete or incomplete.

In the Bible, a fraction of a day or of a night was reckoned inclusively as representing the whole day or night. This method of reckoning is known as "inclusive reckoning."

A few examples from the Bible and from rabbinic literature will suffice to demonstrate its usage (I am indebted to Samuele Bacchiocchi, Ph. D., Andrews University from his book *The Time of the Crucifixion and the Resurrection* for the following examples and most of the commentary):

1Samuel 30:12 speaks of an abandoned Egyptian servant who "had not eaten bread or drunk water for three days and three nights." The idiomatic usage of this expression is shown by the following verse, where the servant states that his master had left him behind "three days ago" (v. 13). If the "three days and three nights" were meant to be taken literally, then the servant should have said that he had been left behind four days before.

Esther 4:16 mentions that when Queen Esther was informed by Mordecai about the plan to exterminate the Jews, she sent this message to him: "Go, gather all the Jews to be found in Susa, and hold a fast on my behalf, and neither eat nor drink for three days, night or day. I and my maids will also fast as you do. Then I will go to the king." However, we read in 5:1 that Esther went before the king "on the third day." If Esther intended the three days and three nights to be taken literally as a 72-hour period of fasting, then she should have presented herself before the king on the fourth day. These two biblical examples clearly show that the expression "three days and three nights" is sometimes used in the Scriptures idiomatically to indicate not three complete

24-hour days, but three calendric days of which the first and the third could have consisted of only a fraction of a day.

But we also have examples from ancient rabbinic literature. For instance, Rabbi Eleazar ben Azariah, who lived about 100 CE, said, "A day and a night are an Onah ['a portion of time'] and the portion of an Onah is as the whole of it." (As quoted from the Jerusalem Talmud, Shabbat 9,3; see also Babylonian Talmud, Pesakhim 4a; and the Midrash Rabbah on Genesis 56.1 (commenting on Gen 22:4); Genesis 91.7 (commenting on Gen 42:17-18); Esther 9.2 (commenting on Esther 5:1). Etc. In fact, according to The Jewish Encyclopedia, a standard Jewish reference work, the practice of *inclusive day* reckoning is still in vogue among the Jews today.

"In Jewish communal life part of a day is at times reckoned as one day; e.g., the day of the funeral, even when the latter takes place late in the afternoon, is counted as the first of the seven days of mourning; a short time in the morning of the seventh day is counted as the seventh day; circumcision takes place on the eighth day, even though on the first day only a few minutes remained after the birth of the child, these being counted as one day." ("Day," vol. 6, p. 475). In fact, Joe Zias used the example of "the eighth day" regarding circumcision not necessarily being eight full days. He, being an Israeli Jew, drew it from his own personal experience with inclusive day reckoning.

The examples cited above give sufficient evidence that in biblical times (and until now) the expression "a day and a night" could mean idiomatically "a day," whether complete or incomplete. **Thus, in the light of the prevailing Jewish usage, Jesus employment of the expression "three days and three nights" in Mat 12:40 does not necessarily require that Yeshua would have been entombed for 72 hours. Rather, a full day and two partial days fit the time-frame best, as ancient Christian tradition has historically understood it.**

Posted by Bob Mendelsohn: <http://aussie-jewsforjesus.blogspot.com.au/2016/03/three-days-three-nights-how-does-that.html>

APPENDIX 20

A. T. Robertson's Section Numbers

Section number comparison ordered by the section numbers in Robertson's harmony

§§ = A.T. Robertson's Section Numbers

§ = Section Numbers used in this Harmony

§§	§	§§	§	§§	§	§§	§	§§	§
1	1	41	44	81	81	118	121	150	161
2	2	42	41	82	82	119	122	151	162
3	3	43	42	83	83	120	123	152	159
4	4	44	43	84	84	121	124	152	163
5	5	45	45	85	85	122	125	153	164
6	6	46	46	86	86	123	126	154	165
7	7	47	47	87	87	124	127	155	166
8	8	48	48	88	88	125	128	155	168
9	9	49	49	89	89	126	129	156	167
10	10	50	50	90	90	127	130	157	169
11	11	51	51	91	91	128	131	158	170
12	12	52	52	92	92	128	132	159	171
13	13	53	53	93	95	129	133	160	172
14	14	54	54	94	93	129	134	161	173
15	15	55	55	95	94	130	135	162	174
16	16	56	56	96	96	131	136	163	175
17	17	57	57	97	97	131	144	164	176
18	18	58	58	98	98	132	137	165	177
19	19	59	59	99	99	133	138	166	178
20	20	60	60	100	100	134	139	167	179
21	21	61	61	101	101	135	140	168	180
22	22	62	62	102	102	136	141	169	181
23	23	63	63	103	103	137	142	170	182
24	24	64	64	104	104	138	143	171	183
25	25	65	65	105	105	139	144	171	186
26	26	66	66	106	106	140	145	172	184
27	27	67	67	107	107	140	146	172	188
28	28	68	68	108	108	141	147	173	185
29	29	69	69	109	109	142	148	174	187
30	30	70	70	110	110	143	149	175	189
31	31	71	71	110	111	144	150	176	190
32	32	72	72	111	112	144	157	177	191
33	33	73	73	112	113	145	152	178	192
34	34	74	74	113	114	146	153	179	193
35	35	75	75	114	115	146	155	180	194
36	36	76	76	115	116	147	158	181	195
37	37	77	77	116	117	148	151	182	196
38	38	78	78	117	118	148	154	183	197
39	39	79	79	117	119	148	156	184	198
40	40	80	80	117	120	149	160		

Section number comparison ordered by the section numbers in this harmony

§ = Section Numbers used in this Harmony

§§ = A.T. Robertson's Section Numbers

§	§§	§	§§	§	§§	§	§§
1	1	51	51	101	101	150	144
2	2	52	52	102	102	151	148
3	3	53	53	103	103	152	145
4	4	54	54	104	104	153	146
5	5	55	55	105	105	154	148
6	6	56	56	106	106	155	146
7	7	57	57	107	107	156	148
8	8	58	58	108	108	157	144
9	9	59	59	109	109	158	147
10	10	60	60	110	110	159	152
11	11	61	61	111	110	160	149
12	12	62	62	112	111	161	150
13	13	63	63	113	112	162	151
14	14	64	64	114	113	163	152
15	15	65	65	115	114	164	153
16	16	66	66	116	115	165	154
17	17	67	67	117	116	166	155
18	18	68	68	118	117	167	156
19	19	69	69	119	117	168	155
20	20	70	70	120	117	169	157
21	21	71	71	121	118	170	158
22	22	72	72	122	119	171	159
23	23	73	73	123	120	172	160
24	24	74	74	124	121	173	161
25	25	75	75	125	122	174	162
26	26	76	76	126	123	175	163
27	27	77	77	127	124	176	164
28	28	78	78	128	125	177	165
29	29	79	79	129	126	178	166
30	30	80	80	130	127	179	167
31	31	81	81	131	128	180	168
32	32	82	82	132	128	181	169
33	33	83	83	133	129	182	170
34	34	84	84	134	129	183	171
35	35	85	85	135	130	184	172
36	36	86	86	136	131	185	173
37	37	87	87	137	132	186	171
38	38	88	88	138	133	187	174
39	39	89	89	139	134	188	172
40	40	90	90	140	135	189	175
41	42	91	91	141	136	190	176
42	43	92	92	142	137	191	177
43	44	93	94	143	138	192	178
44	41	94	95	144	139	193	179
45	45	95	93	144	131	194	180
46	46	96	96	145	140	195	181
47	47	97	97	146	140	196	182
48	48	98	98	147	141	197	183
49	49	99	99	148	142	198	184
50	50	100	100	149	143		

Scripture Index

<u>Matthew</u>	<u>§</u>	<u>Matthew</u>	<u>§</u>	<u>Matthew</u>	<u>§</u>
1:1-17	3	14:13-21	72	26:17-19	149
1:18-25	9	14:22-23	73	26:20	150
2:1-12	14	14:24-33	74	26:21-25	153
2:13-18	15	14:34-36	75	26:26	154
2:19-23	16	15:1-20	77	26:27-29	156
3:1-6	21	15:21-28	78	26:30	159
3:7-10	22	15:29-38	79	26:31-35	158
3:11-12	23	15:39-16:4	80	26:36-46	164
3:13-17	24	16:5-12	81	26:47-56	164
4:1-11	25	16:13-20	82	26:57	166
4:12	34	16:21-26	83	26:58	167
4:13-16	40	16:27-28	84	26:59-68	166
4:17	37	17:1-8	85	26:69-75	167
4:18-22	44	17:9-13	86	27:1	169
4:23-25	43	17:14-20	87	27:2	171
5-7	54	17:22-23	88	27:3-10	170
8:1	54	17:24-27	89	27:11-14	171
8: 2-4	45	18:1-5	90	27:15-26	173
8:5-13	55	18:6-14	91	27:27-30	174
8:14-17	42	18:15-35	92	27:31-34	175
8:18	65	19:1-12	125	27:35-44	176
8:19-22	95	19:13-15	126	27:45-50	177
8:23-27	65	19:16-20:16	127	27:51-54	178
8:28-34	66	20:17-28	128	27:55-56	176
9:1-8	46	20:29-34	129	27:57-60	179
9:9-13	47	21:1-11	132	27:61-66	180
9:14-17	48	21:12-13	134	28:1	181
9:18-26	67	21:14-17	132	28:2-4	182
9:27-34	68	21:18-19a	133	28:5-8	186
9:35-11:1	70	21:19b-22	136	28:9-10	187
11:2-19	57	21:23-22:14	137	28:11-15	189
11:20-30	58	22:15-22	138	28:16-20	195
12:1-8	50	22:23-33	139		
12:9-14	51	22:34-40	140		
12: 15-21	52	22:41-46	141		
12:22-37	61	23:1-39	142		
12:38-45	62	24-25	144		
12:46-50	63	26:1-2	145		
13:1-53	64	26:3-5	146		
13:54-58	69	26:6-13	147		
14:1-12	71	26:14-16	148		

Mark	§	Mark	§	Mark	§
1:1	20	9:33–37	90	15:42-46	179
1:2-6	21	9:38–50	91	15:47	180
1:7-8	23	10:1–12	125	16:1	181
1:9-11	24	10:13–16	126	16:2-8	186
1:12-13	25	10:17-31	127	16:9-11	185
1:14	34	10:32–45	128	16:12-13	190
1:14-15	37	10:46–52	129	16:14	192
1:16-20	44	11:1–11	132	16:15-18	195
1:21-28	41	11:12–14	133	16:19-20	198
1:29-34	42	11:15–18	134		
1:35-39	43	11:19–25	136		
1:40-45	45	11:27–12:12	137		
2:1-12	46	12:13–17	138		
2:13-17	47	12:18–27	139		
2:18-22	48	12:28–34	140		
2:23-28	50	12:35–37	141		
3:1-6	51	12:38–40	142		
3:7-12	52	12:41–44	143		
3:13-19	53	13:1–37	144		
3:20-30	61	14:1–2	146		
3:31-35	63	14:3–9	147		
4:1-34	64	14:10–11	148		
4:35-41	65	14:12–16	149		
5:1-20	66	14:17	150		
5:21-43	67	14:18-21	153		
6:1-6a	69	14:22	154		
6:6b-13	70	14:23-25	156		
6:14-29	71	14:26	159		
6:30–44	72	14:27-31	158		
6:45–46	73	14:32-42	163		
6:47–52	74	14:43-52	164		
6:53–56	75	14:53	166		
7:1–23	77	14:54	167		
7:24–30	78	14:55-65	166		
7:31–8:9	79	14:66-72	167		
8:10–12	80	15:1a	169		
8:13–26	81	15:1b-5	171		
8:27–30	82	15:6-15	173		
8:31–37	83	15:16-19	174		
8:38–9:1	84	15:20-23	175		
9:2–8	85	15:24-32	176		
9:9–13	86	15:33-37	177		
9:14–29	87	15:38-39	178		
9:30–32	88	15:40-41	176		

Luke	§	Luke	§	Luke	§
1:1-4	1	8:22-25	65	20:20-26	138
1:5-25	4	8:26-39	66	20:27-40	139
1:26-38	5	8:40-56	67	20:41-44	141
1:39-45	6	9:1-6	70	20:45-47	142
1:46-56	7	9:7-9	71	21:1-4	143
1:57-80	8	9:10-17	72	21:5-38	144
2:1-7	10	9:18-21	82	22:1-2	146
2:8-20	11	9:22-25	83	22:3-6	148
2:21	12	9:26-27	84	22:7-13	149
2:22-38	13	9:28-36a	85	22:14-16	150
2:39	16	9:36b	86	22:17-18	151
2:40	17	9:37-43a	87	22:19	154
2:41-50	18	9:43b-45	88	22:20	156
2:51-52	19	9:46-48	90	22:21-23	153
3:1-2	20	9:49-50	91	22:24-30	157
3:3-6	21	9:51-56	94	22:31-38	158
3:7-14	22	9:57-62	95	22:39-46	163
3:15-18	23	10:1-24	102	22:47-53	164
3:19-20	34	10:25-37	103	22:54a	166
3:21-23a	24	10:38-42	104	22:54b-62	167
3:23-38	3	11:1-13	105	22:63-65	168
4:1-13	25	11:14-36	106	22:66-71	169
4:14	34	11:37-54	107	23:1-5	171
4:14-15	37	12:1-59	108	23:6-12	172
4:16-30	39	13:1-9	109	23:13-25	173
4:31-37	41	13:10-17	110	23:26-33a	175
4:38-41	42	13:18-21	111	23:33b-43	176
4:42-44	43	13:22-35	114	23:44-45a	177
5:1-11	44	14:1-24	115	23:45b	178
5:12-16	45	14:25-35	116	23:46	177
5:17-26	46	15:1-32	117	23:47-49	178
5:27-32	47	16:1-31	118	23:50-54	179
5:33-39	48	17:1-4	119	23:55-56	180
6:1-5	50	17:5-10	120	24:1-9a;	186
6:6-11	51	17:11-37	123	24:9b-11	188
6:12-16	53	18:1-14	124	24:12	184
6:17-49	54	18:15-17	126	24:13-32	190
7:1-10	55	18:18-30	127	24:33-35	191
7:11-17	56	18:31-34	128	24:36-43	192
7:18-35	57	18:35-43	129	24:44-49	197
7:36-50	59	19:1-28	130	24:50-53	198
8:1-3	60	19:29-44	132		
8:4-18	64	19:45-48	134		
8:19-21	63	20:1-19	137		

John	§
1:1-18	2
1:19-28	26
1:29-34	27
1:35-51	28
2:1-11	29
2:12	30
2:13-22	31
2:23-3:21	32
3:22-36	33
4:1-4	34
4:5-42	35
4:43-45	36
4:46-54	38
5:1-47	49
6:1-13	72
6:14-15	73
6:16-21	74
6:22-71	76
7:1	77
7:2-9	93
7:10	94

John	§
7:11-52	96
7:53-8:11	97
8:12-20	98
8:21-59	99
9:1-41	100
10:1-21	101
10:22-39	112
10:40-42	113
11:1-44	121
11:45-54	122
11:55-12:1	131
12:2-8	147
12:9-11	131
12:12-19	132
12:20-50	135
13:1-20	152
13:21-30	155
13:31-38	158
14:1-31	160
15:1-27	161
16:1-33	161

John	§
17:1-26	162
18:1	163
18:2-12	164
18:12-14	165
18:15-18	167
18:19-23	165
18:24	166
18:25-27	167
18:28-38	171
18:39-40	173
19:1-16	173
19:17	175
19:18-27	176
19:28-30	177
19:31-42	179
20:1	183
20:2-10	184
20:11-18	185
20:19-25	192
20:26-31	193
21:1-25	194

1 Corinthians	§
11:23-24	154
11:25-26	156
15:5	191
15:5	193
15:6	195
15:7	196

Acts	§
1:3-8	197
1:9-12	198
1:18-19	170

Index

Notice that the ordering of numbers in the index is alphabetical rather than numerical, so for example all the teens, 11-19, will be listed between 1 and 2; all the twenties, 21-29 will be listed between 2 and 3.

2

22 Laws of the Sanhedrin Regarding Trials.....	226
------------------------------------------------	-----

A

A Deputation from John	43
A Lesson in Greatness.....	162
A. T. Robertson's Section Numbers	231
Acceptance in Judea	16
Acceptance of His Person	15
Application.....	105
At His Baptism	12

B

By His Herald.....	14
By Pharisees.....	139, 142
By Pharisees and Herodians	139
By Priests and Elders.....	136
By Sadducees	140

C

Carpas	161
Chronology of Jesus' last week.....	227
Concerning All Believers	168
Concerning Himself.....	168
Concerning His continued work.....	169
Concerning Israel's Need	107
Concerning Repentance.....	107
Concerning the Apostles.....	168
Concerning the Kingdom Program.....	108
Conflict Over Healing of the Dumb Man.....	101
Conversion of the man co-crucified with Him	191
Covetousness.....	105
Curses on the Cities of Galilee	44

D

Darkness covered the whole land	192
---------------------------------------	-----

F

Faith in His Signs	16
Faithfulness.....	106
Fifth attempt to release Him	185
Fifth statement from the cross – I thirst.....	193
First attempt to release Him.....	183

Fourth attempt to release Him.....	185
------------------------------------	-----

G

Glorification.....	169
--------------------	-----

H

He carries His own cross.....	188
He partakes of the vinegar.....	193
His actual burial.....	196
His Boyhood.....	9
His Development.....	9
His Growth.....	9
His Infancy.....	6, 7
His Infancy and Childhood.....	6
His physical death.....	193
Humble Prayer.....	120
Humility.....	110
Hypocrisy.....	104

I

In Bethlehem.....	7
In Egypt.....	8
In Nazareth.....	8
In Relationship to God.....	34
In Relationship to Man.....	34
In the Belief by the First Disciples.....	15
In the Upper Room.....	165
Instruction ... 70, 72, 81, 82, 84, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 101, 104, 105, 109, 110, 111, 112, 115, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 125, 128, 146	
Instruction at the Treasury.....	146
Instruction Concerning Defilement.....	72
Instruction Concerning Discipleship.....	90, 111
Instruction Concerning Elijah.....	84
Instruction Concerning Entrance into the Kingdom.....	109
Instruction Concerning Exclusiveness and Pride.....	88
Instruction Concerning Faith.....	84
Instruction Concerning Forgiveness.....	89, 115
Instruction Concerning God's Attitude toward Sinners.....	112
Instruction Concerning His Death.....	125
Instruction Concerning Humility.....	87
Instruction Concerning Service.....	115
Instruction Concerning Sonship.....	86
Instruction Concerning the Bread of Life.....	70
Instruction Concerning the Death of the King.....	81, 86
Instruction Concerning the Kingdom.....	82, 128
Instruction Concerning the Kingdom Program.....	128
Instruction Concerning the Second Coming.....	119
Instruction Concerning Wealth.....	114
Instruction in a Pharisee's House.....	110
Instruction in Light of Rejection.....	118
Instruction in Prayer.....	101, 120
Instruction of the Disciples.....	104
Instruction on Divorce.....	121
Instruction on Entrance into the Kingdom.....	122

Instruction on Eternal Life	122
Instructions in View of Rejection	64
Instructions in View of the Coming Persecution.....	63
Interpretation Rules for Understanding Prophecy and Scripture.....	215
Introduction.....	35, 37, 62

J

Jesus and Lazarus.....	117
Jesus and Martha.....	116
Jesus and Mary	117
Jesus Teaches in Parables	49
John’s Seven’s.....	216

L

Luke Summary	156
--------------------	-----

M

Map – Messiah’s Last Week – A.D. 30	220, 225
Messiah the Door	98
Messiah the Good Shepherd	98
Messiah the True Deliverer	94
Messiah the True Object of Faith	94
Messiah the True Shepherd.....	98

O

Occasion	105
Old Testament Prophesies about the Outpouring of the Holy Spirit.....	221
On the Way to Gethsemane	166

P

Parables Urging Watchfulness.....	154
Perpetual Prayer.....	120
Personal Faith	128
Personification of the WORD (Hebrew Davar, Aramaic Memra).....	217
Physical Healing	96
Possession of the Temple	133
Postponed Kingdom	128
Power over Blindness	61
Power over Demons	57
Power over Disease and Death.....	59
Power over Nature	56
Practical Instructions for the Mission.....	62
Preservation.....	168
Prologue	1
Protection	168

R

Reasons for Rejection	44
Recognition of Authority in Capernaum.....	41
Recognition of Authority throughout the Land	41
Respect of Persons	110

Responses.....	44
Revelation in view of Rejection	49
Rewards for Individuals Who Accept.....	64

S

Sanctification	168
Second attempt to release Him	183
Sentence pronounced	186
Sequel to the Life of Christ	211
Simon of Cyrene carries His cross.....	188
Sixth attempt to release Him.....	185
Spiritual Healing	97
Summary of Israel.....	134
Summary of Jesus	135

T

Testimony of John before Leaders	14
Testimony of John to Jesus.....	14
The Acceptance in Galilee	19
The Acceptance in Samaria.....	18
The Accompanying Signs	194
The Advent of the King	3
The Agony of Gethsemane	170
The Announcement of the Birth of Jesus to Joseph	5
The Announcement of the Birth of Jesus to Mary.....	4
The Announcement of the Birth of John to Zacharias	3
The Announcement to the Shepherds.....	6
The Answer	136, 140, 141, 142
The Approval of the King	12
The Arrest	172
The arrival at Golgotha	188
The Arrival in Bethany	129
The Arrival of the King	2
The Ascension of the King	210
The Attack.....	136, 139, 140, 142
The Authentication of the King.....	15
The Authority of the King	20, 133, 136
The Authority of the King Challenged - The Testing of the Lamb.....	136
The Belief through the first Miracle	15
The Birth of John	5
The Birth of the King	6
The Breaking of the Middle Matzah	161
The Burial of the Messiah	195
The Call to the Nation.....	102
The Challenge by the Brothers	89
The Challenge by the King	143
The Characteristics of Those Who Attain True Righteousness	34
The Characteristics of Those Who Fail.....	35
The Characteristics of True Righteousness.....	34, 35
The Characteristics of True Righteousness in Relationship to the World.....	35
The Charge.....	101
The Choosing of the Twelve	33
The Circumcision	6
The Civil Trial	180

The co-crucifixion of two other men	190
The Code of Righteousness.....	35
The Conclusion	40
The Condemnation by the Sanhedrin.....	179
The Condition of the Nation	102
The Conduct of True Righteousness	37
The Confession of Peter.....	80
The Conflict at the Feast of Dedication	108
The Conflict at the Feast of Tabernacles	91
The Conflict Over His Person	94
The Conflict Over Pharisaic Ritualism	103
The Conflict Over the Healing of the Man Born Blind	96
The Conflict Over the Law.....	93
The Conflict Over the Light	93
The Conflict Over the Question of Eternal Life	100
The Conflict Over the Shepherd	98
The Conflict with the Pharisees	114
The Conspiracy of the Rulers.....	156
The Controversy over the King	43
The Course of the Kingdom Program in the Present Age	49
The crucifixion	189
The Crucifixion	189
The Cursing of the Fig Tree.....	133
The Dawning of Resurrection Day	198
The Death of Judas	179
The Death of Lazarus	116
The Death of the Herald	65
The Defence.....	46, 101
The Denial by Peter	177
The dividing of the garments.....	189
The Division	98
The Effects of His Coming	106
The Eighth Appearance - The Five Hundred	208
The eighth mockery – by the co-crucified robbers	191
The Elements of Signs.....	211
The erection of the superscription	190
The Example of Fellowship	100
The Exhortation	152
The Explanation by John	11
The Explanation to Nicodemus.....	17
The Feeding of the five thousand	66
The Fifth Appearance - The Ten.....	205
The fifth mockery – by passers by	190
The Final Rejection in Nazareth	61
The First Appearance - Mary Magdalene	200
The First Cup.....	160
The First Half.....	150
The First Interrogation.....	96
The First Sign of Jonah	116
The first statement from the cross	189
The First Three Hours -The Wrath of Men.....	189
The First Trial before Pilate.....	180
The Four Lists of the Apostles.....	219
The Fourth Appearance - Peter	204
The fourth statement from the cross - Eli	192
The Fulfilment.....	64

The Genealogy of the King.....	2
The General Characteristics of the Church Age.....	148
The Great Tribulation	150
The Hallel.....	164
The Headquarters in Capernaum	21
The Healing of the Blind Men.....	127
The Herald of the King.....	10
The High Priestly Prayer	168
The Historical Setting.....	147
The Imprisonment of John.....	18
The Interrogation of Parents	96
The Introduction of the King.....	2
The Invitation.....	44, 134
The Invitations by the King	134
The Journey to Jerusalem.....	90
The Judgement	47
The Judgement of that Generation	47
The Judgment by the King	144
The Judgment of the Gentiles.....	155
The Lament.....	145, 188
The Lament over Jerusalem.....	188
The Last Passover and the First Lord's Supper	159
The Message by John.....	10
The Message to John	10
The Ministry of the Twelve.....	62
The Mockery.....	178, 187
The Mockery and Beating.....	178
The New Form of the Kingdom Program.....	118
The New Policy Concerning Signs	47
The Ninth Appearance - James	208
The Occasion	34, 112
THE OFFICIAL PRESENTATION OF THE KING	129
The Opening of the Tomb.....	198
THE OPPOSITION TO THE KING.....	91
The Parable of the Faithful Servant and the Evil Servant	154
The Parable of the Fig Tree.....	153
The Parable of the Hidden Treasure.....	55
The Parable of the Householder.....	55, 137
The Parable of the Leaven	55
The Parable of the Lost Coin.....	112
The Parable of the Lost Sheep.....	112
The Parable of the Master of the House	154
The Parable of the Mustard Seed.....	54
The Parable of the Net.....	55
The Parable of the Pearl of Great Price	55
The Parable of the Porter	154
The Parable of the Prodigal Son	113
The Parable of the Seed that is sown	54
The Parable of the Sower	52
The Parable of the Talents.....	155
The Parable of the Tares.....	54
The Parable of the Ten Virgins.....	154
The Parable of the Two Sons	137
The Parable of the Unjust Steward.....	114
The Parable of the Wedding	139
The Passover Observance.....	160

The People's Response	92
The Personal Experiences of the Apostles	149
The Personal Witness to Caiaphas.....	118
The Pharisaic Response	92
The piercing of Jesus.....	195
The Place of the Dead.....	223
The Possession of the Temple – the First Passover	16
The Pouring of Ointment	157
The Practice of True Righteousness.....	38
The Prediction of His Death	156
The Prediction of Peter's Denial	163
The Pre-existence of the Messiah (John's Prologue).....	1
The Preparation for embalming	197
The Preparation for Messiah's Death	156
THE PREPARATION FOR THE DEATH OF THE KING	147
The Preparation for the Seder	159
THE PREPARATION OF THE DISCIPLES BY THE KING	109
The Presentation	7
The Procession to Calvary.....	188
The Promise by John.....	11
The Promise of Revelation.....	82
The Promise to Betray	158
The Promises and Admonitions by the King	165
The Proof of Authority.....	135
The Prophecies of the King.....	147
The Rapture	153
The Reason Jesus Teaches in Parables.....	50
The Reception in Decapolis	76
The Reception in Gennesaret	69
The Reception in Tyre and Sidon	75
The Reception of a Sinner.....	45
The refusal to drink a mixture	189
The Regathering of Israel.....	152
The Rejection	20, 43, 46, 78, 111, 118
The Rejection in Magadan	78
The Rejection in Nazareth	20
The Rejection of the First Sign of Jonah	118
The Rejection of the Herald.....	43
The Rejection of the Invitation	111
The Rejection of the King - The Trial and the Death of the Messiah	172
The Rejection of the King by the Leaders	46
The Rejection of the Second Sign of Jonah.....	202
The Relationship of the Life of Christ to the Book of Acts.....	211
The Relationship of the Life of Christ to the Book of Hebrews.....	212
The Religious Trial.....	175
The removal of the body from the cross	196
The report of the Guard.....	202
The Report to the Apostles.....	199, 202
The Repudiation of all Earthly Relations.....	49
The request for the body of Jesus	195
The response of those standing by.....	192
The Results of Rejection	64
THE RESURRECTION AND THE ASCENSION OF THE KING	198
The Resurrection Appearances of the King	228
The Resurrection of Lazarus	116
The Sealing of the Tomb.....	197

The Second Appearance - The Women	202
The Second Coming	152
The Second Half	151
The Second Interrogation	97
The Second Prediction of Judas' Betrayal	161
The second statement from the cross	191
The Second Three Hours -The Wrath of God	192
The Second Trial before Pilate.....	183
The Seventh Appearance - The Seven	207
The seventh mockery – by Roman soldiers	191
The seventh statement from the cross - Father	193
The Seventy Return	99
The Seventy Sent	99
The Sign for that Generation	47
The Sign of Resurrection.....	116
The Sign of the End of the Age	148
The Sign of the Fall of Jerusalem	149
The Sign to that Generation	102
The Signs of the Times.....	107
The Sixth Appearance - The Eleven	206
The sixth mockery – by Jewish leaders.....	191
The sixth statement from the cross – It is finished.....	193
The Sojourn in Capernaum.....	16
The Song of Mary.....	4
The Sop	162
The Source of Knowledge (Luke's Prologue)	1
The Story of the Rich Man and Lazarus	115
The Tenth Appearance - The Eleven.....	209
The Third Appearance - To the Two on the Emmaus Road	203
The Third Cup	162
The Third Prediction of Judas' Betrayal	162
The Third Sign of Jonah	213
The third statement from the cross	192
The Three Questions	147
The Training of the Twelve by the King	66
The Training through the Storm	68
The Transfiguration - The Revelation of the Kingdom.....	82
The Trial and the Death of the Messiah	172
The Trial Before Annas	175
The Trial Before Caiaphas.....	175
The Trial before Herod	182
The Triumphal Entry	130
The Unpardonable Sin	46
The Visit of Mary to Elizabeth.....	4
The Visit of the Women.....	199
The Visit to Jerusalem.....	9
The Warning against Rejection.....	79
The Warning Concerning True Righteousness (Four Pairs)	39
The Washing of the Feet and the First Prediction of Judas' Betrayal	160
The Withdrawal from Judea	109
The Witness of John	17
The Witness of the Seventy.....	99
The Witness to the King.....	45
Third attempt to release Him	184
Three Messianic Miracles	216
Through the Controversy over Grain.....	31

Through the Healing of the Man with a Withered Hand	32
Through the Healing of the Paralytic	29
Through the Temptation	13
To the Disciples and Multitudes	144
To the Pharisees	145
True Sabbath Rest.....	110

U

Unity	168
-------------	-----

W

Watchfulness	106
When was Jesus Born?	218
Witness in view of Rejection.....	62

Y

Yod and Tittle.....	220
---------------------	-----